# Owner's Manual

2018 A3

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

# Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

**AUDI AG**

8V2012721BF

**About this Owner's Manual** . . . . . 6

**Cockpit** . . . . . 8
**Cockpit overview** . . . . . 8
Controls at a glance . . . . . 8
Instrument cluster . . . . . 10
Multifunction steering wheel plus . . . . . 13
Multifunction steering wheel . . . . . 16
Vehicle functions . . . . . 17
Indicator lights . . . . . 20

**Starting and driving** . . . . . 31
**Opening and closing** . . . . . 31
Central locking . . . . . 31
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 37
Child safety lock . . . . . 39
Power windows . . . . . 39
Panorama glass roof . . . . . 40

**Power top** . . . . . 42
Automatic power top . . . . . 42
Wind deflector . . . . . 45
Power top emergency operation . . . . . 46

**Lights and Vision** . . . . . 49
Exterior lighting . . . . . 49
Interior lighting . . . . . 52
Vision . . . . . 53
Windshield wipers . . . . . 55
Digital compass . . . . . 57

**Seats and storage** . . . . . 59
General information . . . . . 59
Front seats . . . . . 59
Head restraints . . . . . 61
Power sources . . . . . 62
Storing . . . . . 62
Luggage compartment . . . . . 63
Roof rack . . . . . 66

**Warm and cold** . . . . . 68
Climate control system . . . . . 68

**Driving** . . . . . 72
General information . . . . . 72
Steering . . . . . 74
Starting and stopping the engine (vehicles with an ignition lock) . . . . . 75
Starting and stopping the engine (vehicles with convenience key) . . . . . 76
Messages . . . . . 78
Starting the engine when there is a malfunction . . . . . 79
Start/Stop system . . . . . 79
Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 81
Starting from a stop . . . . . 83
Automatic transmission . . . . . 83

**e-tron** . . . . . 92
Plug-in hybrid drive . . . . . 92
Refueling . . . . . 103
Charging . . . . . 104
Charging at public charging stations . . . . 106
Charging the battery with the Audi e-tron charging system . . . . . 106
Indicator lights and messages . . . . . 115
Charging unit cover emergency release . . 116
Climate control . . . . . 116
Cleaning/maintenance information . . . . . 117

**Trailer towing** . . . . . 118
Driving with a trailer . . . . . 118

**Driver assistance** . . . . . 120
**Assistance systems** . . . . . 120
Speed warning system . . . . . 120
Cruise control system . . . . . 120
Lap timer . . . . . 122
Audi adaptive cruise control . . . . . 123
Audi pre sense . . . . . 130
Audi active lane assist . . . . . 133
Audi side assist . . . . . 136
Audi drive select . . . . . 140

**Parking aid** . . . . . 143
General information . . . . . 143
Parking system plus . . . . . 143
Rearview camera . . . . . 145
Adjusting the parking aid . . . . . 147
Error messages . . . . . 147

**Intelligent Technology** . . . . . 148
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) . . . . 148
Brakes . . . . . 150
Electromechanical steering . . . . . 151
All wheel drive (quattro) . . . . . 152

Energy management . . . . . 152
Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules . . . . . 152

**Infotainment system** . . . . . 154
**Multi Media Interface** . . . . . 154
Traffic safety information . . . . . 154
Introduction . . . . . 154
MMI On/Off knob with joystick function . . 154
Infotainment system display . . . . . 155
MMI operation . . . . . 155
MMI touch . . . . . 157
Control knob with joystick function . . . . . 159
Letter/number speller . . . . . 161
Free text search . . . . . 162
Menus and Symbols . . . . . 163

**Multifunction steering wheel** . . . 165
Introduction . . . . . 165
Radio . . . . . 165
Media . . . . . 165
Telephone . . . . . 166
Navigation . . . . . 167

**Voice recognition system** . . . . . 170
Operating . . . . . 169
Command overview information . . . . . 170
Commands . . . . . 171
External voice operation . . . . . 175

**Telephone** . . . . . 177
Introduction . . . . . 177
Setup . . . . . 177
Using the telephone . . . . . 180
Favorites . . . . . 182
Messages . . . . . 183
Listening to voicemail . . . . . 185
Directory . . . . . 186
Additional settings . . . . . 187
Troubleshooting . . . . . 189

**Audi connect (Infotainment)** . . . . 190
Introduction . . . . . 190
Setup . . . . . 190
Configuration through myAudi . . . . . 190
Opening Audi connect (Infotainment) . . . 191
Audi connect Infotainment services . . . . . 191
Wi-Fi hotspot . . . . . 195
Configuring the data connection . . . . . 196
Audi connect (Infotainment) general information . . . . . 196
Troubleshooting . . . . . 198

**Audi connect e-tron services** . . . . 199
Introduction . . . . . 199
Setup . . . . . 199
Trip data . . . . . 199
Doors and lights . . . . . 199
Vehicle status report . . . . . 200
Car Finder . . . . . 200
Charging . . . . . 200
Temperature control . . . . . 200

**Navigation** . . . . . 201
Opening navigation . . . . . 201
Entering a destination . . . . . 201
Personal route assistance . . . . . 206
Home address . . . . . 207
Favorites . . . . . 208
Directory contacts . . . . . 208
Alternative routes . . . . . 208
Additional settings . . . . . 209
Map . . . . . 210
Satellite map . . . . . 213
Map update . . . . . 213
Accessing traffic information . . . . . 215
e-tron navigation functions . . . . . 217
Troubleshooting . . . . . 217

**Radio** . . . . . 218
Opening the radio . . . . . 218
Radio functions . . . . . 219
Radio menu . . . . . 221
Presets . . . . . 221
Additional settings . . . . . 221
Troubleshooting . . . . . 222

**Media** . . . . . 223
Introduction . . . . . 223
Notes . . . . . 223
Media drives . . . . . 224
Bluetooth audio player . . . . . 226
Wi-Fi audio player . . . . . 227
Online media and Internet radio . . . . . 228
Multimedia connections . . . . . 229


8V2012721BF

Playing media . . . . . 232
Additional settings . . . . . 235
Supported media and file formats . . . . . 237
Troubleshooting . . . . . 239

**Audi smartphone interface** . . . . . 241
Setup . . . . . 241
Operating . . . . . 241
Troubleshooting . . . . . 242

**System settings** . . . . . 243
Setting the date and time . . . . . 243
MMI settings . . . . . 243
Connection manager . . . . . 244
System update . . . . . 246
Sound settings . . . . . 247
Volume settings . . . . . 247
Restarting the MMI . . . . . 248
Software license information . . . . . 248

**Safety first** . . . . . 249
**Driving safety** . . . . . 249
Basics . . . . . 249
Correct passenger seating positions . . . . . 250
Driver's and front passenger's footwell . . 253
Pedal area . . . . . 254
Storing cargo correctly . . . . . 255
Active rollover protection system . . . . . 257
Reporting Safety Defects . . . . . 258

**Safety belts** . . . . . 260
General notes . . . . . 260
Why use safety belts? . . . . . 261
Safety belts . . . . . 264
Belt tensioners . . . . . 267

**Airbag system** . . . . . 269
Important information . . . . . 269
Front airbags . . . . . 273
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 281
Knee airbags . . . . . 285
Side airbags . . . . . 287
Side curtain airbags . . . . . 290

**Child safety** . . . . . 294
Important information . . . . . 294
Child safety seats . . . . . 300
Securing child safety seats . . . . . 305
LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children) . . . . . 308
Additional information . . . . . 313

**Maintenance and Care** . . . . . 314
**Checking and Filling** . . . . . 314
Fuel . . . . . 314
Refueling . . . . . 315
Catalytic converter . . . . . 317
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . . . 318
Engine compartment . . . . . 318
Engine oil . . . . . 321
Cooling system . . . . . 324
Brake fluid . . . . . 326
Battery . . . . . 326
Windshield washer system . . . . . 328
Service interval display . . . . . 328

**Wheels** . . . . . 330
Wheels and Tires . . . . . 330
Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator 348
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 350

**Care and cleaning** . . . . . 354
General information . . . . . 354
Car washes . . . . . 354
Cleaning and care information . . . . . 355
Placing your vehicle out of service . . . . . 359

**Do It Yourself** . . . . . 360
**Emergency assistance** . . . . . 360
Trunk escape latch . . . . . 360
General information . . . . . 360
Equipment . . . . . 360
Tire mobility kit . . . . . 361
Replacing wheels . . . . . 363
Spare tire . . . . . 369

**Fuses and bulbs** . . . . . 371
Fuses . . . . . 371
Bulbs . . . . . 373

**Emergency situations** . . . . . 375
General . . . . . 375
Starting by pushing or towing . . . . . 375
Jump starting . . . . . 375
Towing with a tow truck . . . . . 378
Raising the vehicle . . . . . 379

**Technical data and accessories** .. 381
**Technical data** ..... 381
Vehicle specifications ..... 381
Notes about technical data ..... 381
Dimensions ..... 381
Capacities ..... 382
Weights ..... 382

**Consumer Information** ..... 383
Warranty coverages ..... 383
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada ..... 383
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature ..... 383
Maintenance ..... 383
Accessories and technical changes ..... 385
Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems ..... 386

**Index** ..... 387

8V2012721BF

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustration.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

**Tips**

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

**WARNING**

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

**Note**

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

**For the sake of the environment**

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

# Cockpit overview

## Controls at a glance

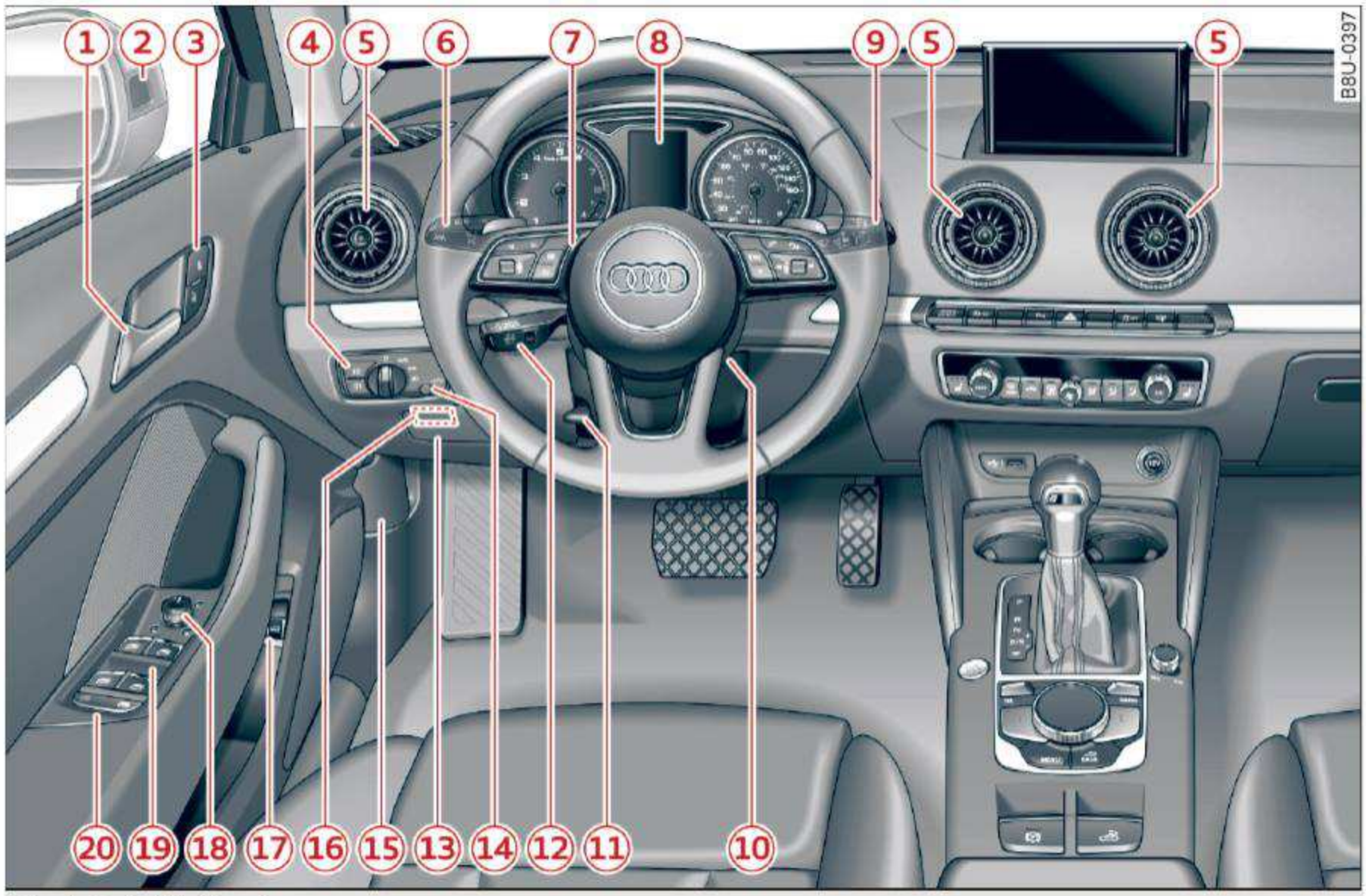



**Fig. 1** Cockpit: left section

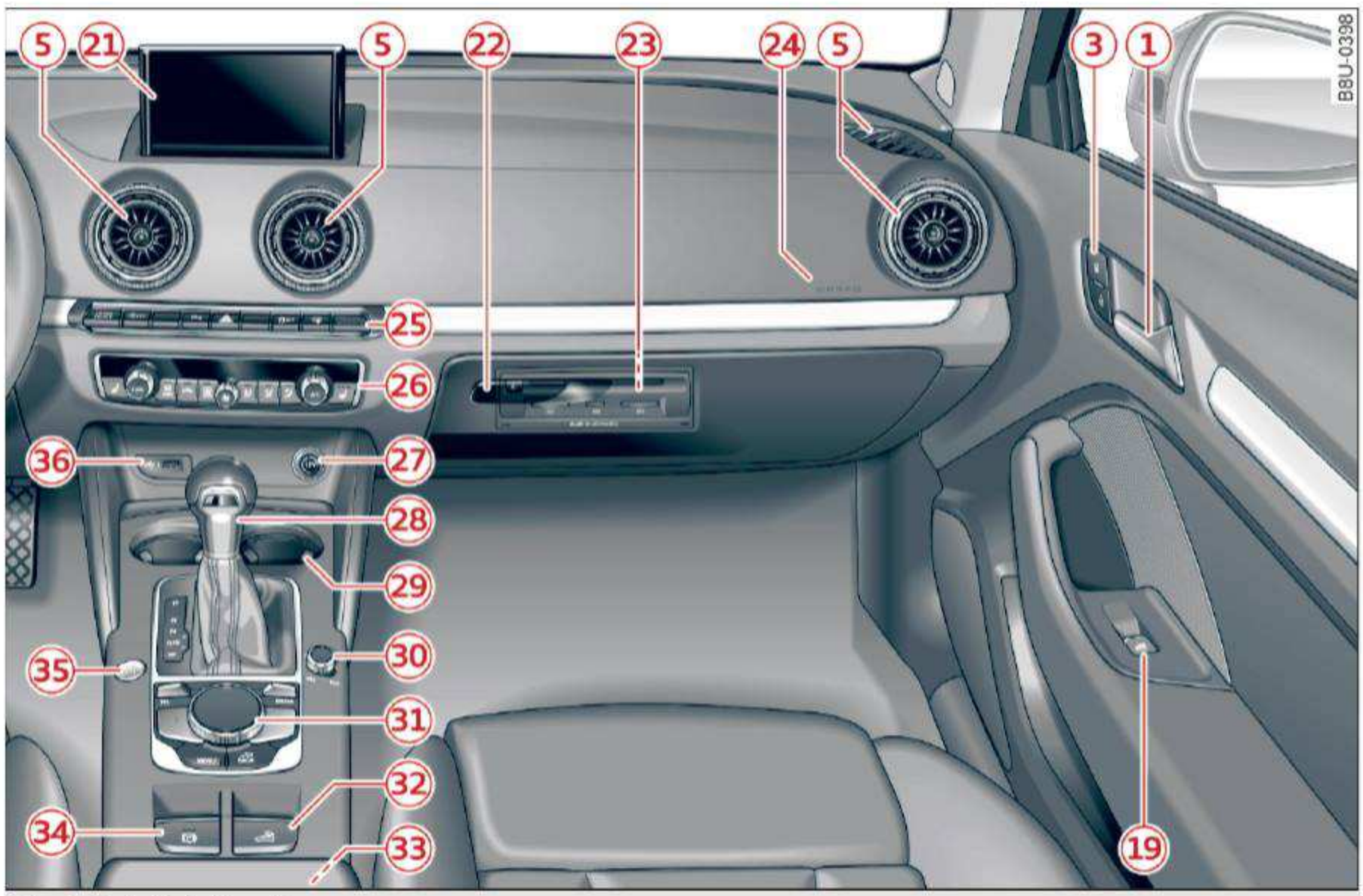



**Fig. 2** Cockpit: right section

① Door handle
② Side assist . . . . . 136
③ Central locking switch . . . . . 34
④ Light switch . . . . . 49
⑤ Vents . . . . . 68
⑥ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams . . . 50
– High beam assistant . . . . . 50
– Active lane assist . . . . . 133
⑦ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag . . . . . 273
– Driver information system controls . . . . . 13, 16
– Audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition controls . . . . . 15, 16
– ✳ button/steering wheel heating . . 15, 16
– Shift paddles . . . . . 88
⑧ Instrument cluster . . . . . 10
⑨ Windshield washer system lever . 55
⑩ Steering column, with the following, depending on equipment:
– Ignition lock . . . . . 75
– Starting the engine when there is a malfunction . . . . . 79
⑪ Adjustable steering column . . . . . 74
⑫ Lever for:
– Cruise control system . . . . . 120
– Adaptive cruise control . . . . . 123
⑬ Knee airbag . . . . . 285
⑭ Instrument illumination . . . . . 52
⑮ Hood release . . . . . 320
⑯ Data link connector for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD II) . . . . . 318
⑰ Switch (depending on the equipment) for:
– Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 37
– Fuel filler door (plug-in hybrid drive) . . . . . 103
⑱ Power exterior mirror adjustment 53
⑲ Power windows . . . . . 39
⑳ Depending on equipment:
– Child safety lock . . . . . 39
– Central power window switch . . 39
㉑ Infotainment system display . . . . 155
㉒ Glove compartment . . . . . 63
㉓ Drives for CD, DVD, SIM cards . . . 224
㉔ Front passenger's airbag . . . . . 273
㉕ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– Drive select . . . . . 140
– Start/Stop system . . . . . 79
– EV button (plug-in hybrid drive) 98
– Parking aid . . . . . 143
– Emergency flashers . . . . . 51
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) . . . . . 148
– Infotainment system display . . 155
– Front passenger airbag off indicator . . . . . 281
㉖ Deluxe automatic climate control 69
㉗ Socket . . . . . 62
㉘ Selector lever (automatic transmission) . . . . . 83
㉙ Cup holder . . . . . 62
㉚ Infotainment system on/off button . . . . . 154
㉛ Infotainment unit . . . . . 154
㉜ Power top operation . . . . . 42
㉝ Center armrest with storage compartment. Depending on vehicle equipment, it may have:
– Audi music interface . . . . . 230
– Audi smartphone interface . . . . 241
㉞ Electromechanical parking brake . 81
㉟ START ENGINE STOP button . . . 76
㊱ Audi music interface . . . . . 230


**Tips**

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

# Instrument cluster

## Instrument cluster overview

*The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.*

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit
**Fig. 3** Instrument cluster overview

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster
**Fig. 4** Instrument cluster overview

Vehicles with Plug-in hybrid drive*: the instrument cluster is different ⇨ *page 95*.

① Coolant temperature indicator or boost indicator* . . . . . 11, 19
② Tachometer . . . . . 11
– With **OFF** status indicator . . . . . 75, 76
– With **READY** status indicator . . 75, 76, 79
③ Tab area
④ Central area with
– Driver information system (Audi virtual cockpit)* . . . . . 13
– Driver information system (analog instrument cluster) . . . . . 16
– Indicator lights . . . . . 20
⑤ Status line (displayed on one or two lines)
⑥ Trip odometer reset button . . . . . 12
⑦ Speedometer/convenience display
⑧ Fuel level . . . . . 12
⑨ Speedometer ▶

⑩ Left additional display (divided in two sections in the enhanced view)

There may be additional indicator lights in the tachometer ②, the speedometer ⑦, the status line ⑤ and, depending on the instrument cluster, above or below the central area ④.

The following pages will primarily show illustrations of the multi-color analog instrument cluster*. The display and/or position of the element shown may vary in monochrome instrument clusters or in the Audi virtual cockpit*.

**Tips**

- Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument illumination (needles and gauges) may turn on when the lights are off and the ignition is switched on. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.
- You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 243*.

## Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature display ① ⇨ *page 10, fig. 4* or ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To prevent engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

### Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

### Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 25*.

### Vehicles without a coolant temperature indicator

The indicator light turns on when the coolant temperature is high ⇨ *page 25*. Refer to ⇨ ⓘ.

**Note**

- Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the cooling-air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
- The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- Vehicles without a coolant temperature display: to promote a long engine service life, avoiding high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads during approximately the first 15 minutes when the engine is cold is recommended. The amount of time that the engine is cold depends on the outside temperature.

## Tachometer

*The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).*

The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warmed up to operating temperature. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the "D" or "S" selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are different display formats available ⇨ *page 95*. ▶

**Note**

The needle in the tachometer (2) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 4* or ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short time or there is a risk of engine damage. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

**For the sake of the environment**

Upshifting early helps you to save fuel and reduces operating noise.

## Fuel level

The display (8) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 4* or ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* only functions when the ignition is switched on. When the display has reached the reserve mark, a red LED appears and the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 28*. The LED blinks red when the fuel level is very low.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 382*.

**Note**

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

## Odometer

**Fig. 5** Instrument cluster: odometer

### Trip odometer and odometer

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button (6) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 4* or ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3*.

The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

### Malfunction indicator

If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

## Outside temperature display

If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to the heat radiating from the engine.

At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

# Multifunction steering wheel plus

## Operating

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

**Fig. 6** Example: driver information system view (Audi virtual cockpit)

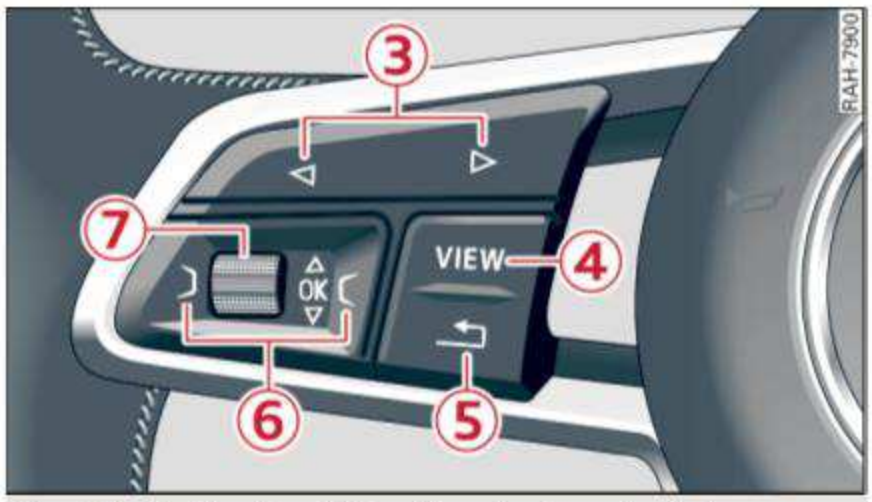



**Fig. 7** Left side of multifunction steering wheel plus

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① ⇨ *fig. 6* that display various information ②.

The following tabs are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

| | |
|---|---|
| First tab | Vehicle functions ⇨ *page 17* |
| Second tab[a)] | Messages |
| Third tab | Radio ⇨ *page 165*<br>Media ⇨ *page 165* |
| Fourth tab | Telephone* ⇨ *page 166* |
| Fifth tab | Navigation* ⇨ *page 167*<br>Map* ⇨ *page 167* |

a) This tab is only visible when there is at least one indicator light or message displayed.

### ③ Button ◁ ▷

– **Switching tabs**: press the ◁ ▷ button repeatedly until the desired tab is shown (for example, Radio).

### ④ VIEW button

Switching views: see ⇨ *page 14, Switching views*.

### ⑤ ⮌ Button

Return to functions at higher levels

### ⑥ ❯ and ❮ control buttons

Opening/closing the selection menu or options menu ⇨ *page 14*.

### ⑦ Left thumbwheel

– **Selecting a function in a menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function (for example, selecting a frequency).
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel ⑦ ⇨ *fig. 7*.
– **Zooming in/out on the map**: when a map is displayed, turn the left thumbwheel to zoom in and out on the map.

8V2012721BF

## Control buttons

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

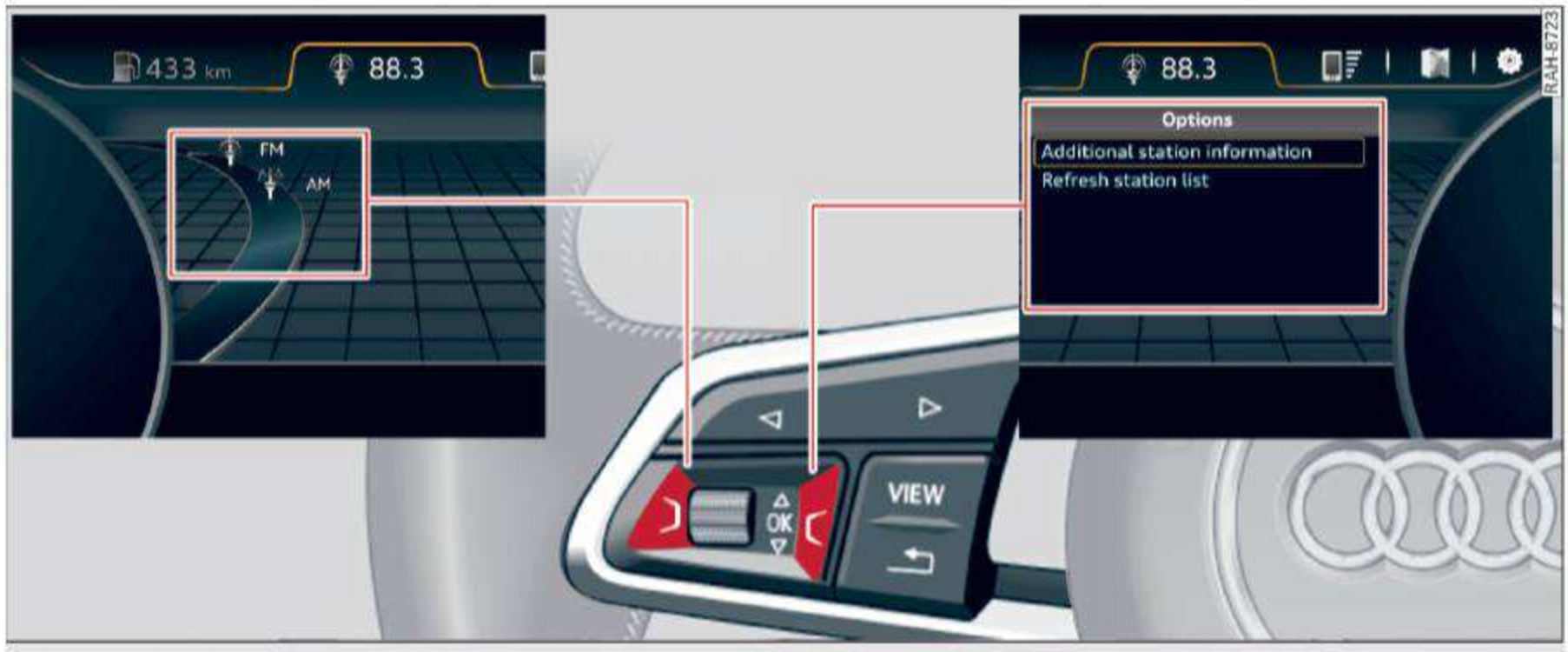



**Fig. 8** Selection menu and options menu

### Left control button

– **Opening/closing the selection menu**: press the respective left control button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 8* . You can select and confirm a function in the selection menu using the left thumbwheel (for example, selecting a frequency band).

### Right control button

– **Opening/closing the options menu**: press the respective right control button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 8* . You can change any context-dependent functions and settings using the left thumbwheel (for example, additional station information).

**Tips**

The availability of a selection menu or options menu depends on the function that is selected.

## Switching views

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

**Fig. 9** Standard view: classic/sport*

**Fig. 10** Enhanced view

## Change view

- Press the VIEW button (4) ⇨ *page 13, fig. 7* to switch from the default view ⇨ *fig. 9* to the enhanced view ⇨ *fig. 10*. To return to the default view, press the VIEW button again.

## Setting the default view

Applies to: vehicles with sport view

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can choose between the classic and the sport view.

- Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Layout** > **Sport layout** or **Classic layout**.

## Adjusting the additional display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the additional displays that can be selected may vary.

- Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- On the multifunction steering wheel, select the right control button > **Additional display**.
- Select the desired additional display.

### Tips

Applies to: vehicles with sport view

Always set the desired default view before driving, because the display functions will not be available for several seconds.

## Other function buttons

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

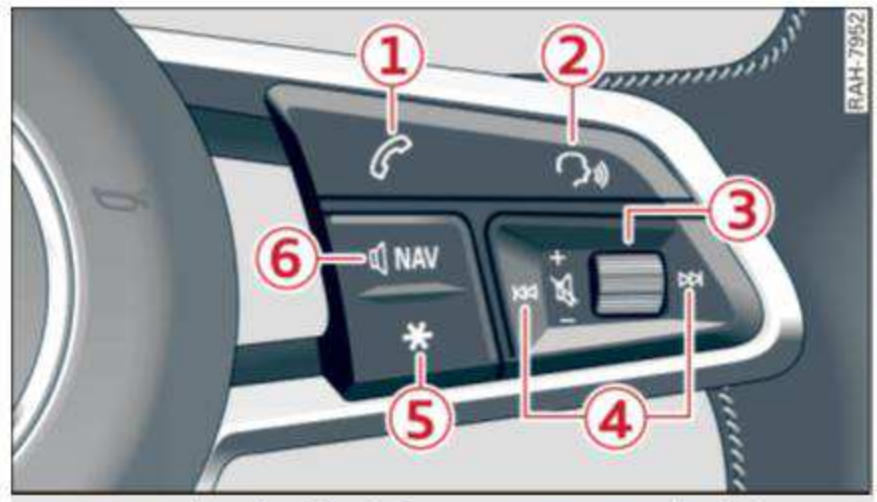



**Fig. 11** Right side of multifunction steering wheel plus

### (1) Button

– **Accepting a call**: press the button when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a call**: press the button during a phone call to end the call.
– **Opening the call list**: if no phone call is in progress and there are no incoming calls, press the button.

### (2) Button

– **Switching the voice recognition system on**: briefly press the button. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.
– **Switching the voice recognition system off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, see ⇨ *page 170, Voice recognition system*.

### (3) Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel up. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel. ▶

### ④ ⏮ / ⏭ Button

– **Selecting the previous/next track or station**: press the ⏮ or ⏭ button.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding audio files**: press and hold the ⏮ or ⏭ button until the desired location in the file is reached.

### ⑤ ✳ Button / steering wheel heating

– **Steering wheel heating***: you can find additional information in ⇨ *page 71*.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - opening a function**: press the ✳ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - requesting a function**: press and hold the ✳ button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button** in the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

### ⑥ NAV Button

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the NAV button when route guidance is active.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: when route guidance is active, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward during a navigation prompt.

# Multifunction steering wheel

## Operating

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

**Fig. 12** Left side of multifunction steering wheel

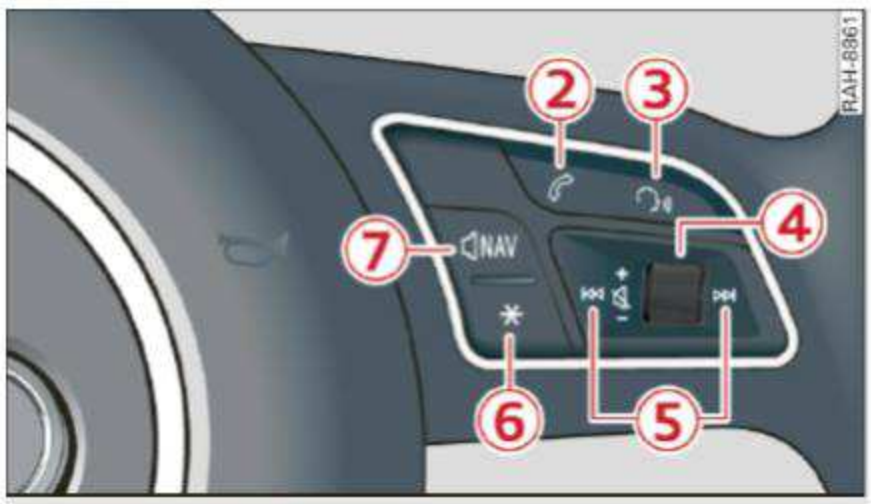



**Fig. 13** Right side of the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

### ① Operating the driver information system

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① ⇨ *page 13, fig. 6* that display various information ② ⇨ *page 13, fig. 6*.

The following tabs are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

| | |
|---|---|
| First tab | Vehicle functions ⇨ *page 17* |
| Second tab[a)] | Messages |
| Third tab | Radio ⇨ *page 165*<br>Media ⇨ *page 165* |
| Fourth tab | Telephone* ⇨ *page 166* |
| Fifth tab | Navigation* ⇨ *page 167* |

a) This tab is only visible when there is at least one indicator light or message displayed.

– **Switching tabs**: press the ◁ ▷ button repeatedly until the desired tab is shown.
– **Opening/closing the menu**: press the ☰ button.
– **Selecting a function in the menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel to confirm your selection.
– **Returning to functions at higher levels**: press the ⮌ button.
– **Scrolling within lists**: turn the left thumbwheel quickly.

### ② ✆ Button

– **Accepting a call**: press the ✆ button when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a call**: press the ✆ button during a phone call to end the call. ▶

– **Opening the call list**: if no phone call is in progress and there are no incoming calls, press the button.

### ③ Button

– **Switching the voice recognition system on**: briefly press the button. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.
– **Switching the voice recognition system off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, see ⇨ *page 170, Voice recognition system*.

### ④ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel up. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.

### ⑤ / Button

– **Selecting the previous/next track or station**: press the or button.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding audio files**: press and hold the or button until the desired location in the file is reached.

### ⑥ button / steering wheel heating*

– **Steering wheel heating***: you can find additional information in ⇨ *page 71*.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - opening a function**: press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - requesting a function**: press and hold the button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button** in the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

### ⑦ NAV Button

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the NAV button when route guidance is active.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: when route guidance is active, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward during a navigation prompt.

# Vehicle functions

## Overview

The trip computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Additional vehicle functions can be accessed depending on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Press either the button or the left control button depending on the vehicle equipment.

– On-board computer ⇨ *page 17*, or ⇨ *page 18*
– Efficiency program ⇨ *page 19*
– Digital speedometer
– Lap timer ⇨ *page 122*
– Assist ⇨ *page 120*
– Reduced display
– Energy flow ⇨ *page 100*
– Lap times ⇨ *page 122*
– Statistics ⇨ *page 123*
– Sport displays ⇨ *page 20*
– Layout ⇨ *page 14*

## Trip computer (Audi virtual cockpit)

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

**Fig. 14** Instrument cluster: fuel consumption display

### Resetting values to zero

Requirement: the **Fuel consumption**, **Short-term memory** or **Long-term memory** display must be selected.

- ▸ To reset the values in the respective memory to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second. Or
- ▸ On the multifunction steering wheel, select: the right control button > **Reset values***.

The following displays are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

– Date and time ⇨ *page 243*
– Plug-in hybrid drive: range ⇨ *page 97*
– Average consumption
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 18*
– Driver assistance ⇨ *page 120*

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

### Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph ⇨ *fig. 14*. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel through the following function:

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the vehicle battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar will move toward .

### Energy consumers*

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three energy consumers. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A chart also shows you the current total of all other consumers.

**Tips**

The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 243*.

## Trip computer (analog instrument cluster)

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

**Fig. 15** Instrument cluster: fuel consumption display

### Resetting values to zero

Requirement: the **Fuel consumption**, **Short-term memory** or **Long-term memory** display must be selected.

- ▸ To reset the values in the respective memory to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second.

### On-board computer

In the trip computer, you can call up the following displays one after the other by turning the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel.

– Date ⇨ *page 243*
– Remaining range
– Plug-in hybrid drive*: tachometer ⇨ *page 95*, range ⇨ *page 97*, energy flow display ⇨ *page 100*
– Short-term memory 1
– Average consumption ▸

– Long-term memory 2
– Engine oil temperature*

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

**Tips**

The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 243*.

## Efficiency program

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program

### Resetting values to zero

▸ To reset the values in the respective memory to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second.

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It evaluates driving information in reference to fuel consumption and shows other equipment influencing consumption. Economy tips provide advice for efficient driving.

The efficiency program receives distance and consumption data from the short-term memory. If the data in the efficiency program is deleted, the values in the short-term memory are also reset.

The following additional displays may be available in the efficiency program, depending on vehicle equipment:

– **Other equipment**: other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption is listed in the efficiency program. The display shows up to three other equipment items. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A chart also shows you the current total of all other consumers.
– **Economy tips**: in certain situations, economy tips appear automatically for a short time in the efficiency program. If you follow these economy tips, you can reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption. To turn an economy message off immediately after it appears, press any button on the multifunction steering wheel.

## Engine oil temperature display and boost indicator

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature display/boost indicator

### Engine oil temperature indicator

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

The engine oil temperature is only shown in the lap timer display ⇨ *page 122*.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

The engine oil temperature is only shown in the enhanced view or in the sport view* ⇨ *page 14*.

When engine oil temperatures are low, the display --- °F (--- °C) appears in the instrument cluster.

The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176 °F (80 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the ⇨ *page 25* or ⇨ *page 28* indicator lights do not turn on.

### Boost indicator

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

The boost indicator is only shown in the enhanced view or in the sport view* ⇨ *page 14*.

The current engine load (meaning the current boost pressure) is indicated by a bar.

## Shift light indicator

Applies to: vehicles with shift light indicator

The shift light indicator informs the driver when the rpm limit is reached.

### Accessing the shift light indicator

Requirement: tiptronic mode must be activated ⇨ *page 88*.

- ▸ Select the sport view ⇨ *page 14*. The shift light indicator is displayed with green, yellow and red ranges in the upper areas of the tachometer.

The shift light indicator will blink red when approaching the engine speed limit. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time.

## Sport displays

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit and sport displays

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the sport displays may include the G-meter, the engine data and the tire pressure monitoring system.

### Accessing the sport displays

- ▸ Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Sport displays**.
- ▸ Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until the desired sport display appears in the instrument cluster.

### G meter*

The G meter displays the longitudinal and lateral acceleration. The maximum values that are reached are stored and displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▸ To reset the stored values, select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Reset values**.

### Engine data*

The engine data displays the current power and torque.

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System*

The tire pressure monitoring system displays the current tire pressures and temperature. Also see ⇨ *page 350, Tire pressure monitoring system*.

# Indicator lights

## Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

Messages may appear with some indicator lights. A warning signal will sound at the same time. The indicator lights and messages in the instrument cluster display can be covered by other displays. You can have these displayed again in the driver information system by opening the second Vehicle tab (messages) using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel. If there are several malfunctions, you can display them one at a time using the thumbwheel.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

## ⚠ Central indicator light

If the ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light turns on, check the instrument cluster display for more information.

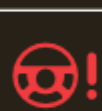
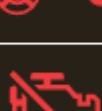
Applies to: vehicles with monochrome display

If a message appears together with a central indicator light ⚠ or ⚠, the central indicator light will indicate the priority of the warning. If a white indicator light also appears, the central indicator light will have its own color. For example, if 🛢 appears together with ⚠, read the description for 🛢.

## Overview

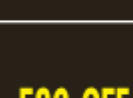
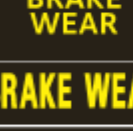
Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system. ▶

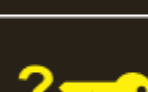
## Red indicator lights

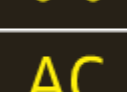
| | |
|---|---|
| | Central indicator light<br>⇨ *page 20*,<br><br>Audi pre sense*<br>⇨ *page 131* |
| | **USA models:**<br>Brake system ✓<br>⇨ *page 23* |
|  | **Canada models:**<br>Brake system ✓<br>⇨ *page 23* |
| | **USA models:**<br>Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 24* |
|  | **Canada models:**<br>Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 24* |
| | Cooling system<br>⇨ *page 25* |
| | Engine oil pressure<br>⇨ *page 25* |
| | Alternator<br>⇨ *page 25* |
| | Safety belt<br>⇨ *page 26* |
|  | Electromechanical steering ✓<br>⇨ *page 151* |
| | Steering lock<br>⇨ *page 26* |
|  | Engine stop while driving<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| | Transmission<br>⇨ *page 89* |
| | Hood<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| | Adaptive cruise control*<br>⇨ *page 125* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | e-tron: system warning*<br>⇨ *page 96* |
| | |
| | e-tron: charging system*<br>⇨ *page 115* |

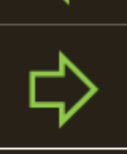
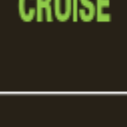
## Yellow indicator lights

| | |
|---|---|
| | Central indicator light<br>⇨ *page 20*,<br>Brake booster*<br>⇨ *page 23* |
| | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓<br>⇨ *page 27* |
|  | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)<br>⇨ *page 148* |
| | **USA models:**<br>Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| | Safety systems ✓<br>⇨ *page 26* |
| | **USA models:**<br>Brake pads<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Brake pads<br>⇨ *page 27* |
|  | Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 24* |
| | Hill hold assist<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| | Tire pressure*<br>⇨ *page 348*, or ⇨ *page 350* |
| | Tire pressure*<br>⇨ *page 348*, or ⇨ *page 350* ▶ |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Engine control*<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| | Engine control*<br>⇨ *page 28* |
| | Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL)<br>✓<br>⇨ *page 318* |
| | Engine speed limitation*<br>⇨ *page 28* |
| | Engine oil level (MIN)*<br>⇨ *page 28* |
| | Engine oil sensor<br>⇨ *page 28* |
| | Battery charge<br>⇨ *page 25* |
| | Tank system<br>⇨ *page 28* |
| | Washer fluid level<br>⇨ *page 28* |
| | Windshield wipers<br>⇨ *page 29* |
|  | Remote control key*<br>⇨ *page 78* |
| | Driver's door*<br>⇨ *page 29* |
| | Battery in remote control key<br>⇨ *page 32* |
| | Bulb failure indicator*<br>⇨ *page 29* |
| | Headlight range control system<br>⇨ *page 29* |
| | Adaptive light*<br>⇨ *page 29* |
| | Light/rain sensor*<br>⇨ *page 29* |
| | Transmission<br>⇨ *page 89* |
| | Steering lock<br>⇨ *page 26* |
| | Engine start system<br>⇨ *page 26* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Electromechanical steering<br>⇨ *page 151* |
| | Suspension control*<br>⇨ *page 29* |
| | Power top*<br>⇨ *page 44* |
| | Active lane assist*<br>⇨ *page 134* |
| | Side assist*<br>⇨ *page 140* |
| | pre sense*<br>⇨ *page 133* |
| | e-tron: system warning*<br>⇨ *page 96* |
| | e-tron: driving power*<br>⇨ *page 96*, ⇨ *page 103* |
| | e-tron: vehicle sound*<br>⇨ *page 96* |
|  | e-tron: charging system*<br>⇨ *page 115* |

**Other indicator lights**

| | |
|---|---|
| | Turn signals<br>⇨ *page 30* |
|  | |
| | **USA models:**<br>Cruise control system*<br>⇨ *page 120* |
|  | **Canada models:**<br>Cruise control system*<br>⇨ *page 120* |
| | Adaptive cruise control*<br>⇨ *page 125* |
| | Adaptive cruise control*<br>⇨ *page 125* |
| | Adaptive cruise control*<br>⇨ *page 125* |
| | Adaptive cruise control*<br>⇨ *page 126* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Active lane assist*<br>⇨ *page 134* |
| | Start/Stop system*<br>⇨ *page 79* |
| | Start/Stop system*<br>⇨ *page 79* |
| | Convenience key*<br>⇨ *page 79* |
| | Engine start system<br>⇨ *page 26* |
| | Transmission<br>⇨ *page 89* |
| PARK BRAKE<br>PARK BRAKE | **USA models:**<br>Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 24* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 24* |
| | Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 24* |
| | Hill hold assist<br>⇨ *page 27* |
| MPH | **USA models:**<br>Speed warning system*<br>⇨ *page 120* |
| Km/h | **Canada models:**<br>Speed warning system*<br>⇨ *page 120* |
| CRUISE | **USA models:**<br>Cruise control system*<br>⇨ *page 120* |
| | **Canada models:**<br>Cruise control system*<br>⇨ *page 120* |
| | Adaptive cruise control*<br>⇨ *page 126* |
| | Adaptive cruise control*<br>⇨ *page 126* |
| | Active lane assist*<br>⇨ *page 134* |
| | Side assist*<br>⇨ *page 140* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | pre sense*<br>⇨ *page 133* |
| | High beam assistant*<br>⇨ *page 50* |
| AUTO | |
| | High beams<br>⇨ *page 50* |
| EV | e-tron: electric drive ready mode*<br>⇨ *page 98* |
| EV | e-tron: electric drive ready mode*<br>⇨ *page 96* |
| | e-tron: charging system*<br>⇨ *page 115* |
| | e-tron: charging system*<br>⇨ *page 115* |
| | e-tron: gasoline engine*<br>⇨ *page 98* |
| | e-tron: tank system*<br>⇨ *page 103* |
| AC | e-tron: charging system*<br>⇨ *page 115* |

## BRAKE/(!) Brake system

If this indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

**BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models)**
**Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level**

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

**BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models)**
**Warning! No brake booster**

If the brake booster is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models)**
**Brakes: malfunction! Please stop vehicle safely** ▶

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the brake booster.

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models), the ESC indicator light, and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, then the ABS, ESC and braking distribution are malfunctioning ⇨ ⚠.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance ⇨ ⚠.

**BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual**

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
– If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Brake booster: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the brake booster. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. Braking behavior may be different from how it normally functions and the brake pedal may vibrate.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Brake booster: deactivated. See owner's manual**

The brake assist (brake booster) remains active for a brief period of time after switching off the ignition. To secure the vehicle from rolling away, select the "P" selector lever position or set the parking brake.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment* before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid level.
– If the brake system indicator light does not turn off or it turns on while driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, and this increases the risk of an accident. Stop the vehicle and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may be malfunctioning. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

## PARK/Ⓟ/ Electromechanical parking brake

If the PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light turns on, the parking brake was set.

If the PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light blinks, the braking force is not building up enough or not building up at all. Select the P selector lever position to help secure the vehicle. Make sure the indicator light is off before you start driving.

**Parking brake: malfunction! Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

**PARK BRAKE (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) Parking brake auto release unavailable**

If this message appears, press the brake pedal first and then release the parking brake.

**PARK BRAKE (USA models) / (P) (Canada models) Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep**

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

**Tips**

For additional information on the parking brake, see ⇨ *page 81*.

## Cooling system

**Turn off engine and check coolant level! See owner's manual**

**Stop vehicle and check coolant level! See owner's manual**

The coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 324*.

Plug-in hybrid drive*: refer to ⇨ *page 102*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 325*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

**Coolant temperature too high! Let engine run with vehicle stationary**

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**WARNING**

– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. Wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment*.

**Note**

Do not continue driving if the indicator light turns on as this increases the risk of engine damage.

## Engine oil pressure

**Switch off engine! Oil pressure too low**

Stop the engine and do not continue driving. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 322*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 321*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Tips**

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

## Generator/Vehicle battery

**Electrical system: malfunction! Battery is not charging**

There is a malfunction in the alternator or the vehicle electrical system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment because it will drain the battery. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the battery charge level is too low.

**Electrical system: malfunction! Restart not possible. Please contact Service** ▶

The vehicle battery was disconnected from the vehicle electrical system and will no longer charge. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Do not stop the engine, or you will not be able to start it again. If you can no longer start the engine, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Electrical system: malfunction! Please contact Service**

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Because the vehicle battery is discharging, turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment such as the radio. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the battery charge level is too low.

**Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving**

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction.

## Safety systems

The indicator light monitors the safety systems.

If the indicator light turns on or blinks, there is a malfunction in a safety system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

Have the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during a collision, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.

## Safety belt

The indicator light stays on until the driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

**Tips**

For additional information on safety belts, see ⇨ *page 260*.

## Steering lock

**Do not drive vehicle: steering defective**

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Steering lock: malfunction! Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

Do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock - this increases the risk of an accident.

## Engine start system

**Engine start system malfunction. Please contact Service**

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Engine start system malfunction. Please contact Service** ▶

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Engine stop while driving

**Engine stopped! Power steering and brake booster not possible**

There is a malfunction in the engine or in the fuel supply system.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**WARNING**

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient vehicle battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

## Hood

**Warning! Hood is not locked. Stop vehicle and check the lock**

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the hood locking mechanism is not engaged correctly.

Stop immediately and close the hood ⇨ *page 320*.

## Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was switched off using the button ⇨ *page 148*.

**Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual**

If the indicator light and the ABS (USA models)/ (Canada models) ABS indicator light turn on and the message appears, there is a malfunction in the ABS or the electronic differential lock. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Tips**

For additional information on ESC and ABS, see ⇨ *page 148*.

## BRAKE WEAR/Brake pads

If the BRAKE WEAR/BRAKE WEAR (USA models)/ (Canada models) turns on, the brake pad is worn out. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the brake pads checked.

## Hill hold assist

**Hill hold assist: unavailable**

When this message appears, hill hold assist is not available.

**Manual control!**

If this message appears, press the brake pedal. Continue driving with the help of the parking brake ⇨ *page 81*.

## Engine control

If the indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine control. ▶

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

## EPC Engine control

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engines

If the EPC indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine control.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

## Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed limitation

### Maximum engine speed: XXXX rpm

The engine speed is automatically limited to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the or EPC indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Engine oil level (MIN)

Applies to: vehicles with oil level warning

### Check oil level

You may continue driving for the time being. Check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 321*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 322, Checking the engine oil level*.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, drive at low engine speed to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## Engine oil sensor

### Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor to check the engine oil level has failed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Note**

Refer to the description in the Owner's Manual ⇨ *page 322, Checking the engine oil level*.

## Tank system

Vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive*: ⇨ *page 103*.

### Please refuel

The first time the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there are approximately 1.8 gallons (7 liters) of fuel in the tank on front wheel drive vehicles, or approximately 2.2 gallons (8.5 liters) of fuel in the tank on all wheel drive vehicles.

### Please refuel immediately

If the indicator light turns on the message appears, the fuel tank is almost empty. Refuel the vehicle immediately.

### Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Tips**

For more information on fueling, see ⇨ *page 315*.

## Washer fluid level

If the indicator light turns on, the washer fluid is almost out. Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight ▶

washer system* when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *page 328*.

## Windshield wipers

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a windshield wiper malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Driver's door*

**Driver's door: malfunction! Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the driver's door. Select the P selector lever position (automatic transmission) to secure the vehicle.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Bulb failure indicator

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

Replace the bulb immediately.

**Vehicle lights: system fault!**

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

- Light bulbs are under pressure and can explode when bulbs are replaced, which increases the risk of injury.
- With HID headlights (xenon headlights), the high-voltage component must be handled correctly. Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury.

## Dynamic headlight range control

**Headlight range control: malfunction! See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the dynamic headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

**Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the adaptive lights. The headlights still function.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Light/rain sensor

Applies to: vehicles with light/rain sensor

**Automatic headlights/wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual**

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. You can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all wiper functions that are independent of the rain sensor.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a malfunction in the suspension control. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## ⇦ ⇨ Turn signals

If the ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light blinks, a turn signal is turned on. If both indicator lights are blinking, the emergency flashers are on.

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Opening and closing

## Central locking

### Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 33*, or
– Sensors in the front door handles* ⇨ *page 34*, or
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 36*, or
– Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 34*.

#### Turn signals

The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle.

If they do not flash, then the ignition may still be switched on or one of the doors, the luggage compartment, or the hood may be open, for example.

#### Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

The vehicle will unlock again if the ignition key is removed, the opening function in the central locking switch is activated, or one of the door handles is operated. The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 35*.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

#### Selective door unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 35*.

#### Unintentionally locking yourself out

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and the remote control key is not in the vehicle. This helps to prevent you from locking yourself out accidentally.

The following conditions prevent you from locking your remote control key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or by touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– If the most recently used convenience key* is in the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid automatically unlocks again after closing it.
– If the convenience key* that was last used is detected inside the vehicle, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside.

**WARNING**

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.
– No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 36*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

**Tips**

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

8V2012721BF

## Key set

**Fig. 16** Your vehicle key set

### Remote or convenience key*

The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 34* and ⇨ *page 76*. You can unlock/lock your vehicle with the remote control key. To fold the key out and back in place, press the release button ⇨ *fig. 16* -arrow-.

### Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. To do this, select the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

### Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have *this* key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

### Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle. Under certain circumstances, the vehicle may not be able to start if there is a key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

### Data in the master key

During driving, data that is relevant for service and maintenance is continuously stored on your master key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with a convenience key*.

**Note**

Protect the remote control key against high temperatures, direct sunlight, and moisture.

**Tips**

- The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a cell phone or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked!
- For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 386*.

## LED and battery in the remote control key

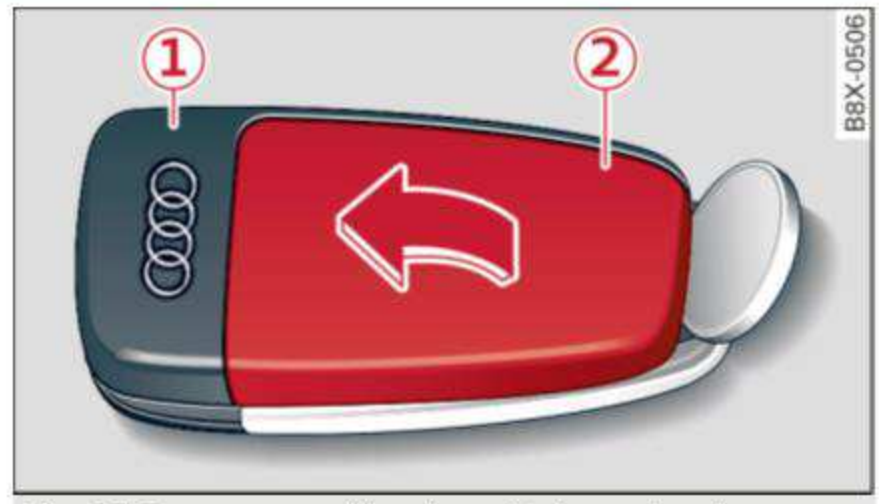



**Fig. 17** Remote control key (rear side): opening the cover

### LED on the remote control key

The LED in the remote control key informs you of the key operation.

- ▸ If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- ▸ If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- ▸ If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is dead. The indicator light and the message **Please change key battery** appear. Replace the battery in the remote control key. ▶

### Replacing the remote control key battery

- Pry the cover (2) off of the key (1) using a coin ⇨ *fig. 17*.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" facing up.
- Press the cover back onto the key until it clicks into place.

**For the sake of the environment**

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

**Tips**

The replacement battery must meet the same specifications as the original battery in the remote control key.

## Synchronizing the remote control key

The remote control key must be synchronized if the vehicle does not lock/unlock with the remote control.

- Press the remote control key button 🔒.
- Insert the key in the driver's door lock within 30 seconds ⇨ *page 36*.
- Press the 🔒 button or 🔒 button.

## Unlocking/locking with remote control

**Fig. 18** Remote control key or convenience key: button programming

- To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button (1) ⇨ *fig. 18*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button (2) ⇨ ⚠ **once**.
- To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the 🚗 button (3) briefly.
- To open* the luggage compartment lid, press and hold the 🚗 button (3) for at least one second.
- To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button (4). The vehicle horn and emergency flashers are activated.
- To turn off the alarm, press the PANIC button (4) again.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open any of the doors, the hood, or the luggage compartment lid within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time. This does not apply if you press and hold the 🚗 button (3) for at least one second.

You can select in the Infotainment system if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door should unlocking when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 35*.

**WARNING**

Read and following all warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 31*.

**Tips**

- Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
- The vehicle can only be locked when the selector lever is in the P position.
- Do not use the remote control when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could unintentionally lock the vehicle. If you then tried to start the engine or open a door, the alarm would be triggered. If this happens, press the 🔓 unlock button.
- Only use the panic function in an emergency.

## Unlocking/locking with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

*The doors and luggage compartment lid can be unlocked/locked without using the remote control key.*

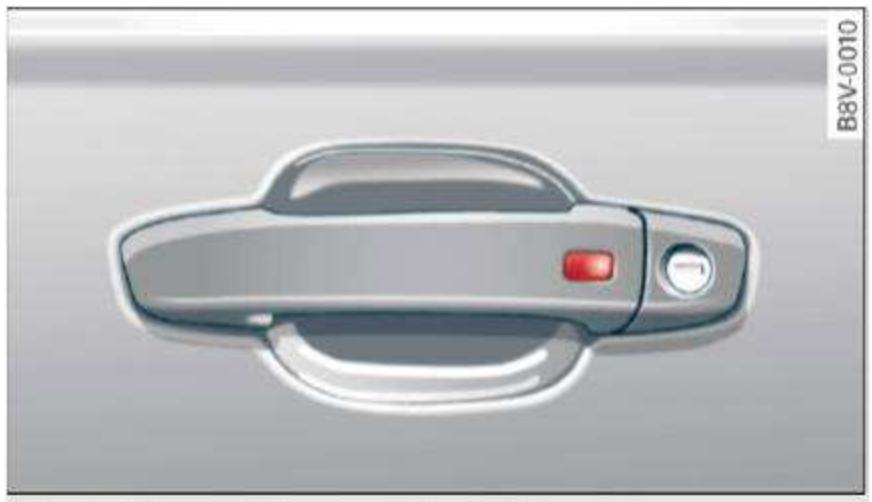



**Fig. 19** Door handle: sensor for locking

### Unlocking the vehicle

- ▸ Grasp the driver's or front passenger's door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- ▸ Pull on the door handle to open the door.

### Locking the vehicle

- ▸ Place the selector lever in the "P" position; otherwise, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 19*, ⇨ ⚠. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle can only be done at the front doors. The remote control key cannot be more than approximately 5 ft (1.5 m) away from the door handle. It makes no difference whether the remote control key is in your jacket pocket, purse or briefcase.

If you hold the door handle while locking, this can impair the locking function.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This allows you the opportunity to check that the driver's door is locked.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 35*.

**⚠ WARNING**

Read and following all warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 31*.

**Tips**

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:

– The proximity sensor switches off after a few days to save energy. You then have to pull once on the door handle to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open it.
– The energy management system gradually turns off unnecessary convenience functions to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible. You may not be able to unlock your vehicle using the convenience key.

**Tips**

Unlocking with the convenience key (keyless access) can be deactivated temporarily.

– Place the selector lever in the "P" position; otherwise, the vehicle cannot be locked.
– Close the door and press the button (1) ⇨ *page 33, fig. 18*.
– Press the sensor on the door handle **once** within five seconds ⇨ *fig. 19*, ⇨ ⚠. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.
– The next time the vehicle is unlocked, it can only be done with the remote control key or mechanically using the door lock cylinder. The convenience key will be active again after the next locking/unlocking.

## Central locking switch

**Fig. 20** Driver's door: central locking switch ▶

▸ To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button ⇨ *fig. 20*.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– Opening the doors and the luggage compartment lid from the *outside* is not possible for security reasons, such as when stopped at a light.
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– Front doors: you can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– Rear doors*: pull on the door handle *once* to unlock the door. Pull on the door handle *again* to open the door.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Read and following all warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 31*.
– The power locking switch works with the ignition off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the 🔒 button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

**ⓘ Tips**

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 31*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the 🔓 button in the central locking switch.

## Central locking settings

*You can set which functions are controlled by the central locking system.*

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking**.

**Door unlocking** - you can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver's door** should unlock. The luggage compartment lid also unlocks when **All** is selected. If you select **Driver's door** in a vehicle with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

If you select **Driver's door**, all the doors and luggage compartment lid will unlock if you press the 🔓 button on the remote control key twice.

**Long press to open windows** - the convenience opening/closing function can be switched on/off ⇨ *page 40*.

**Fold mirrors*** - if you switch the function on, the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

**Confirmation tone** - when checked off ✓, a tone will sound when you lock the vehicle [1].

[1] This function is not available in all countries.

## Mechanically unlocking/locking the doors

*If the central locking fails, you must unlock/lock the doors separately.*

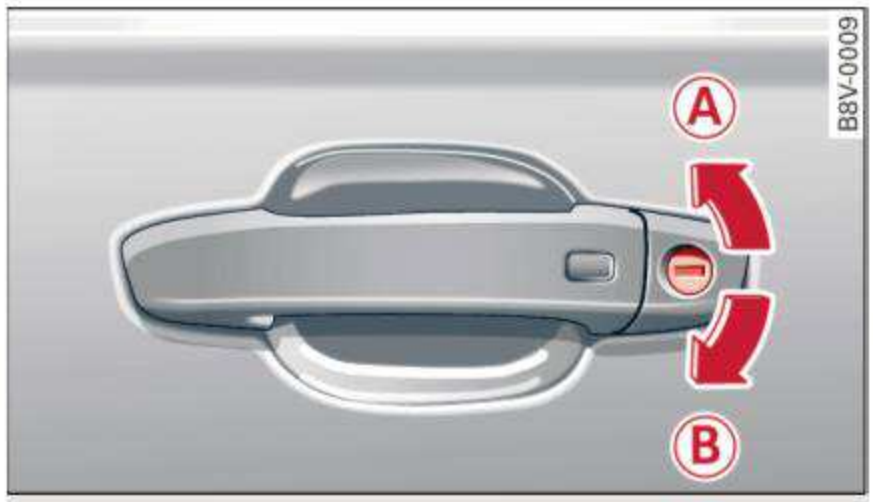



**Fig. 21** Driver's door: door lock cylinder

**Fig. 22** Front side of the door: emergency release

### Unlocking/locking the driver's door

- ▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 21*.
- ▸ To lock the driver's door, put the selector lever in the P position and turn the key **once** to the lock position Ⓑ ⇨ ⚠.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 35*.

### Locking the front passenger's door/rear doors*

The mechanical lock is located on the edge of the front passenger's door and the rear doors*. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▸ Remove the cap from the opening ⇨ *fig. 22*.
- ▸ Insert the key bit in the slot inside and turn the key all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door*).

**⚠ WARNING**

Read and following all warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 31*.

## Anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is switched on or off when locking/unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

### Switching the alarm off manually

- ▸ To switch the alarm off, press the 🔓 button on the remote control key or switch the ignition on.

### Break-in security feature

The alarm will sound if there is a break-in at the doors, hood, and/or luggage compartment lid.

# Luggage compartment lid

## Opening/closing the luggage compartment lid

**Fig. 23** Luggage compartment lid: opening (handle)

**Fig. 24** Driver's door: opening the luggage compartment lid

### Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key for at least one second, or
- ▸ Move the selector lever to the "P" position and pull the button* in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 24*, or
- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 23*.

### Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Use the inside grip to pull the luggage compartment lid down and allow it to close using a gentle push ⇨ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

– After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. Otherwise the luggage compartment lid could open suddenly when driving, which increases the risk of an accident.

– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the luggage compartment lid is open. A child could climb into the vehicle through the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was then closed, the child would be trapped in the vehicle and unable to escape. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid and the doors closed when the vehicle is not in use.
– Always make sure no one is in the luggage compartment lid's range of motion when it is closing, especially near the hinges. Fingers or hands could be pinched.

**Tips**

– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
– In case of an emergency or a faulty handle, the luggage compartment lid can be opened manually from the inside ⇨ *page 38*.

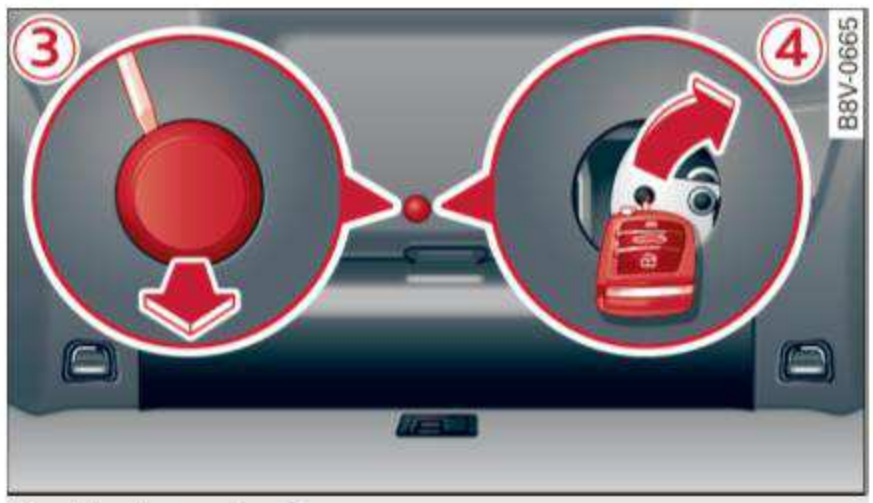
## Luggage compartment lid emergency unlocking from the inside

Applies to: vehicles with emergency release from inside

*The luggage compartment lid can be released from the inside in an emergency.*

Applies to: version 1

**Fig. 25** Section of the luggage compartment: access to the emergency release




Applies to: version 2

**Fig. 26** Section of the luggage compartment: access to the emergency release

Applies to: vehicles with emergency release from the outside: note the information in ⇨ *page 38, Luggage compartment lid emergency unlocking from the outside*.

Applies to: version 1

- ▸ Fold the backrest on the rear bench seat forward ⇨ *page 65*.
- ▸ Pry off the cover using the key bit on the opened vehicle key ① ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- ▸ Insert the key in the opening behind the cover ② and press the key in the direction of the arrow until the lock releases.

Applies to: version 2

- ▸ Fold the backrest on the rear bench seat forward ⇨ *page 65*.
- ▸ Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 360*. Use the flat side of the reversible screwdriver blade.
- ▸ Use the screwdriver to pry the cover off ③ ⇨ *fig. 26*.
- ▸ Insert the key in the opening behind the cover ④ and press the key in the direction of the arrow until the lock releases.

## Luggage compartment lid emergency unlocking from the outside

Applies to: vehicles with emergency release from outside

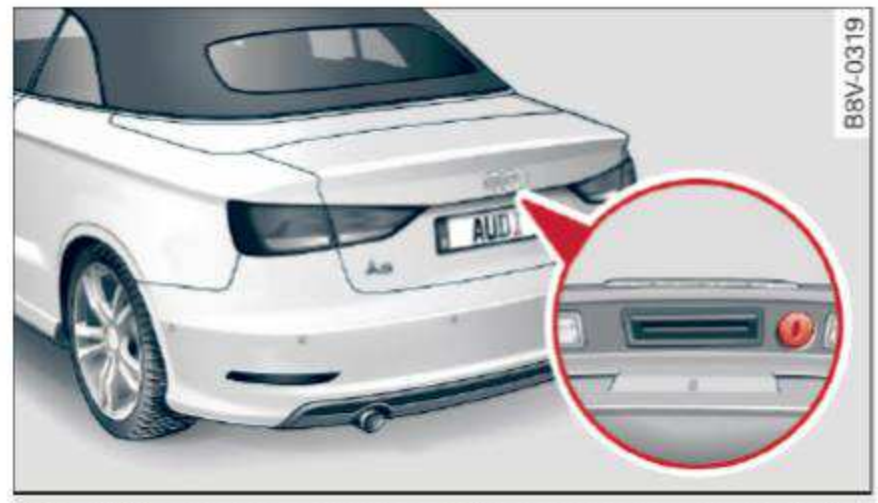



**Fig. 27** Luggage compartment lid: emergency release lock cylinder

- ▸ Insert the key into the lock cylinder near the handle.
- ▸ Turn the key counterclockwise.

# Child safety lock

Applies to: vehicles with mechanical child safety locks

*The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside and the rear power windows from be operated.*

**Fig. 28** Section of driver's door: controls

**Fig. 29** Rear door: child safety lock

### Vehicles with button

- To deactivate/activate the power window switch in the rear doors, press the button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 28*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.
- To also deactivate/activate the inner door handle, open the respective rear door and turn the key switch with the vehicle key in the direction of the arrow or the opposite direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 29*.

### Message in the instrument cluster display

**Childproof catch: malfunction! Please contact Service**

There is a malfunction in the child safety lock. Press the button again.

If the message stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

**WARNING**

- If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.
- A malfunction in the child safety lock could allow the rear doors to be opened from the inside, which increases the risk of an accident.

# Power windows

## Controls

*The driver can control all power windows.*

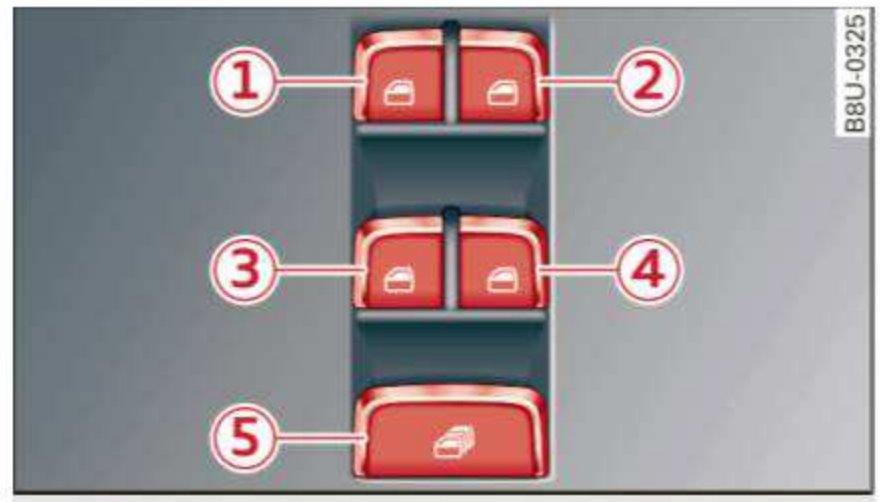



**Fig. 30** Driver's door: power window controls

All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

### Opening and closing the windows

- To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed/pulled again.
- To select a position in between opened and closed, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

### Power window switches

(1) Left front
(2) Right front
(3) Left rear*
(4) Right rear*

Ⓢ Central switch* for opening or closing all side windows at the same time

**WARNING**

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.
– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. Pinching could cause serious injuries.
– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

**Tips**

After turning the ignition off you can still open and close the windows for approximately 10 seconds. The power windows do not switch off until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.

## Convenience opening/closing

Applies to: vehicles with convenience opening/closing

*All of the windows and the panorama glass roof* can be opened/closed at the same time.*

For power top convenience opening/closing, refer to the information in ⇨ *page 43*.

### Convenience opening feature

- ▸ Press and hold the open button 🔓 on the remote control key until all windows and the panorama glass roof* have reached the desired position. Or
- ▸ Hold the key in the driver's door lock until all windows and the panorama glass roof* have reached the desired position.

### Convenience closing feature

- ▸ Press the 🔒 button on the remote control key until all windows and the panorama glass roof* are closed ⇨ ⚠. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: touch the sensor on one of the front door handles and continue touching it until all of the windows and the panorama glass roof* are closed. Do not place your hand in the door handle when doing this.
- ▸ Hold the key in the driver's door lock in the lock position until all windows and the panorama glass roof* are closed ⇨ ⚠.

The function can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 35*.

**WARNING**

– Never close the windows or panorama glass roof* carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– For security reasons, the windows and the panorama glass roof* can only be opened and closed with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6.5 feet (2 m) away from the vehicle. Always pay attention when using the 🔒 button to close the windows and the panorama glass roof* so that no one is pinched. The closing process will stop immediately when the 🔓 button is released.

## Correcting power window malfunctions

*You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.*

- ▸ Pull the power window switch until the window is completely raised.
- ▸ Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

# Panorama glass roof

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with panorama glass roof

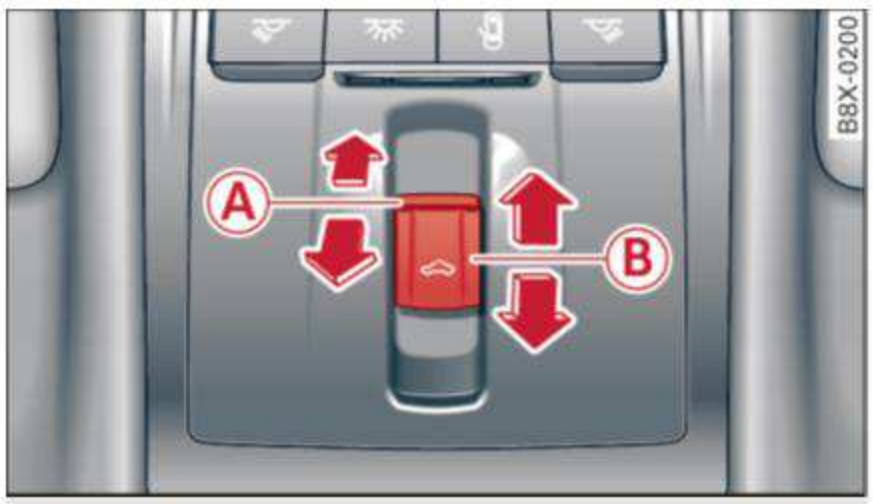



**Fig. 31** Section of headliner: panorama glass roof button ▶

The button has two stages. In the second stage, the roof automatically runs to the end position (open/closed) when the button is operated briefly. The operation will stop if the button is pressed/pulled again.

### Ⓐ Tilting/sliding

- ▸ To tilt the sunroof completely, press the switch briefly to the second level.
- ▸ To close the roof completely, pull the button down briefly to the second level or slide the button forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch in the first level until the desired position is reached.

### Ⓑ Opening/closing

- ▸ To open the sunroof completely, slide the button back to just before the second level.
- ▸ To close the roof completely, push the button forward briefly to the second level or pull the button down briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch forward/back in the first level until the desired position is reached.

### Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually, depending on the position of the panorama glass roof. The sunshade can be opened partially.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of injury, always pay attention when closing the panorama glass roof. Always switch the ignition off when leaving the vehicle and always take the vehicle with you.

**Note**

Always close the panorama glass roof when leaving your vehicle. Rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment.

**Tips**

– For information about convenience opening/closing, see ⇨ *page 40*.

– You can still operate the panorama glass roof for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off. The switch is deactivated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.
– The panorama glass roof can only be opened when the temperature is warmer than -4 °F (-20 °C).

## Panorama glass roof emergency closing

Applies to: vehicles with panorama glass roof

If the panorama glass roof detects resistance or an object in its path while closing, the roof will open again automatically. If the sunroof fails to close after removing the object and after trying to close a second time, you can perform an emergency closing.

- ▸ Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the switch until the roof closes.

If you release the switch early, the panorama glass roof will open again.

# Power top

## Automatic power top

### General information

Applies to: vehicles with power top

The power top opens and closes automatically. When open, the power top is stored completely in the power top compartment. The power top can be opened or closed at speeds up to 30 mph (50 km/h).

Under normal conditions, the power top is wind- and waterproof. In rare cases, small droplets of water may form under extreme weather conditions such as torrential or prolonged rain. That is normal and no cause for concern.

Follow the care instructions to keep the power top free of leaks and to maintain its appearance ⇨ *page 354, Care and cleaning*. Also observe the following:

– Open and stow the power top only when it is clean and dry. Stowing the power top when it is damp can create imprints in it, and if it is left that way for long periods of time, mildew and other damage can form. To prevent scratching or damaging the power top, do not use any sharp-edged objects to remove ice and snow. The rear window may be cleared with a standard ice scraper.
– Do not leave the power top open for several weeks or the creases in it may become discolored.
– Do not open the power top when the temperature is below 32 °F (0 °C). The fabric in the power top loses elasticity in sub-zero temperatures.

### Opening/closing the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

**Fig. 32** Center console: power top switch

Requirement: the power top storage compartment must be lowered ⇨ *page 44* and the luggage compartment lid must be closed.

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ To open/close the power top, pull/press and hold the button (1) during the entire process.

The status of the power top is shown in the instrument cluster display when operating the power top switch.

You can close the power top when the wind deflector is installed ⇨ *page 45*.

A message will appear in the instrument cluster if the power top cannot be opened or closed ⇨ *page 44*.

**WARNING**

– When operating the power top, make sure the function is not affected by wind or other factors and that it does not interfere with other drivers.
– Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.
– Make sure no one will be injured by the power top supports and other moving components when opening and closing the top.
– The headroom in the rear is reduced when opening and closing the power top. Make sure the rear passengers keep enough distance from the power top to reduce the risk of injury.

▶

– Visibility to the rear is limited when operating the power top. Avoid operating the top while driving in reverse.

**Note**

– To prevent damage to the power top:
  – do not store any objects in the power top storage compartment.
  – make sure there is enough space above the vehicle when opening or closing the power top.
– To reduce the risk of damage, make sure there are no sensitive objects in the power top storage compartment's range of motion.

**Tips**

– To prevent the vehicle battery from draining unnecessarily, do not open or close the power top repeatedly when the engine is switched off.
– A message will appear in the instrument cluster if there is a malfunction in the power top ⇨ *page 44*.
– The power top can also be operated manually temporarily if there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 46, Power top emergency operation*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility should diagnose and correct the cause of the malfunction as soon as possible.
– If the vehicle is parked with the power top open, the vehicle interior is not protected from damaging weather or unauthorized access. Lock any items you leave behind in the luggage compartment. Close the power top before leaving the vehicle.
– The side windows automatically lower slightly when opening or closing the power top.

## Power top convenience opening/closing

Applies to: vehicles with power top

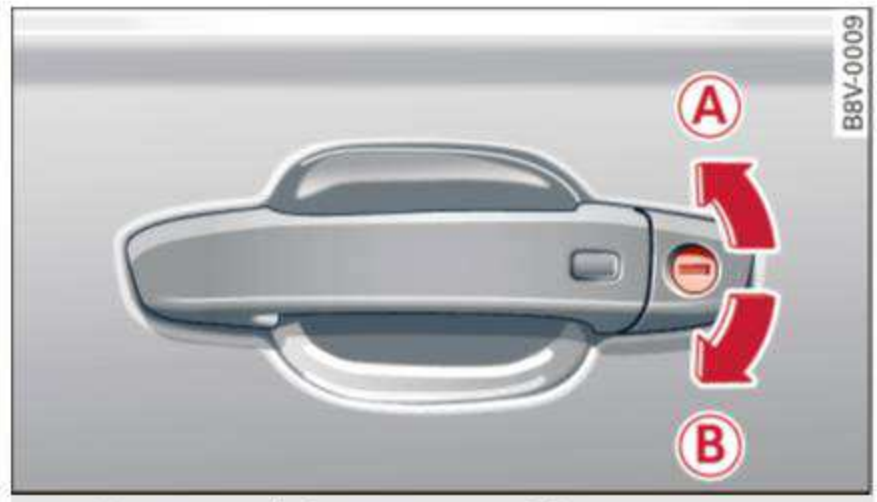



**Fig. 33** Turning the key to open and close

### Convenience opening with the driver door lock

▸ Turn the key once in the driver door lock to the opening position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 33*.
▸ Turn the key to the opening position again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top opens completely.

### Convenience closing with the driver door lock

▸ Turn the key once in the driver door lock to the closing position Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 33*.
▸ Turn the key to the closing position again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top closes completely.

Releasing the key stops the opening or closing process **immediately**.

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Opening/closing the power top on page 42*.

## Power top storage compartment

Applies to: vehicles with power top

**Fig. 34** Luggage compartment: power top storage compartment lowered

**Fig. 35** Luggage compartment: power top storage compartment raised

The power top storage compartment must be lowered to open the power top. To avoid damage, make sure that are no sensitive objects in the storage compartment's range of motion.

### Raising the power top storage compartment

- Press the trim on the handle in the direction of the arrow to raise the power top storage compartment ⇨ *fig. 34*.

### Lowering the power top storage compartment

- Press the trim on the handle in the direction of the arrow to lower the power top storage compartment ⇨ *fig. 35*.

The power top storage compartment can be raised when the **power top is closed**. This provides more cargo space in the luggage compartment.

The **open power top** is stored and protected in the power top storage compartment. The power top storage compartment cannot be raised when the power top is open. Because of this, the cargo area in the luggage compartment is smaller when the power top is open than when it is closed.

## Messages

Applies to: vehicles with power top

**Power top: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited functionality. See owner's manual**

This message appears if there is a malfunction in the system. Try to open/close the power top again. If the message still appears, then have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility correct the malfunction. Do not drive more than 30 mph (50 km/h) until it is corrected.

**Power top: please close trunk lid**

This message appears in the instrument cluster display if the luggage compartment is not closed when the power top is operated. Close the luggage compartment lid.

**Power top: please lower power top compartment**

This message appears if the power top storage compartment is not lowered when opening the power top. Lower the power top storage compartment ⇨ *page 44*.

**Power top: malfunction! Unable to operate**

This message appears when there is a malfunction. The power top can be operated manually ⇨ *page 46*.

**Power top: operation currently not possible**

If the power top is operated continually for a long period of time, the overload protection activates for approximately 15 to 30 minutes. You can open or close the power top again after that.

**Power top: operation currently not possible. Engine must be running**

The power top is automatically deactivated if the battery voltage is low. You can open or close the power top again after starting the engine. ▶

**Power top: operation currently not possible. Outside temperature too low**

The power top will not open when the temperature is below -5 °F (-15 °C).

**Power top: operation currently not possible. Speed too high**

If you go above 30 mph (50 km/h), the power top cannot be operated due to safety reasons. Reduce the vehicle speed to close or open the power top.

**Power top: not secure. Speed too high**

This message appears if you go above 30 mph (50 km/h) when operating the power top. Reduce the vehicle speed and operate the power top again.

**Power top: malfunction! You can continue driving**

This message appears if there is a malfunction in the system. Try to open or close the power top again. If the message still appears, have the malfunction corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**WARNING**

Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

# Wind deflector

Applies to: vehicles with wind deflector

*The wind deflector reduces air movement in the passenger compartment in order to make driving more comfortable.*

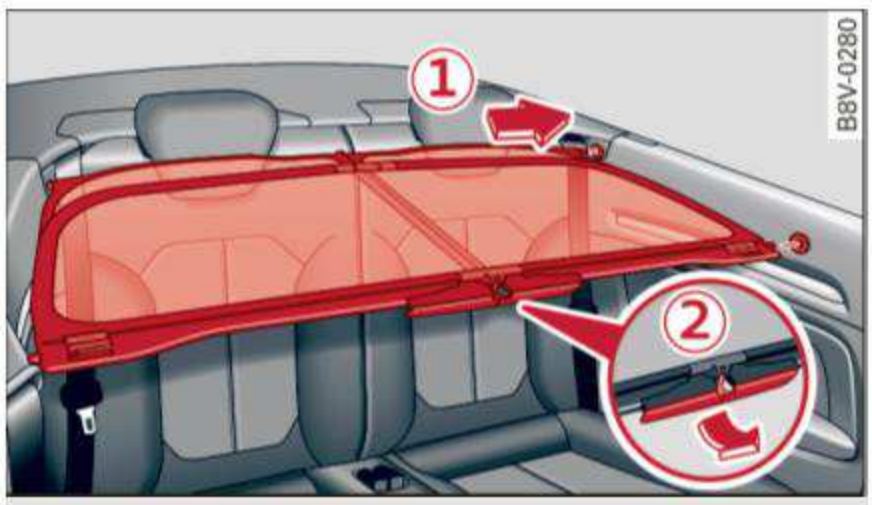



**Fig. 36** Rear of the vehicle: inserting the wind deflector (1)

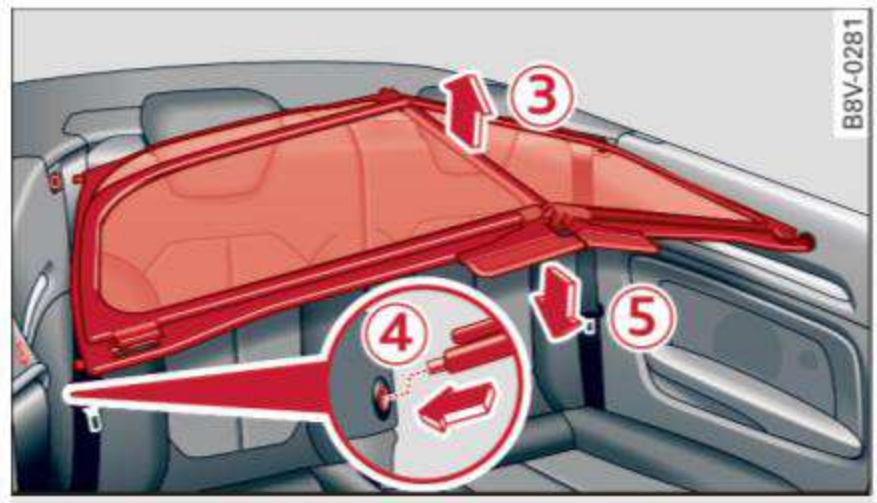



**Fig. 37** Rear of the vehicle: inserting the wind deflector (2)

The wind deflector is located in the luggage compartment in a storage bag*.

## Inserting and positioning the wind deflector

- ▸ Open the rear window on the passenger's side.
- ▸ Remove the wind deflector from the luggage compartment and fold it apart once. The wind deflector is installed in the correct position when the long side is toward the front and the wind deflector frame is at the top.
- ▸ Insert both pins on the wind deflector ① ⇨ *fig. 36* into the mounts in the side trim on the driver's side.
- ▸ Fold the handle ② upward and lift the center of the wind deflector slightly ③ ⇨ *fig. 37*.
- ▸ Now guide the wind deflector into the mounts on the passenger's side ④ and press lightly in the middle of the wind deflector ⑤ until the handle locks in place.
- ▸ Raise the wind deflector completely.

## Removing the wind deflector

- ▸ Fold the handle ② ⇨ *fig. 36* upward and fold the wind deflector frame back.
- ▸ Fold the handle ② upward and lift the center of the wind deflector slightly ③ ⇨ *fig. 37*.
- ▸ Remove the wind deflector from the mounts in the side trim on the passenger's side.
- ▸ Pull the wind deflector out of the mounts on the driver side and lift it out.
- ▸ Fold the wind deflector together and store it securely.

**WARNING**

– Do not use the wind deflector to secure cargo.

▶

– Be careful when installing so you do not pinch your fingers.
– Pay attention to the traffic when installing the wind deflector. Install the wind deflector from the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.

**Note**

Do not lean against the vehicle when installing the wind deflector. Hard objects and decorations on clothing such as belt buckles can scratch the paint.

**Tips**

– The wind deflector works best when all of the windows are rolled up while driving.
– Only store the wind deflector in the storage bag* when it is dry.

# Power top emergency operation

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with power top

*The power top can be closed manually if there is a malfunction.*

- Set the parking brake.
- Open all windows.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Pull the button (1) for approximately 10 to 15 seconds to reduce the pressure in the power top hydraulics ⇨ *page 42, fig. 32*.

Only close the power top manually in an emergency. Have a second person assist. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

– There is a risk of pinching the hands or other people during all of the power top emergency operation steps.
– Make sure all windows are lowered during emergency operation.
– Do not reach into the power top supports or other moving components.
– Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

**Tips**

The power top storage compartment lid is not latched after the emergency operation is complete. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Step 1: Release the power top storage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with power top

**Fig. 38** Rear seats folded forward: release loop for the power top storage compartment lid

**Fig. 39** Opening the side covers

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Fold the rear seat backrests forward ⇨ *page 65*.
- Remove the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit.
- Close the luggage compartment lid. ▶

- ▸ Pull the release loop down from the rear to release the power top storage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 38*.
- ▸ Slide the covers on both sides of the vehicle in the direction of the arrow until they lock in place ⇨ *fig. 39*.

## Step 2: Lift the power top storage compartment lid out

Applies to: vehicles with power top

**Fig. 40** Lifting the power top storage compartment lid out and setting up the supports

**Fig. 41** Power top storage compartment lid: supports set up

- ▸ Raise the power top storage compartment lid out of the power top compartment and hold it in place ① ⇨ *fig. 40* ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 46*.
- ▸ Secure the power top storage compartment lid by pressing on the side supports on both sides ②.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Always make sure that the side supports on the open power top storage compartment lid are in place, even when the power top is not fully open or closed. Otherwise, the power top storage compartment lid could fall, which increases the risk of an accident.

– Avoid touching the support rods and other moving parts when opening the power top storage compartment lid. If do you make contact, your hands could be pinched.

## Step 3: Open the locking pin

Applies to: vehicles with power top

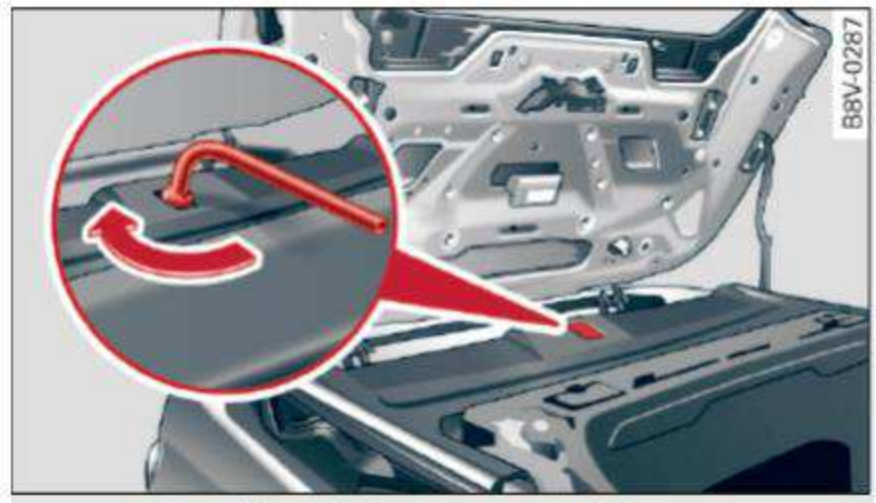



**Fig. 42** Rear of the vehicle: opening the locking pin

- ▸ Remove the cap on the trip and insert the wheel wrench into the opening.
- ▸ Turn the wheel wrench clockwise until it stops to open the locking pin.
- ▸ Remove the wheel wrench.

## Step 4: Close the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

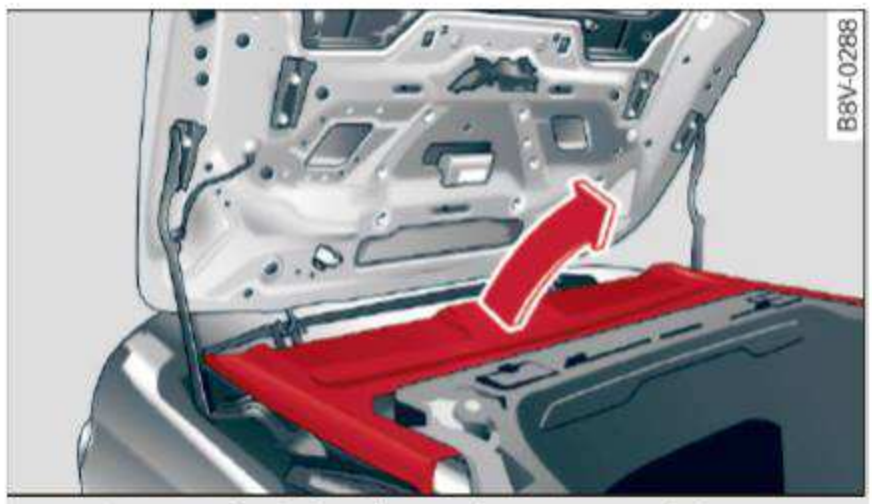



**Fig. 43** Rear of vehicle: closing the power top (1)

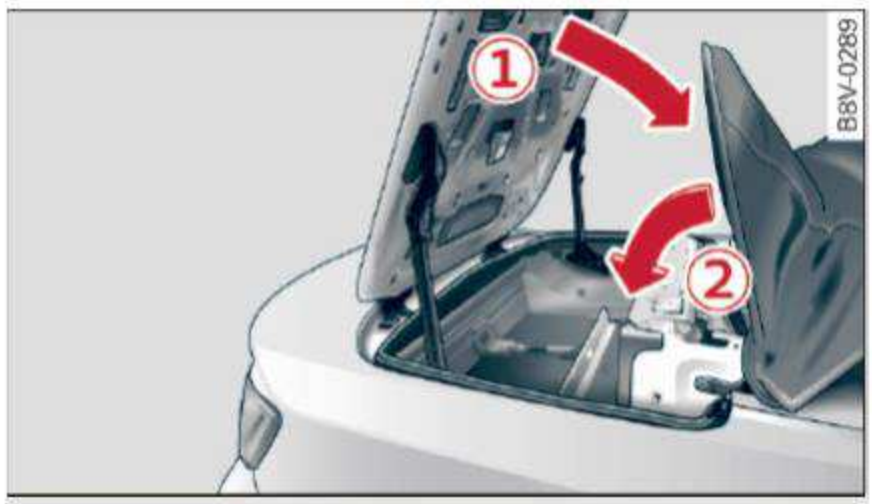



**Fig. 44** Rear of vehicle: closing the power top (2)

- ▸ Position yourself near the vehicle.
- ▸ Hold the power top by its front edge and pull it out completely ⇨ *fig. 43* ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 46*.
- ▸ Lift the rear edge of the power top.
- ▸ Release the power top storage compartment lid by pulling on the side supports to release them.
- ▸ Close the power top storage compartment lid ① and let the rear edge of the power top drop ② ⇨ *fig. 44*.

## Step 5: Lock the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

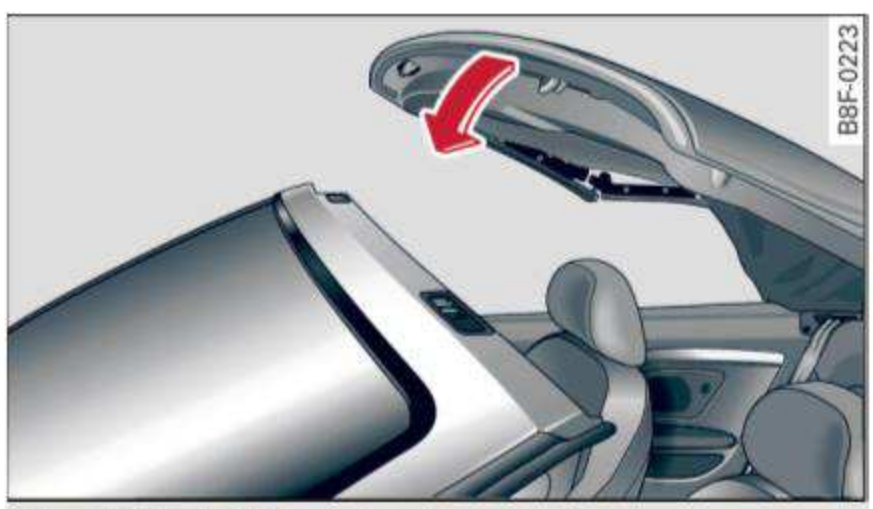



**Fig. 45** Windshield: closing the power top

**Fig. 46** Inside of the power top: locking the power top

- ▸ Press the power top onto the windshield frame ⇨ *fig. 45* ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 46*.
- ▸ Insert the wheel wrench into the opening and turn it counterclockwise until it stops ⇨ *fig. 46*.
- ▸ Remove the wheel wrench and seal the opening with the cap.
- ▸ Put the wheel wrench back into the vehicle tool kit.

**⚠ WARNING**

– When positioning the power top, avoid contact with the supports or other moving parts. Otherwise you could pinch your hands.

– When pressing the power top down onto the windshield frame, make sure that you do not pinch yourself or anyone else.

**Tips**

Make sure the locking mechanisms are locked securely.

# Lights and Vision

## Exterior lighting

### Switching lights on and off

**Fig. 47** Instrument panel: light switch with buttons

#### Light switch

Turn the light switch to the corresponding position when the ignition is switched on. and the selected position turn on (except position 0).

O - The daytime running lights automatically turn on. In vehicles for certain markets, you can switch the automatic daytime running lights on and off in the Infotainment system.

AUTO* - The headlights automatically adapt to the surrounding brightness.

- Parking lights

- Low beam headlights

#### Buttons

When you turn the light switch to the AUTO* or low beam headlight position, you can activate the following:

- All-weather lights. The front lights are adjusted automatically so that there is less glare for the driver from his or her own lights, for example when roads are wet.

- Rear fog light(s)

#### Automatic headlight range control

Applies to: vehicles with headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic headlight range control system that reduces glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range adjusts automatically.

#### Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive light

Adaptive light provides better visibility when it is dark by adapting the lights to the road conditions based on speed, such as on expressways, rural roads, at intersections, and in curves. The adaptive lights only function when the light switch is in the AUTO* position and the all-weather lights are switched off.

**WARNING**

- Automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .
- To prevent glare for traffic behind your vehicle, the rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulations.
- If the vehicle battery has been discharging for a while, the parking light may switch off automatically. Always make sure your vehicle is parked and adequately lit according to the laws. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.
- Always observe legal regulations when using the lighting systems described.

**Tips**

- The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is in the rearview mirror mount. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
- Only the front headlights turn on when the daytime running lights are switched on*. In vehicles in certain markets, the tail lights will also turn on.
- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

8V2012721BF

## Turn signal and high beam lever

*The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.*

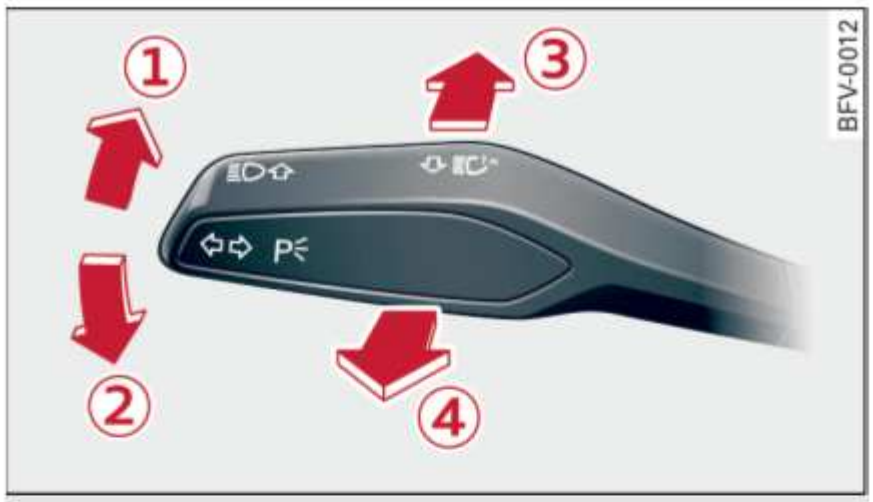



**Fig. 48** Turn signal and high beam lever

### Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on.

① - Right turn signal

② - Left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

### High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - High beams on (vehicles with High beam assistant* ⇨ *page 50*)

④ - High beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

**WARNING**

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

## High beam assistant

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

*The high beam assistant automatically turns the high beams on or off depending on the surrounding conditions.*

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed as well as other environmental factors and traffic conditions.

### Activating high beam assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be set to AUTO, the low beams must be switched on and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 51*.

- ▸ To activate the high beam assistant, press the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 50, fig. 48*. The or AUTO indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beams are switched on or off automatically. The indicator light turns on if the high beams were switched on.

### Switching the high beams on/off manually

If the high beams did not switch on/off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

- ▸ To switch the high beams on manually, push the lever forward ③. The indicator light turns on. To switch the high beams off again, pull the lever back ④.
- ▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

### Operating the headlight flasher

- ▸ To operate the headlight flasher when the high beam assistant is activated and high beams are switched off, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant remains active.

### Messages in the instrument cluster display

**Headlight assistant: malfunction! See owner's manual** ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. You can still switch the high beams on or off manually.

**Headlight assistant: currently unavailable. No camera view**

**Headlight assistant: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual**

The camera view is blocked, for example by a sticker or debris. Please clean the windshield.

The sensor is located in the interior rearview mirror mount. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.

**WARNING**

High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and may need to switch them on and off manually depending on light and visibility conditions. It may be necessary to operate them manually in situations such as:

- In adverse weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain, blowing snow or spraying water.
- On roads where oncoming traffic may be partially obscured, such as expressways.
- If there are road users with poor lighting, such as bicyclists.
- In tight curves and on steep hills.
- In poorly lit areas.
- With strong reflectors, such as signs.
- If the area of the windshield near the sensor is fogged over, dirty, icy or covered with a sticker.

## Adjusting the exterior lighting

*The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.*

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

### Automatic headlights*

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

**Activation time*** - you can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

**Headlight assistant*** - you can switch the high beam assistant* on and off.

### Entry/exit lighting*

You can switch the entry/exit lighting* on and off. When it is dark, it illuminates the area around the vehicle when unlocking the vehicle and after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The entry/exit lighting only works when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO*** position.

### Daytime running lights[1)]

The daytime running lights can be turned on and off. When daytime running lights are turned on, the lights will stay on continuously whenever the ignition is switched on.

## Emergency flashers

**Fig. 49** Instrument panel: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

▸ Press the ⚠ button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the ▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.

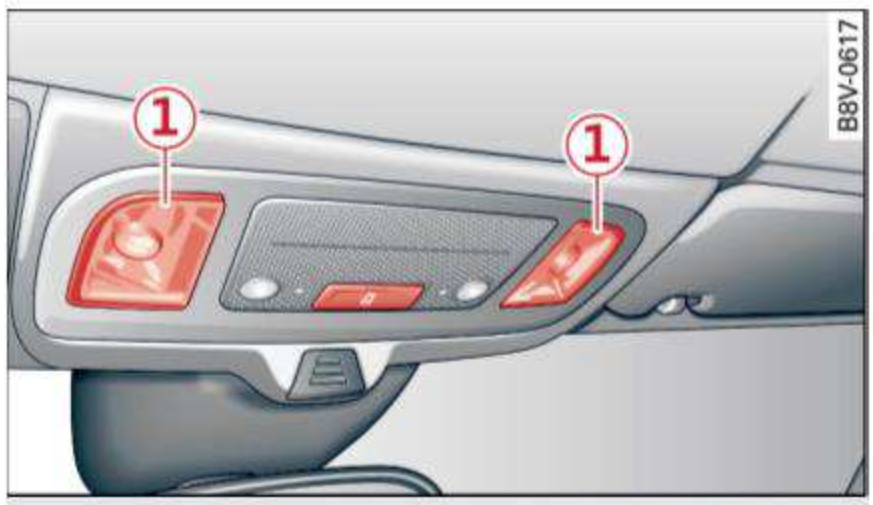
turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

# Interior lighting

## Front interior lighting

**Fig. 50** Headliner: front interior lighting (example)




Applies to: vehicles with touch-sensitive reading lights

**Fig. 51** Headliner: front interior lights

Press the corresponding button in the headliner to activate the following:

* - Interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

* - Reading lights on/off

Applies to: vehicles with touch-sensitive reading lights

- To turn a reading light on or off, touch the surface (1) briefly ⇨ *fig. 51*.
- To activate the manual dimming function, touch the surface (1) when the light is switched off and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

## Rear interior lighting

Applies to: vehicles with rear reading lights

**Fig. 52** Headliner: rear reading lights (example)

- To turn a reading light on/off, press the button * or *.

## Interior lighting

Applies to: vehicles with interior lighting

*The Interior lighting can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.*

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting**.

You may be able to adjust the brightness of the individual zones, depending on vehicle equipment.

- Press the right control button and select one of the zones that is shown.

The interior lighting turns on when you switch the headlights on while the ignition is on.

## Instrument illumination

*You can adjust the background brightness of the instruments and display illumination.*

**Fig. 53** Instrument illumination

- ▸ Press the knob to release it.
- ▸ Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- ▸ Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

**Tips**

Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument illumination (needles and gauges) may turn on when the lights are off and the ignition is switched on. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

# Vision

## Adjusting the exterior mirrors

**Fig. 54** Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors (example)

Turn the knob to the desired position:

0 - all adjustment functions are deactivated.

◁/▷ - adjusts the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heats* the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folds the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to one of the other positions. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 35*.

### Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's exterior mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

**WARNING**

Curved mirror surfaces (for example convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. You may estimate incorrectly when you use these mirrors to gauge your distance from the vehicles behind you when changing lanes, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

– Applies to vehicles with power folding exterior mirrors: if the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. The mirrors will make a loud noise when they latch into place. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.

– Applies to vehicles without power folding exterior mirrors: if the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must move it back in place by hand.

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* ▶

by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

**Tips**

If the power adjustment fails, both mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

## Dimming the mirrors

*Your vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic* dimming rearview mirror.*

### Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

### Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

**WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with automatic dimming rearview mirror

Electrolyte fluid can leak out from broken mirror glass. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.

– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, flush them thoroughly with a large amount of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with automatic dimming rearview mirror

Electrolyte fluid can leak out from broken mirror glass. This liquid damages plastic surfaces. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible with a wet sponge.

**Tips**

Applies to: vehicles with automatic dimming rearview mirror

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

## Sun visors

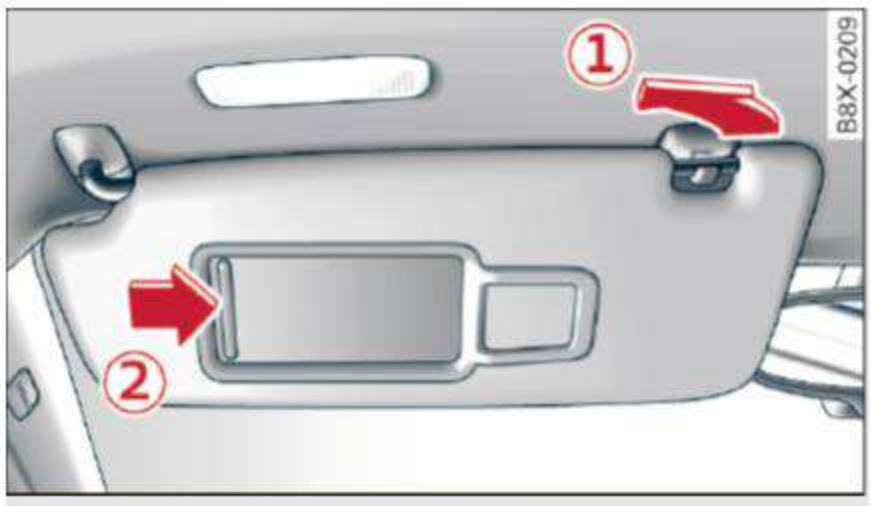



**Fig. 55** Left side: sun visor (example)

The sun visors can be moved out of their brackets and turned toward the doors (1). The sunshade can also be moved back and forth lengthwise in this position*.

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror* (2) opens.

# Windshield wipers

## Switching the windshield wipers on

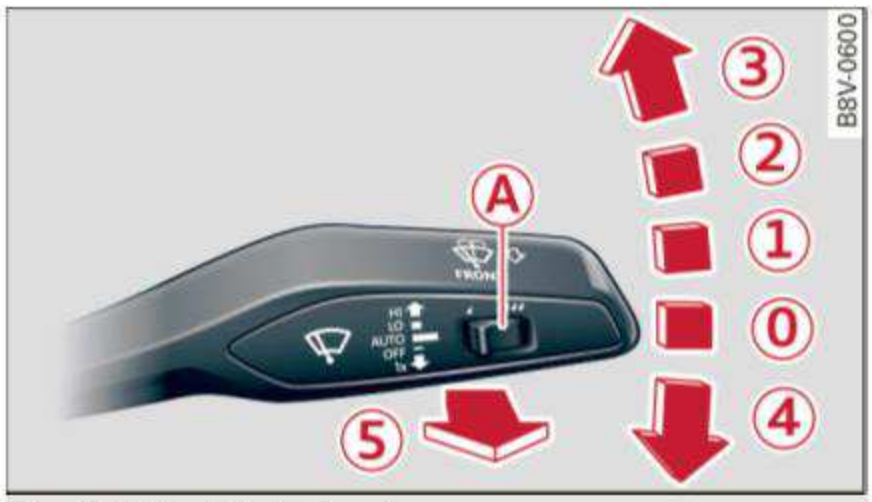



**Fig. 56** Windshield wiper lever

**Fig. 57** Rear window wiper* operation

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wipers off

① - Interval mode. To increase/decrease the wiper intervals, move the switch Ⓐ to the left/right. In vehicles with a rain sensor, the wipers turn on in the rain once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor that is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. To do this, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Rain sensor**.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - Clean the windshield. To eliminate water droplets, the windshield wipers perform one afterwipe after several seconds while driving in temperatures above 39 °F (4 °C). You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Clean the headlights. The headlight washer system operates only when the low beam headlights are switched on. If you move the lever in position ⑤, the headlights will be cleaned in fixed intervals.

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper

⑥ - Wipe the rear window. The rear wiper moves about every 6 seconds.

The rear wiper automatically switches on when the reverse gear is selected and the front windshield wipers are on and running.

⑦ - Clean the rear window. The number of wipes depends on how long the lever is held in position ⑦.

**WARNING**

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 56, Replacing the front wiper blades*.

**Note**

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.

▶

– The windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position (0)) before using a car wash. This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

**Tips**

– The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
– Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles in the windshield washer system are heated* at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

## Cleaning the wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Use a soft cloth and a glass cleaner.

### Windshield wiper

▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 56*.
▸ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

### Rear window wiper

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper

▸ Fold the wiper arm away from the rear window.

**WARNING**

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

If you see streaks again after cleaning the wiper blades, the blades must be replaced ⇨ *page 56*.

## Replacing the front wiper blades

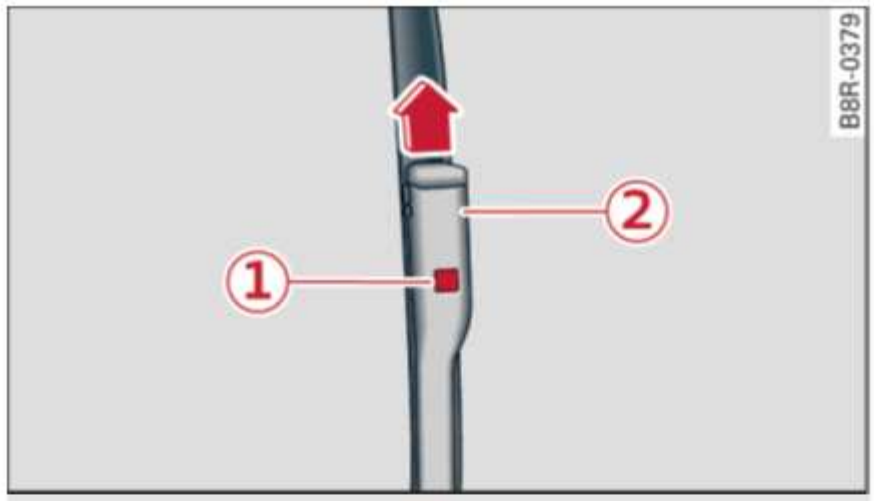



**Fig. 58** Removing windshield wiper blades

### Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

▸ To bring the wipers into the service position, turn the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever into position (4) for at least two seconds ⇨ *page 55, fig. 56*.
▸ To bring the windshield wipers back to the normal position, switch the ignition on and hold the windshield wiper lever in position (4) until the windshield wipers go back to the normal position, or drive faster than 8 mph (12 km/h).

### Removing the wiper blade

▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
▸ Press the locking knob (1) ⇨ *fig. 58* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

### Installing the wiper blade

▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm (2) until you hear it latch into place.
▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
▸ Turn the service position off.

**WARNING**

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year. ▶

**Note**

– Only fold the windshield wipers away when they are in the service position. Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not drive your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

**Tips**

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

## Replacing rear wiper blade

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper

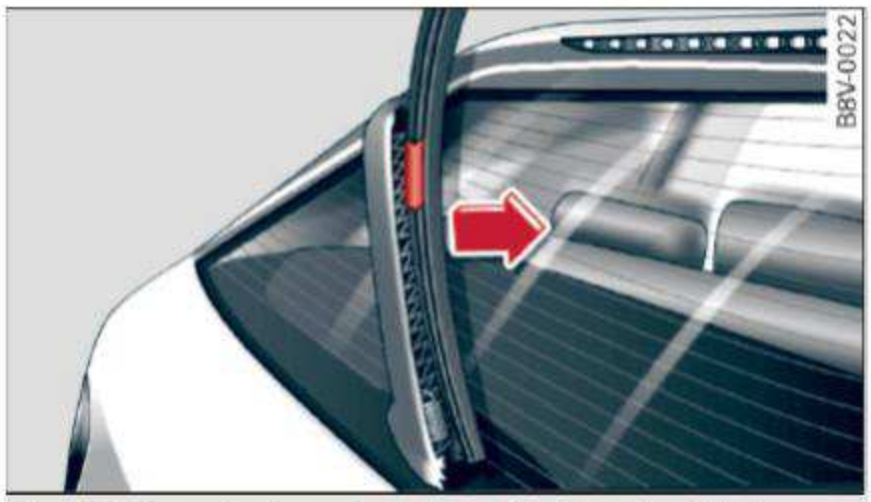



**Fig. 59** Rear window wiper: removing the wiper blade

### Removing the wiper blade

▸ Fold the wiper arm away from the rear window.
▸ Hold the wiper blade below the center -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 59* and pull it out of the retainer. Hold the windshield wiper arm securely while doing this.

### Installing the wiper blade

▸ Press the wiper blade mount into the retainer. Securely hold the wiper arm at the upper plastic end.
▸ Fold the window wiper arm back onto the rear window.

**WARNING**

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

# Digital compass

## Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

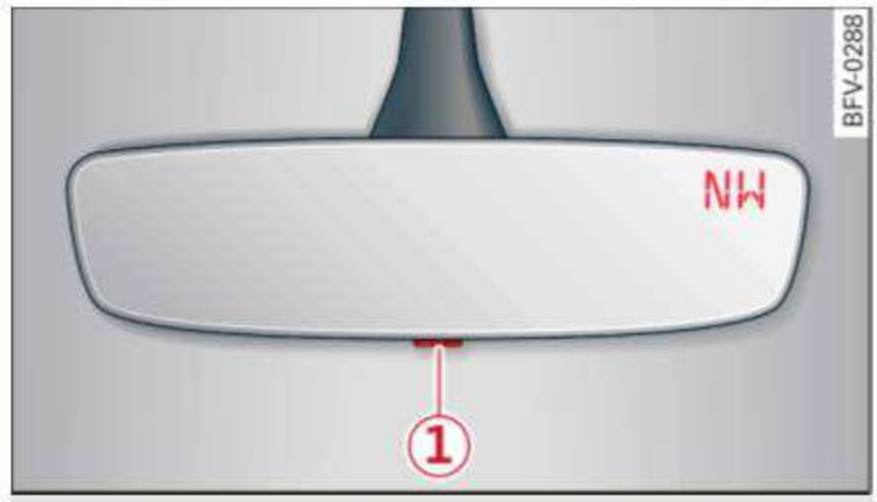



**Fig. 60** Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on

▸ To turn the compass on or off, press the button ① until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

**Tips**

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

## Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

*The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.*

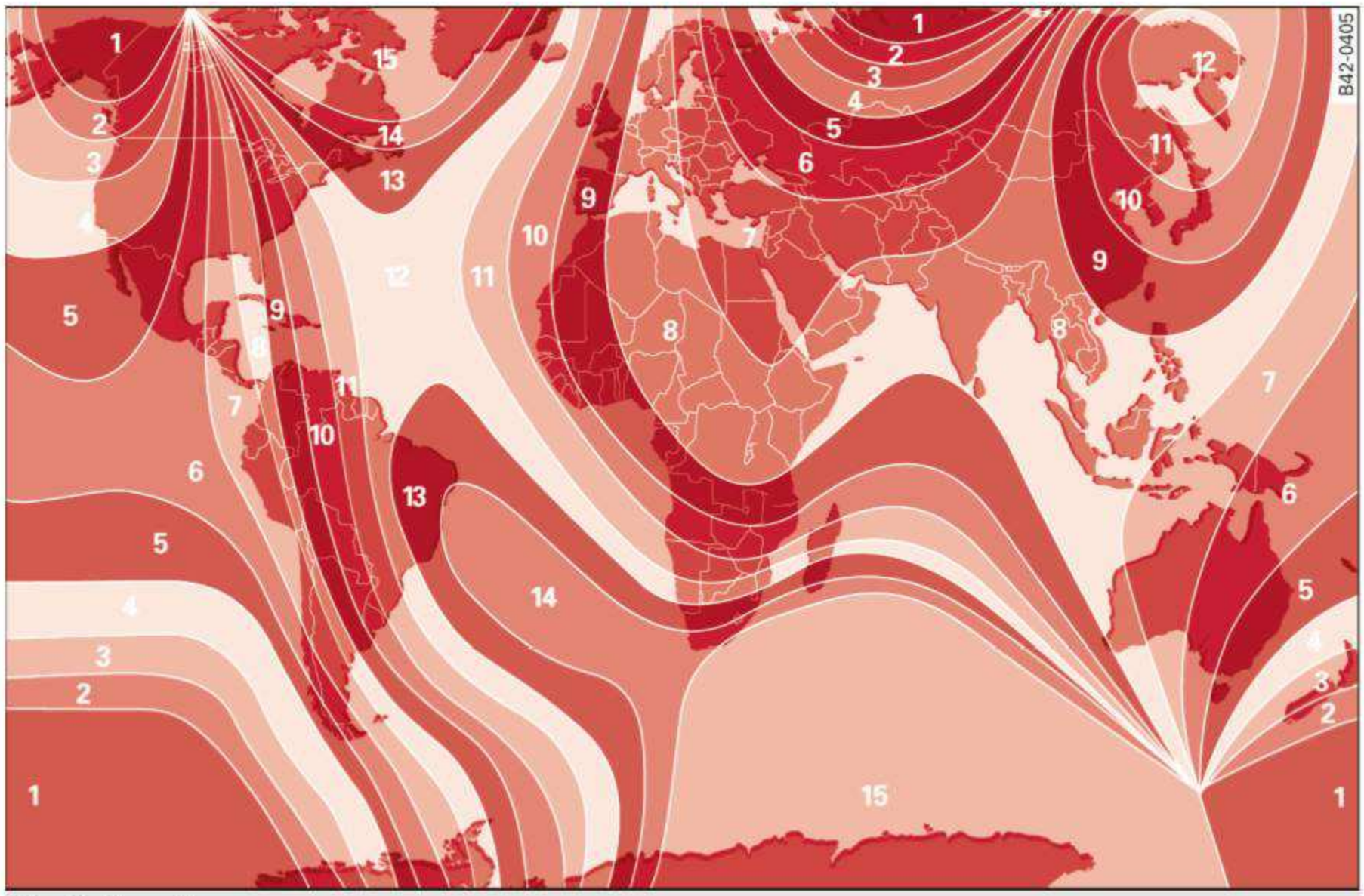



**Fig. 61** Magnetic zone map

- ▸ Press and hold the button ① ⇨ *page 57, fig. 60* until the number of the magnetic zone appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- ▸ Press the button ① repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

## Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

*If the display is incorrect or inaccurate, the compass must be recalibrated.*

- ▸ Press and hold the button ① until a "C" appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the interior rearview mirror.

**⚠ WARNING**

To reduce the risk to yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

# Seats and storage

## General information

**WARNING**

Refer to the chapter Driving Safely ⇨ *page 249, Driving safety* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

## Front seats

### Manual seat adjustment

Applies to vehicles with manual adjustable seats

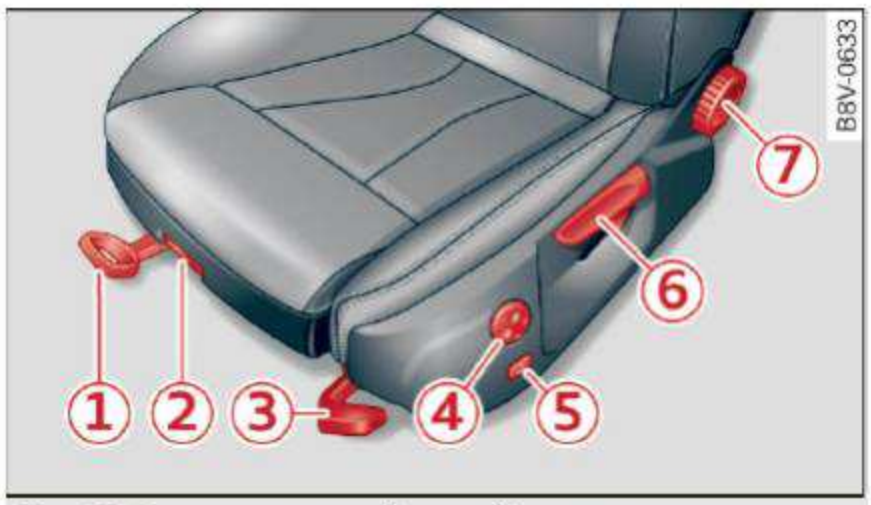



**Fig. 62** Front seat: manual seat adjustment

① - Moving the seat forward/back: pull the lever and slide the seat.

② - Lengthening/shortening the upper thigh support*: lift the handle and move the support.

③ - Adjusting the angle of the seat surface*. Pull/press the lever.

④ - Adjusting the lumbar support*: press the button in the desired direction.

⑤ - Switching the massage function* on/off.

⑥ - Moving the seat up/down: pull/press the lever.

⑦ - Adjusting the backrest angle: turn the adjusting wheel.

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the front seats when the vehicle is stationary.
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Adjusting the seat carelessly or without checking can pinch hands and fingers.
– The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

**Tips**

The massage function* switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

### Power seat adjustment

Applies to vehicles with power adjustable seats

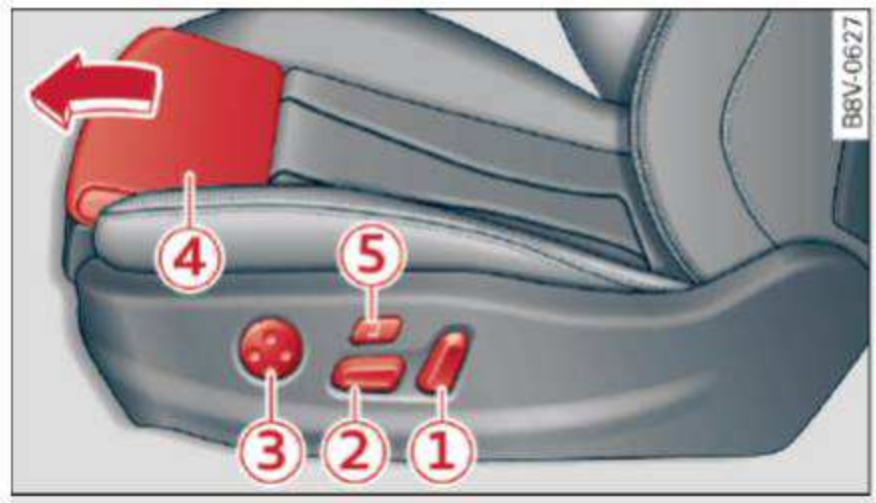



**Fig. 63** Front seat: power seat adjustment

① - Adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

② - Moving the seat up/down: press the button upward/downward. To adjust the front seat cushion, press the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

② - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

③ - Adjusting the lumbar support*: press the button in the desired direction.

④ - Lengthening/shortening the upper thigh support*: lift the handle and move the support.

⑤ - Switching the massage function* on/off. ▶

**WARNING**

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the front seats when the vehicle is stationary.
– The power adjustment for the front seats also works with the ignition switched off or with the ignition key removed. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle for this reason.
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands, which increases the risk of injury.
– The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

**Tips**

The massage function* switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

## Easy seat entry

Applies to: vehicles with entry assistance

*Entry assistance makes it easier for the rear passengers to enter and leave the vehicle.*

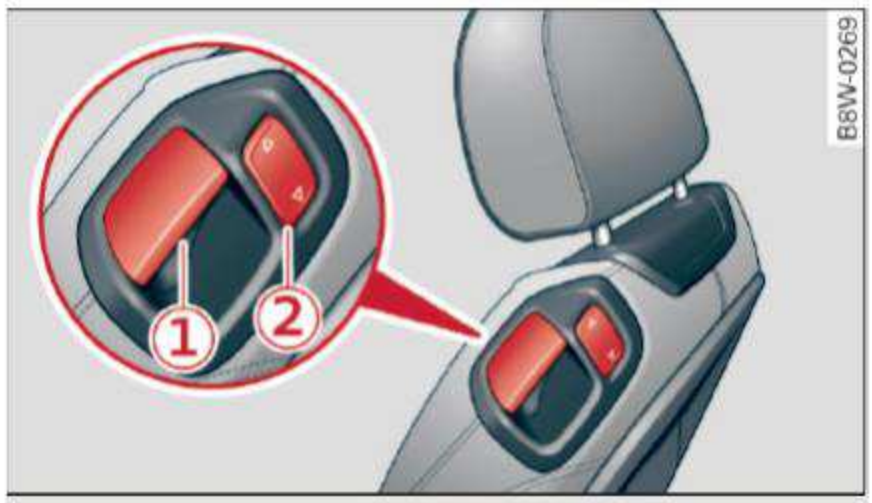



**Fig. 64** Front seat: controls on the seat backrest: 1) backrest release, 2) power entry assistance

### Power entry assistance

▸ Lift the handle ① and fold the seat backrest forward.

▸ Briefly press the button ②. The seat automatically moves all the way forward. When the seat is moved back, it will stop in its original position. The operation will stop if the button is pressed again.

If you press and hold the button ② while the backrest is in the upright position, the seat will move until you release the button.

**WARNING**

– Always make sure the front seats are upright and securely locked in place.
– Power entry assistance also works when the ignition is switched off[1)] or when the ignition key is removed, so that rear seat passengers can still move to the front of the vehicle in an emergency situation. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle for this reason.

## Front center armrest

Applies to vehicles with a front center armrest

*There is a storage compartment under the armrest.*

**Fig. 65** Armrest between the driver's/front passenger's seats.

▸ To adjust the angle, raise the armrest from the starting position notch by notch.
▸ To bring the armrest back into the starting position, raise it out of the top notch and fold it back down.

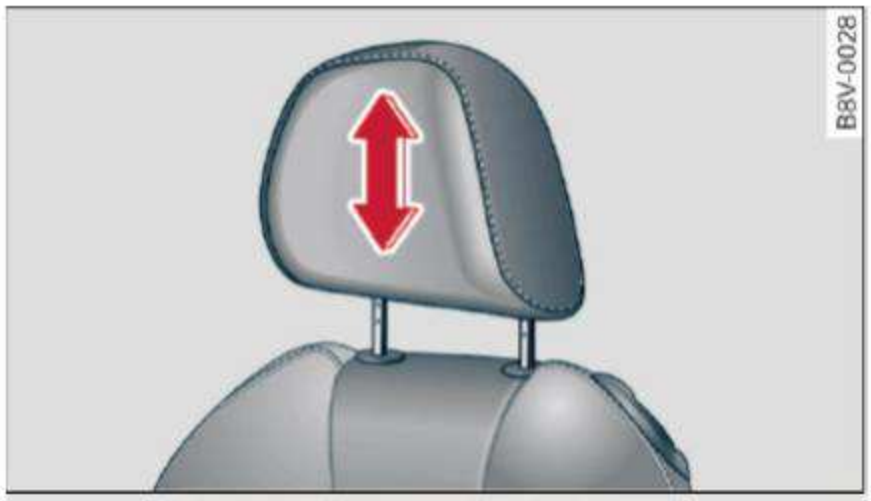
The armrest can slide forward and back.

1) Requirement: the vehicle battery must have a sufficient charge level.

# Head restraints

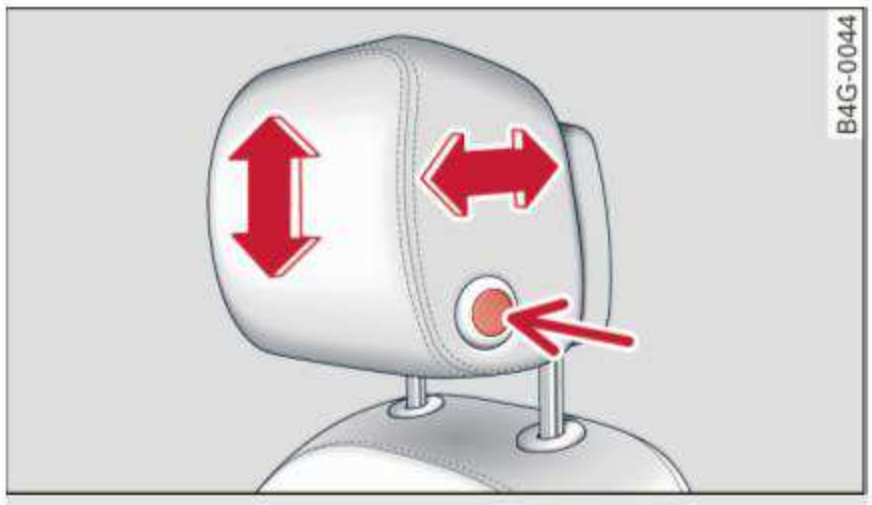
## Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints




Applies to: version 1

**Fig. 66** Front seat: adjusting the head restraint




Applies to: version 2

**Fig. 67** Front seat: adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust as close to this position as possible.

Applies to: version 1

- To move the head restraint up or down, slide it until it locks into place ⇨ *fig. 66*.

Applies to: version 2

- To move the head restraint up or forward, slide it ⇨ *fig. 67* until it locks into place.
- To move the head restraint down or back, press the side button -arrow- and slide the head restraint until it locks into place.

**WARNING**

Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 252, Proper adjustment of head restraints*.

## Rear head restraints

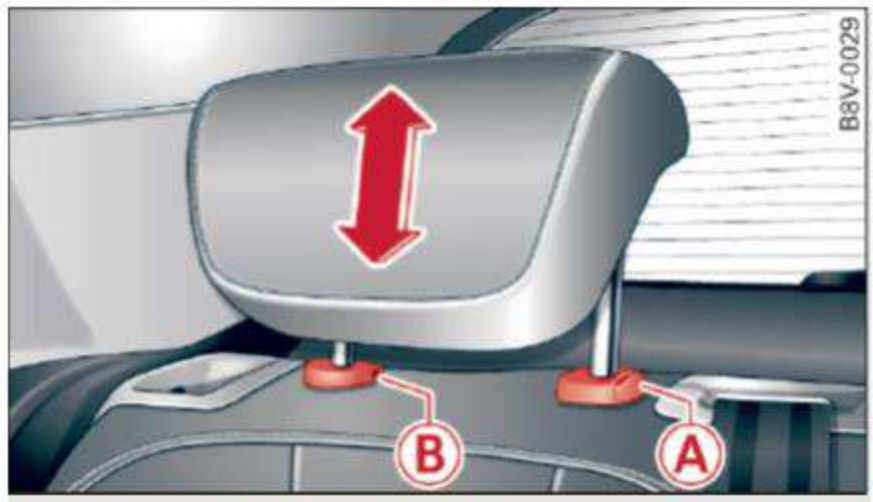



**Fig. 68** Outer rear head restraints: release point (example)

If there are passengers in the rear seat, fold the head restraints up on the occupied seats at least to the next notch ⇨ ⚠.

### Moving the head restraints

- To move the head restraint up, hold it at the sides with both hands and slide it upward until you feel it click into place.
- To move the head restraint down, press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 68* and slide the head restraint downward.

### Removing the head restraints

To remove the head restraints, the backrest must be folded forward partially.

- Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 360*.
- Release the backrest ⇨ *page 65*.
- Press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 68* and slide the head restraint up as far as it can go.
- Place the screwdriver in position Ⓑ in the opening, press the button Ⓐ and pull the head restraint out of the backrest at the same time ⇨ ⚠.
- Fold the backrest down until it latches securely ⇨ ⚠ *in Increasing the cargo area on page 65*.

### Installing the head restraints

To install the head restraints, the backrest must be folded forward partially.

- Release the backrest ⇨ *page 65*.
- Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until the posts click into place. You ▶

should not be able to pull the head restraint out of the backrest.

▸ Fold the backrest down until it latches securely ⇨ ⚠ *in Increasing the cargo area on page 65*.

**WARNING**

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 252, Proper adjustment of head restraints*.
– Only remove the rear seat head restraints when necessary in order to install a child safety seat ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child safety seat is removed. Driving with the head restraints removed or not in the upright position increases the risk of serious injury.

# Power sources

**Fig. 69** 12 volt socket and USB ports*

When the ignition is switched on, you may be able to use the electric power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

## 12 volt sockets ①

The 12-volt sockets can be used for electrical accessories. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

The 12 volt sockets are in the front center console*, in the rear* and on the luggage compartment side trim panel*.

## USB ports ②

You can charge mobile devices and/or connect to the Audi music interface* using the USB ports*.

For additional information about the USB ports, see ⇨ *page 229, Multimedia connections*.

**WARNING**

Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

**Note**

– Disconnect the connectors from the power sources carefully to reduce the risk of damaging them.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the power sources.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the power sources, only use plugs and connectors that fit correctly.

# Storing

## Cup holders

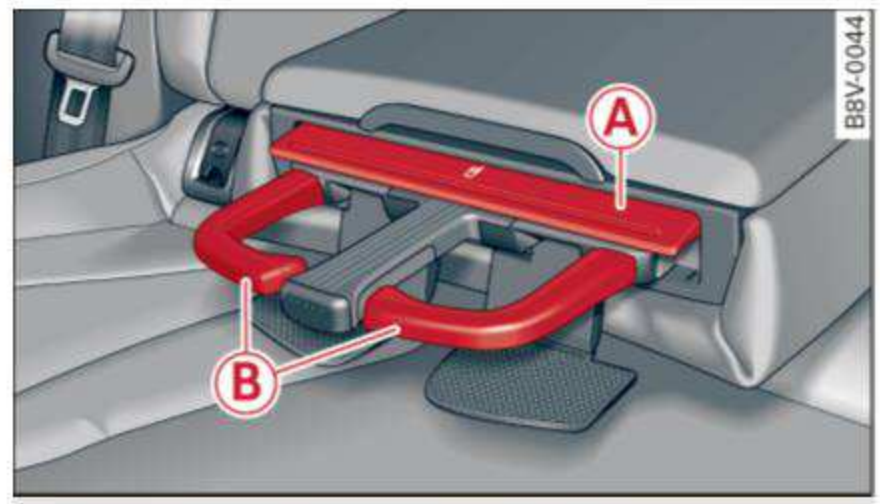



**Fig. 70** Rear bench seat: rear cup holders*

Your vehicle has cup holders in the front center console, in the door pockets, in the rear bench seat* and/or in the rear center console*.

### Rear cup holders*

▸ Fold the center armrest* downward.
▸ To open the cup holders, press inward on the trim Ⓐ.
▸ To place the beverage container in the cup holder, push the arm Ⓑ outward. ▶

▸ Then push the arm against the beverage container so that the arm lies closely against it.
▸ To close the cup holders, push them back into the slot.

**WARNING**

– Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which increases the risk of injury.
– Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in the event of an accident.

**Note**

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. If not, beverages could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment, such electronics or seat covers.

## Other storage

Applies to: sedan
**Fig. 71** Luggage compartment: bag hooks*

There are additional storage compartments, compartments and holders at other locations in the vehicle:

– Glove compartment: the glove compartment can be locked using the key *.
– Retainer* for the vehicle key and cell phone in the front center console
– Storage compartment under the front center armrest*
– Storage compartment on the rear side of the front seat*. The compartment can hold a maximum weight of 2 lbs (1 kg).
– Garment hooks* on the B-pillar ⇨ ⚠
– Garment hooks* above the rear doors*
– Side bag hooks* in the luggage compartment
– Applies to: sedan: bag hooks* under the rear shelf ⇨ *fig. 71*

**WARNING**

– No heavy or hard objects may be placed on the storage compartment behind the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injuring the vehicle passengers when braking suddenly.
– Always keep the glove compartment lid closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury.
– Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects that will not stick out of the compartment and impair the range of the side airbags.
– The bag hooks can hold a maximum weight of 6.6 lbs (3 kg). Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

**WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with garment hooks

– Make sure that the view to the rear is not obstructed by hanging garments.
– Hang only lightweight clothing and be sure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
– Do not use coat hangers to hang the clothing because this could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.

**Note**

Objects on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window can damage the rear window heating wires.

# Luggage compartment

## General information

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 255, Storing cargo correctly*.

## Luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover

*The luggage compartment cover blocks the view into the luggage compartment.*

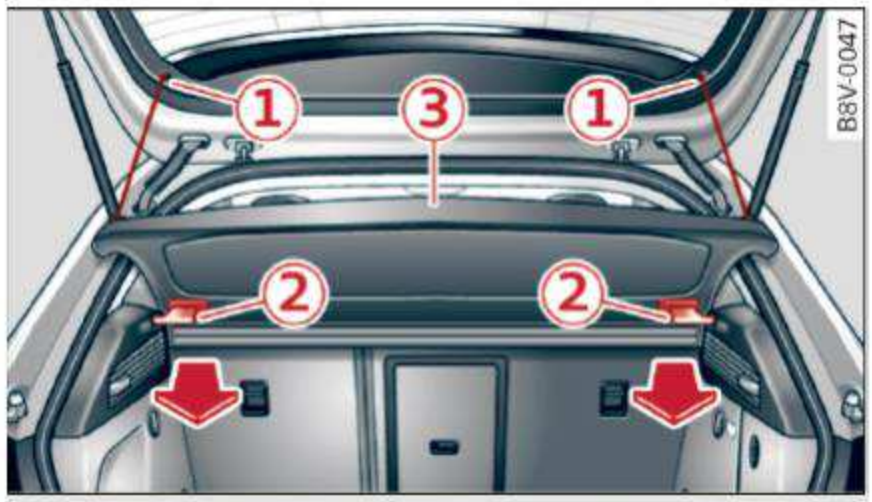



**Fig. 72** Open luggage compartment lid with luggage compartment cover

### Removing

- ▸ Unhinge the straps ① and pull the cover ③ in the direction of the arrow out of the holder ②.

### Installing

- ▸ Slide the cover ③ horizontally into the designated holder ② in the side bracket until the cover is lined up.
- ▸ Hook the straps into the luggage compartment lid ① ⇨ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- To reduce the risk of accidents, the luggage compartment cover should never be unsecured under any circumstances.
- The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover increase the risk of injury to all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident.

## Lowering the cargo floor

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable cargo floor

*The cargo floor can lower to expand the storage area in the luggage compartment.*

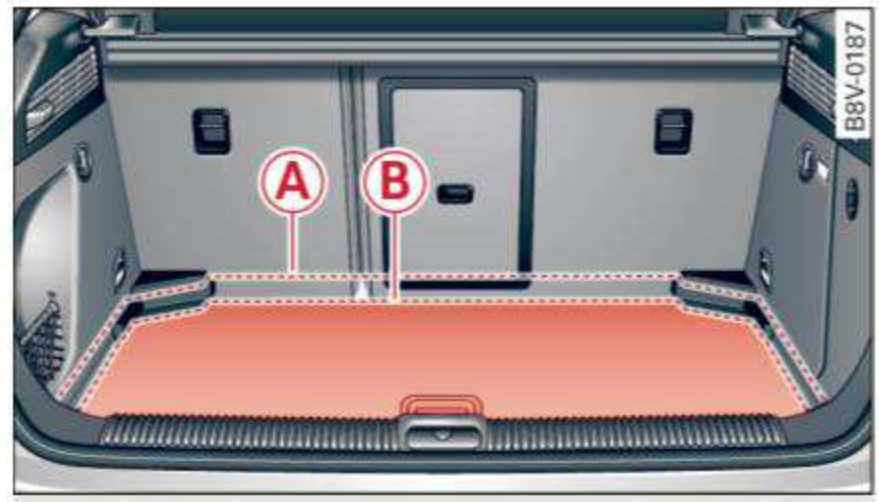



**Fig. 73** Luggage compartment: lowered cargo floor

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor in order to lower it.
- ▸ Pull the cargo floor back slightly and insert it in the lower position Ⓑ.

To make loading and unloading easier, bringing the cargo floor back into position Ⓐ after transporting bulky items is recommended.

## Tie-downs

Applies to: vehicles with tie-downs

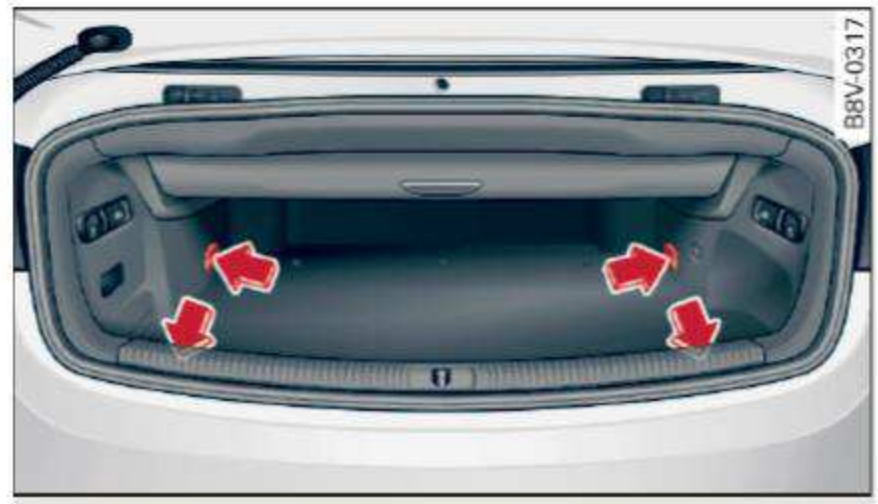



**Fig. 74** Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs (example)

- ▸ Secure the cargo to the tie-downs -arrows-.
- ▸ Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 256*.

## Luggage compartment net/cargo bag

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cargo net/cargo bag

*The cargo net prevents light objects from sliding, and it can also be used as a cargo bag.*

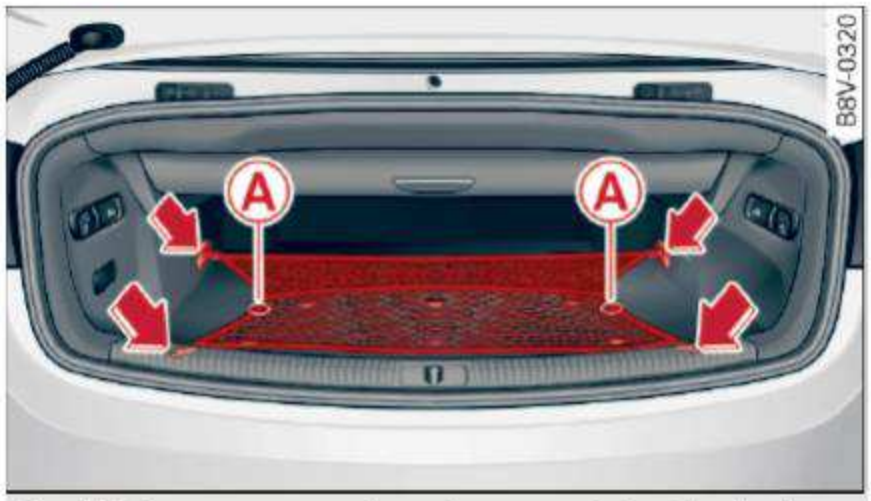



**Fig. 75** Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out (example)

**Fig. 76** Luggage compartment: cargo bag hung in place (example)

### Cargo net

▸ To secure the cargo net, first hang the front hooks in the tie-downs then hang the rear hooks -arrows- ⇨ *fig. 75*.

### Cargo bag

▸ To secure the cargo bag, hang both plastic retainers in the tie-downs Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 76* and the eyelets Ⓐ in the hooks/bag hooks* Ⓒ.

You can also use the bag hooks* Ⓒ to hang light purses, bags, etc.

**WARNING**

For strength reasons, only objects with a maximum weight of 10 lbs (5 kg) should be secured in the luggage compartment net. Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

## Increasing the cargo area

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests

*The rear seat backrests can be folded forward either separately* or together.*

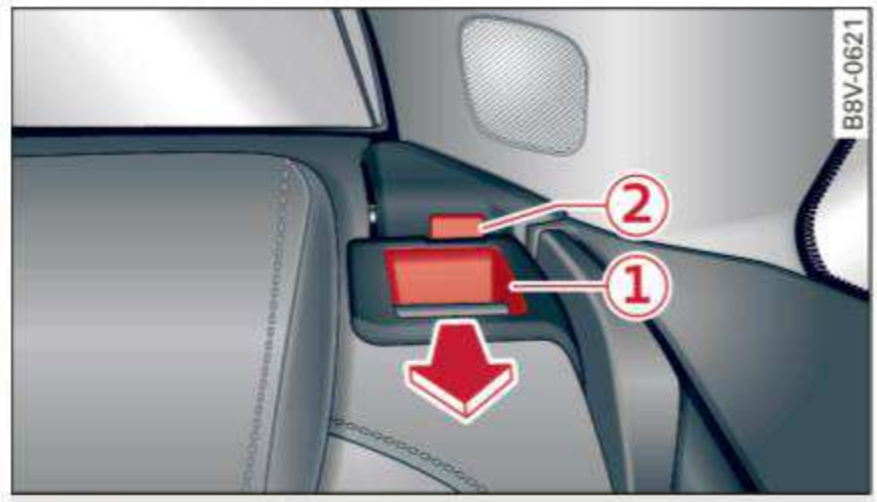



**Fig. 77** Backrest: outer release lever (example)

### Folding the backrest forward/back

▸ Push the corresponding head restraint downward ⇨ *page 61*.

▸ Pull the release lever ① ⇨ *fig. 77* in the direction of the arrow and fold the backrest forward.

▸ Fold the backrest down until it latches securely ⇨ ⚠. When you can no longer see the red mark on the pin ②, the seat is latched.

**WARNING**

– The backrest must be securely latched to ensure the safety belt is protecting the rear seat positions.

– The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking.

**Note**

– If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.

– To reduce the risk of damage, move the rear head restraints down before folding the rear backrests forward ⇨ ⚠ *in Rear head restraints on page 62*.

– Make sure the outer safety belts are not pinched or damaged when folding the seat back.

## Pass-through

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through

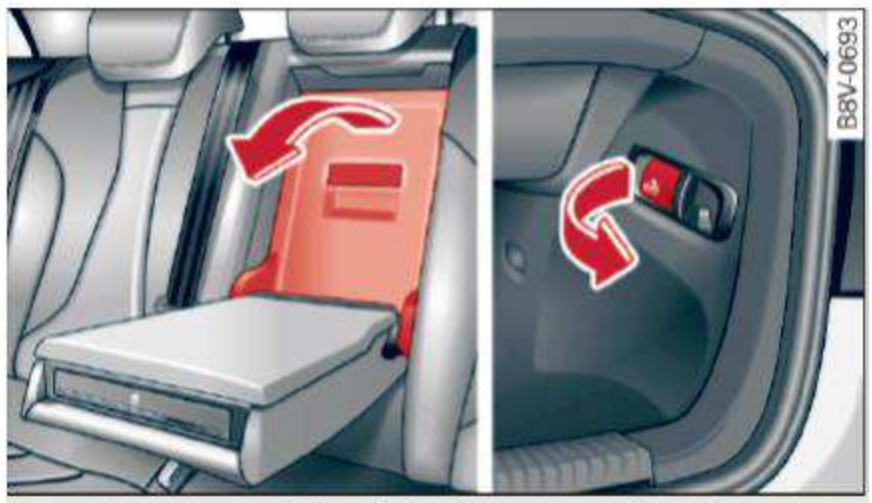



**Fig. 78** Version 1: left side: backrest: pass-through cover; Version 2: right side: luggage compartment: release lever

### Opening/closing the pass-through from the vehicle interior

- ▸ Applies to: version 1: To open the pass-through, fold down the center armrest in the backrest and fold down the pass-through cover in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 78*.
- ▸ Applies to: version 1: To close the pass-through, fold up the pass-through cover and the center armrest ⇨ *fig. 78*.

### Opening/closing the pass-through from the luggage compartment

- ▸ Applies to: version 2: To fold the backrest forward, pull the release lever on the respective seat in the direction of the arrow. The backrest will fold forward automatically after it has been released ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Applies to: version 1: To open the pass-through, press the lever in the rear seat backrest downward.
- ▸ To close the pass-through, fold the backrest back until it latches securely ⇨ ⚠.

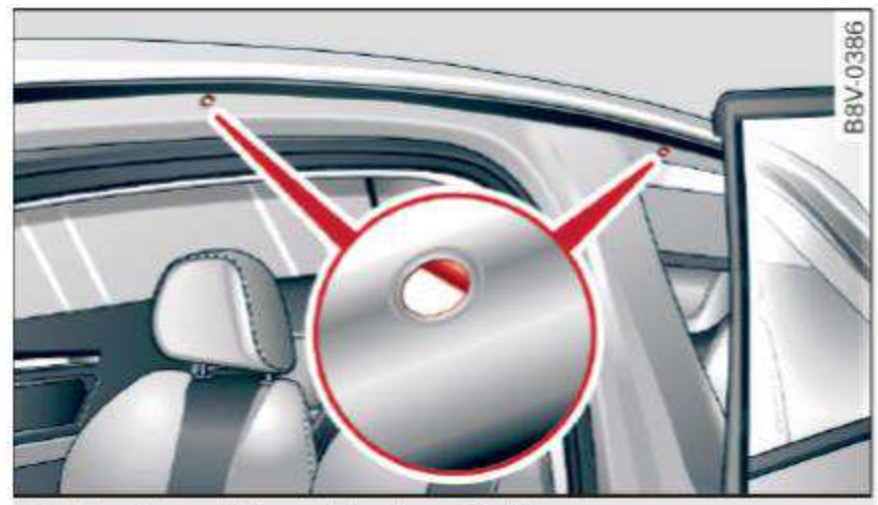
**⚠ WARNING**

- The backrest must be securely latched to ensure the safety belt is protecting the rear seat positions.
- The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking.
- Make sure that all objects that you are transporting in the pass-through are secure. They could slide during sudden braking maneuvers and cause injuries.
- Sharp edges on objects that are loaded must be covered for protection.
- When releasing the rear seat backrest, make sure there are no people or animals within its range of motion. The backrest will fold forward automatically after it is released.

**Note**

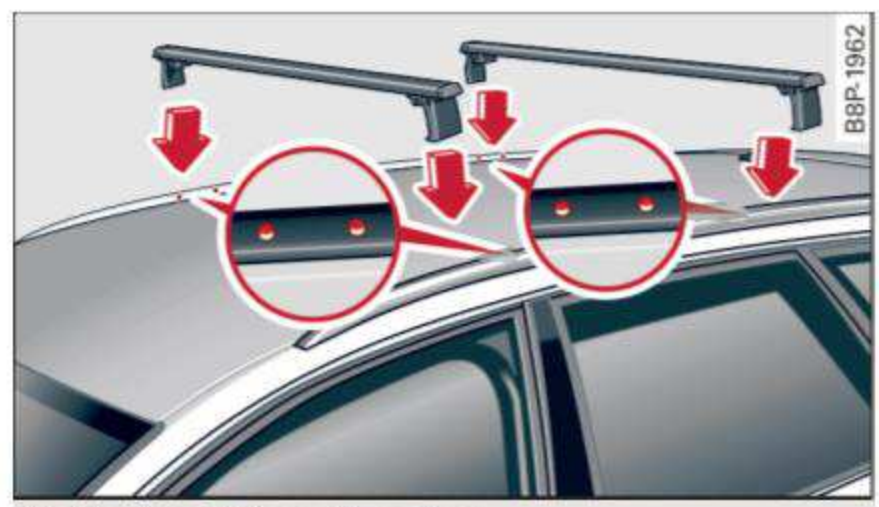
Make sure the safety belt is not pinched in the backrest lock and damaged when the rear seat backrest if folded back.

# Roof rack




Applies to: vehicles without roof rail

**Fig. 79** Mounting points for the roof rack




Applies to: vehicles with roof rail

**Fig. 80** Mounting points for the roof rack

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

- Only a specially designed roof rack may be used on your vehicle. These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments/carrier systems are necessary to transport luggage and sports equipment. We ▸

recommend roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program.

– When installing the roof rack, make sure that it is mounted only at the designated points on the roof ⇨ *fig. 79* or ⇨ *fig. 80*.
– Note the permitted axle load, permitted total weight, and permitted roof load of your vehicle ⇨ *page 382*. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used.

**WARNING**

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The risk of an accident increases when using a roof rack system, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

**Note**

– If you use other roof luggage rack systems or do not install the racks as intended, any damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. Carefully follow the assembly and installation instructions included with the roof rack carrier system.
– Make sure that the luggage compartment lid and the panorama glass roof* do not come into contact with objects on the roof when they are open.

**For the sake of the environment**

Your vehicle will require more fuel due to the increased wind resistance. So remove the roof rack after using it.

# Warm and cold

## Climate control system

### Description

The **climate control system** circulates, warms or cools, and removes humidity from the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and panorama glass roof* or power top* are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

#### Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

#### Key recognition

Various settings are stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

These settings are different when the power top* is open or closed.

#### Presetting

Several functions can be preset in the Infotainment system.

Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Air conditioning**

**WARNING**

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

- For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
- Become familiar with the correct use and function of the climate control system as quickly as possible, especially with the defrosting and defogging functions.
- When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

**Note**

- If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**For the sake of the environment**

- To save fuel, turn off the climate control system cooling mode by pressing the A/C button. This will also reduce emissions. The climate control system is off when the LED in the button turns off.
- In vehicles with the efficiency program*, you can find other consumption information and more economy tips ⇨ *page 19*.

**Tips**

- To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow or leaves.
- Condensation from the cooling system* can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
- The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

## Automatic climate control system

Applies to: vehicles with automatic climate control system

*Pressing* AUTO *button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C) is recommended.*

**Fig. 81** Automatic climate control system: controls (example)

The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons or adjusted by turning the knob. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

### Automatic climate control system

The automatic climate control system automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. In all heating mode functions except *defrost*, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

### AUTO Switching automatic mode or "eco" mode* on and off

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically. AUTO mode switches off once a button in the climate control system is pressed.

When automatic mode is active, pressing the AUTO button briefly activates the "Eco" mode*[1)]. In "eco" mode*, all settings are lowered slightly to save fuel. When in "eco" mode*, **Eco** is shown in the display. To exit "Eco" mode*, press the AUTO button again.

### A/C cooling mode

The cooling mode only functions with the blower turned on. You can turn the cooling system on or off by pressing the A/C button. The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

### 🔵 / 🔴 Temperature

The temperature for the driver's and front passenger's side can be adjusted separately with the dials ①/②. Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. If outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the climate control system display. In both settings, the climate control runs constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level. The temperature is not regulated.

**Synchronization:** by pressing the AUTO button for two seconds, the temperature setting for the ▶

1) This function is not available in every market and is not available for the plug-in hybrid.

driver's side is transferred to the front passenger's side. This applies a temperature change to the front passenger's side.

### Blower

Using the regulator, you can manually adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

### Air distribution

The air distribution can adjusted with the buttons. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

The round air vents in the cockpit are adjustable ⇨ *page 71*.

To keep the front side windows from fogging up in damp weather, we recommend opening the side air vents and tilting them to the side.

Foot vents are located under the front seats and adjustable vents on the end of the center console to heat the rear of the vehicle.

### Defrosting

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set at +72°F (22°C) or higher. The temperature is controlled automatically. In the MAX setting, the A/C cooling mode switches on automatically, depending on the outside air temperature.

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

### Recirculation mode

The recirculation mode can be turned on manually or automatically*.

– Switching manual recirculation mode on and off: press the button.

– Automatic* recirculation mode: auto recirculation needs to be activated in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Air conditioning** > **Auto recirculation** The air quality sensor that is designed for diesel and gasoline exhaust automatically switches the recirculation mode on or off depending on the level of pollutants in the outside air.

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. Switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic is recommended ⇨ ⚠.

Pressing the button, AUTO or the MAX button switches recirculation mode off.

The system switches to recirculation mode when driving in reverse when the engine is cold.

### Rear window defogger

If the rear window defogger is activated when the ignition is switched on, the battery management determines based on the battery charge if it is possible to turn on. Otherwise, the rear window defogger functions with the engine running and switches off automatically after approximately 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than two seconds. This remains stored up to approximately 15 minutes after turning off the ignition.

### Seat heating*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After approximately 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2. ▶

**WARNING**

– You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time, because no fresh air is drawn in and the windows can fog when cooling mode is switched off. This increases the risk of an accident.
– Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

**Note**

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

**Tips**

– The setting for the seat heating on the driver's side is assigned to the key that is in use.
– If the front passenger's seat heating is turned on, it will not turn on again automatically if more than 10 minutes have passed between switching the ignition off and switching it on again.

## Adjusting the air vents

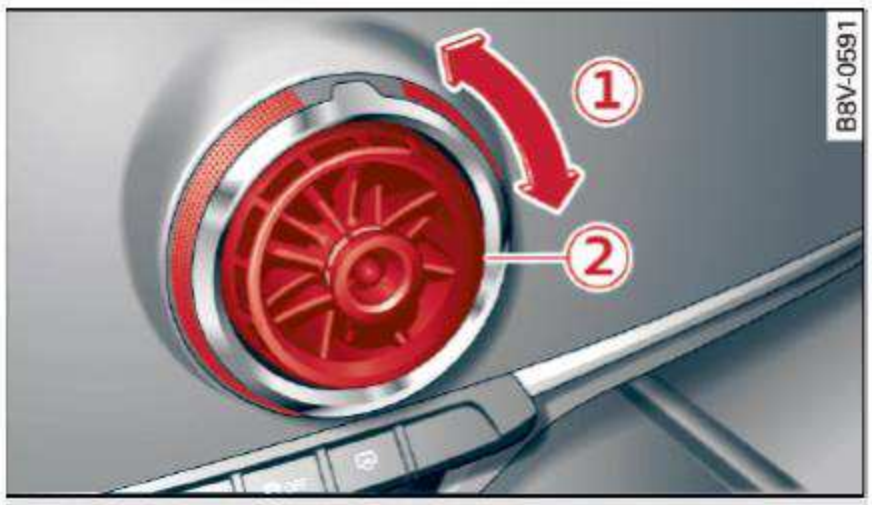



**Fig. 82** Cockpit: adjusting the air vents

The following settings are possible ⇨ *fig. 82*:

– ① Air flow amount
– ② Air flow direction

To adjust the **air flow amount**, turn the ridged outer adjusting ring ① ⇨ *fig. 82*. To stop the air flow, turn the adjusting ring all the way to the right.

To adjust the **air flow direction**, turn the air vent grill insert ②.

## Steering wheel heating

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

*The steering wheel rim can be heated.*

▸ Press the ⇨ *page 15, fig. 11* button on the multifunction steering wheel to switch the steering wheel heating on and off. The message **Steering wheel heating: on/Steering wheel heating: off** appears in the instrument cluster display.

The temperature is maintained at a constant level when steering wheel heating is switched on.

The steering wheel heating settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

If the steering wheel heating cannot be switched on, the message: **Steering wheel heating: off** appears. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

# Driving

## General information

### Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in for the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km). Do not drive at speeds that will exceed 2/3 of the maximum permitted engine speed (RPM) for the first 600 miles (1,000 km), and avoid full acceleration during this period. You may gradually start increasing the RPM and the speed between 600 miles (1,000 km) and 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

During the first hours of use, the engine has a higher internal friction than later on when all moving parts have settled into place with each other.

How the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) also affects the engine quality. Drive at moderate engine speeds after the initial break-in period, particularly when running a cold engine. This will reduce engine wear and improve the mileage.

Do not drive at too *low* of an engine speed (RPM). Shift down if the engine stops running "smoothly". Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced.

### Reducing the risk of vehicle damage

**Note**

When driving on poor roads, by curbs and on steep ramps, make sure that low-hanging components such as the spoiler and exhaust system do not come into contact with these or they could be damaged. This especially applies to vehicles with low ground clearance and vehicles that are heavily loaded.

### Warming up/cooling down

Applies to: RS models

By warming up/cooling down the engine carefully, you can help reduce unnecessary strain on your vehicle when driving in a sporty style.

The tires only reach their full road holding capability once they have warmed up under load.

Your vehicle also has an after-run cooling feature. However, cooling down is still important. The engine and the brakes as well as the exhaust system and the transmission become very hot when driving in a sporty style. Before you shut the vehicle off, you should cool down the vehicle by driving a few miles at low speeds with light acceleration.

### Driving through water on roads

Note the following to reduce the risk of vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

**WARNING**

After driving through water or mud, the effectiveness of the brakes may be reduced due to moisture on the brake rotors and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes and restore the full braking effect.

**Note**

– Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.
– Always switch the Start/Stop system* off when driving through water ⇨ *page 79*.

**Tips**

– Determine the depth before driving through water.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.

▶

– Avoid driving through salt water, because this can cause corrosion.

## Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact and the wear to the engine, brakes and tires depends mostly on your driving style. With an anticipatory and economic driving style, fuel consumption can be reduced by approximately 10-15%. The following tips will help you conserve the environment and your money at the same time.

### Anticipatory driving

A vehicle uses the most fuel when accelerating. When you drive with anticipation, you do not need to brake as often and so you accelerate less. When possible, let your vehicle coast with a **gear engaged**, for example when you notice that the next traffic light is red. This produces an engine braking effect, which helps to protect the brakes and tires and reduces the emissions and fuel consumption to zero (fuel shut-off during deceleration).

### Shift efficiently

Upshifting *earlier* is an effective way to save fuel. Staying in a gear too long uses fuel unnecessarily.

Press down on the accelerator pedal slowly and avoid “kick-down”.

### Avoid full acceleration

You should rarely travel at the maximum vehicle speed. High speeds cause a disproportionately high increase in fuel consumption, emissions and traffic noise. Slower driving saves fuel.

### Reduce idling time

The Start/Stop system* helps to reduce the idling time automatically. In vehicles without the Start/Stop system, it is efficient to switch the engine off when stopped at railroad crossings and long red lights. Depending on the version of the engine, stopping the engine for as little as five seconds once it has reached operating temperature still saves more fuel than leaving the engine running - even when taking into account the amount of extra fuel that is used to restart the engine.

It takes a very long time in idle to warm the engine up to operating temperature. Wear and emissions are especially high in the warm-up phase. Therefore, you should begin driving immediately after starting the engine. Avoid high RPMs while doing this.

### Have maintenance performed regularly

By having maintenance performed regularly on your vehicle, you can help to reduce fuel consumption before you even start to drive. The maintenance condition of your vehicle not only affects traffic safety and long-term value but also impacts **fuel consumption**. A poorly maintained engine can lead to fuel consumption that is 10% higher than normal.

### Avoid short trips

The engine and emissions control system must reach their optimal **operating temperature** to effectively reduce consumption and emissions.

A cold engine uses a disproportionately high amount of fuel. The engine reaches operating temperature and consumption normalizes only after approximately 2.5 miles (4 km).

### Check the tire pressure

To save fuel, make sure the tires are always inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ *page 339*. The fuel consumption can increase by 5% if the pressure is only 0.5 bar too low. Due to the increased rolling resistance, low tire pressures will also lead to greater tire **wear** and will affect driving behavior.

Do not drive on **winter tires** year-round, as this will consume up to 10% more fuel.

### Eliminate unnecessary weight

Since every pound of extra **weight** increases fuel consumption, a quick inspection of the luggage compartment may be worth it to avoid unnecessary weight. ▶

8V2012721BF

When not being used, a roof rack should be removed to decrease the wind resistance of the vehicle. This will save you approximately 12% fuel at speeds from 62 - 75 mph (100 - 120 km/h).

### Save energy

The engine drives the generator, which generates electricity; the fuel consumption also increases with the demand for electricity. Therefore, switch electrical equipment off when you no longer need it. Examples of equipment that uses a lot of energy are air blowers at a high setting, the rear window defogger and seat heating*.

**Note**

– Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.
– Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
– Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
– Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

**Tips**

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

# Steering

## Adjusting the steering wheel position

*The steering wheel position is fully adjustable up and down and forward and back.*

**Fig. 83** Steering column: steering column adjustment lever

- Tilt the lever ⇨ *fig. 83* downward ⇨ ⚠.
- Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- Push the lever against the steering column until it is secure.

**WARNING**

Incorrect use of the steering wheel adjustment and an incorrect seating position can cause serious injuries.

– Only adjust the steering column when the vehicle is stationary so that you do not lose control of the vehicle.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is at least 10 inches (25 cm) distance between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 250, fig. 217*. If you do not maintain this distance, the airbag system will not be able to provide its full protection. ⇨ *page 250, fig. 217*.
– If your physical characteristics prevent you from sitting at least 10 inches (25 cm) or more away from the steering wheel, see if an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can provide adapters that will help.
– If your face is level with the steering wheel, the airbag does not provide as much protection during a collision. Always make sure that the steering wheel is level with your chest.

▶

- Always hold the steering wheel with your hands in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
- Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or with both hands on the rim or the center of the steering wheel. Holding the steering wheel incorrectly significantly increases the risk of injury to the hands, arms and head if the airbag deploys.

# Starting and stopping the engine (vehicles with an ignition lock)

## Starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

*The ignition is switched on and the engine started with the key in the ignition.*

**Fig. 84** Ignition lock: position of the ignition key

### Switching the ignition on/off

- ▸ To switch the ignition on, turn the ignition key to position (1). Vehicles without the Start/Stop system*: the needle in the tachometer moves into the **READY** position.
- ▸ To switch the ignition off, turn the ignition key to position (0). The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

### Starting the engine

- ▸ Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the "P" or "N" position.
- ▸ Turn the key briefly to position (2). The ignition key automatically returns to position (1). Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine.

If the engine does not start immediately, stop the starting procedure by turning the ignition key to position (0) and repeat after 30 seconds.

### Start/Stop system*

See the information in ⇨ *page 79, Start/Stop system*.

**WARNING**

- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
- Never remove the ignition key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise the steering lock will engage and you will not be able to steer the vehicle, which increased the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

**For the sake of the environment**

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

**Tips**

- If it is difficult to turn the key to position (1), turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.

## Stopping the engine

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

### Stopping the engine

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- ▸ Turn the key to position (0). The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

### Engaging the steering lock

Requirement: the selector lever must be in P. ▶

▸ Remove the ignition key in position ⓪ ⇨ *page 76, fig. 85* ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Turn the steering wheel until you hear the steering wheel lock.

The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You must use more force to turn or brake. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries.
– Never remove the ignition key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, the steering lock could suddenly engage and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
– For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll unintentionally.

**Note**

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run for at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

**Tips**

For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run (even if the ignition is switched off) for the following reasons:

– The coolant temperature is increasing due to trapped heat.
– If the engine is warm and the engine compartment also heats up from strong sunlight.

# Starting and stopping the engine (vehicles with convenience key)

## Starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

*The* START ENGINE STOP *button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.*

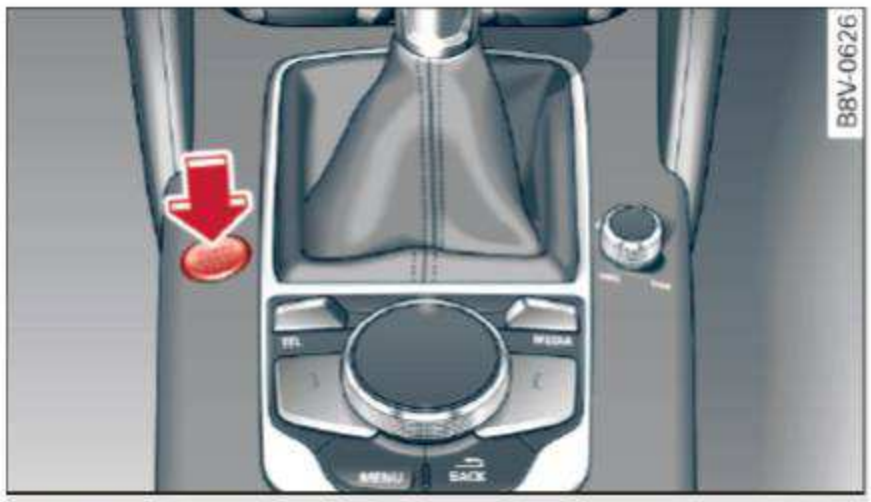



**Fig. 85** Center console: START ENGINE STOP button

Plug-in hybrid drive*: refer to the information for starting the vehicle under ⇨ *page 94*.

### Starting the engine

▸ Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the "P" or "N" position.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button briefly. The engine will start.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine.

If the engine does not start immediately, stop the starting procedure by pushing the START ENGINE STOP button again and repeat after 30 seconds.

### Switching the ignition on/off

If you would like to switch the ignition on without starting the engine, follow these steps:

▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button **without** pressing the brake pedal. Vehicles without ▶

the Start/Stop system*: the needle in the tachometer moves into the **READY** position.

- ▸ To switch the ignition off, press the button again. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

If the indicator light blinks and the message **Please turn steering wheel** appears when switching the ignition on, the steering lock has been engaged. In this case, turn the steering wheel slightly to the left or right.

### Start/Stop system*

See the information in ⇨ *page 79, Start/Stop system*.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

**Note**

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

**For the sake of the environment**

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

**Tips**

- – Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
- – If you leave your vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

## Stopping the engine

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Plug-in hybrid drive*: refer to the information under ⇨ *page 94*.

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- ▸ Move the selector lever into the P position.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 76, fig. 85*.

### Steering lock[1)]

The steering locks when you turn the engine off using the START ENGINE STOP* button, move the selector lever into the P position and open the driver's door. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

### Emergency off function

If it is absolutely necessary, the engine can also be turned off while driving at speeds starting at 4 mph (7 km/h). To switch the engine off, press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row briefly or press and hold for longer than two seconds.

**WARNING**

- – Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You must use more force to turn or brake. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries.
- – If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
- – For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll unintentionally.

**Note**

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run ▸

1) This function is not available in all countries.

for at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

**Tips**

For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run (even if the ignition is switched off) for the following reasons:

– The coolant temperature is increasing due to trapped heat.
– If the engine is warm and the engine compartment also heats up from strong sunlight.

# Messages

**Engine running. Warning! Turn off ignition before leaving vehicle**

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the engine is running.

**Pressing start/stop button again will switch off engine.**

This message appears when you press the START ENGINE STOP* button while driving ⇨ *page 77, Emergency off function*.

**Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service**

The engine automatic start system has a malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. To start the engine, turn the key to position ② ⇨ *page 75* or press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button until the engine is running.

**Key not recognized. See owner's manual**

This message appears if there is no convenience key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize the key. The convenience key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by an object that *disrupts* the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the signal.

To still be able to start or stop the engine, refer to ⇨ *page 79*.

**Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual**

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 79*.

**Key not in vehicle?**

**Remote control key: key not recognized. Is the key still in the vehicle?**

The indicator light turns on and this message appears if the convenience key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the convenience key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

**Please press the brake pedal**

This message appears if you do not step on the brake pedal to start the engine on a vehicle with an automatic transmission.

**Please select N or P**

This message appears when starting or stopping the engine if the selector lever is not in the "N" or "P" position. The engine will not start/stop.

**Turn off ignition before leaving vehicle. Battery is discharging**

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on. Switch the ignition off so that the vehicle battery will not discharge.

**Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P**

This message appears for safety reasons if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is not in the P position after the ignition is switched off. Move the selector lever to the P position. Otherwise the vehicle is not protected from rolling and it cannot be locked.

# Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

*It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example, if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affecting the key or if there is a system malfunction.*

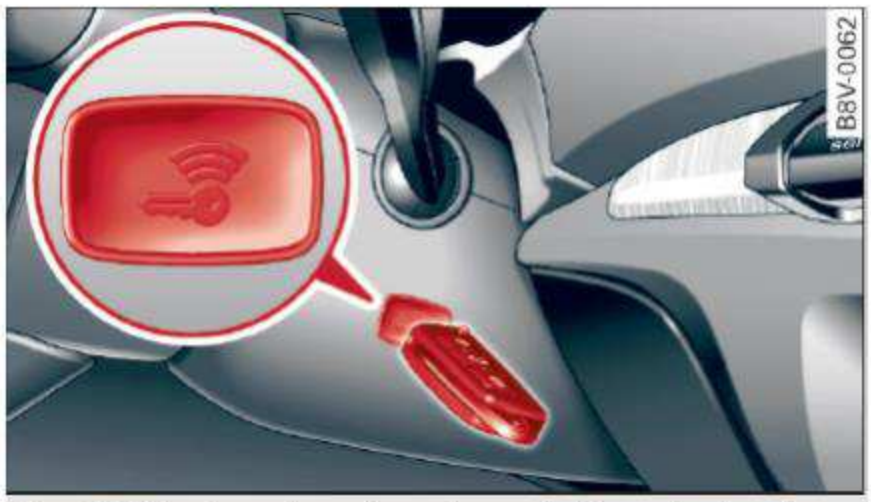



**Fig. 86** Steering column/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

As long as the message **Key not recognized. See owner's manual** or **Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual** appears, you can start the vehicle with the emergency starting function.

- ▸ Press the brake pedal.
- ▸ Hold the master key in the location indicated in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 86*.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ ⚠ *in Starting the engine on page 77*. The engine will start.
- ▸ Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Tips**

You can display the message that appears during an emergency by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

# Start/Stop system

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce $CO_2$ emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a traffic light. The ignition remains switched on during this stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The Start/Stop system is automatically activated as soon as the ignition is switched on.

### Basic requirements for Start/Stop mode

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt much be fastened.
- The hood must be closed.
- The vehicle must have driven faster than 2 mph (3 km/h) since the last time it stopped.

**Note**

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 81*.

**Tips**

The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop [1]. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is still available.

## Stopping/starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

**Fig. 87** Instrument cluster: engine switched off (stop phase)

[1] Market-specific

- ▸ Brake the vehicle to a stop. The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop or if the vehicle is stationary [1]. Keep your foot on the brake pedal. The Ⓐ/ Ⓐ indicator light appears in the display. The needle in the tachometer also moves into the **READY** position.
- ▸ The engine starts again when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

### Additional information

The engine stops in the "P", "N" and "D" selector lever positions.

If you select the "R" selector lever position during a Stop phase, the engine will start again.

Shift to "P" quickly to prevent the engine from starting unintentionally when shifting through "R".

You can determine for yourself if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. As soon as you press the brake down harder, the engine will switch off.

**Tips**

- – Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
- – The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button* during a stop phase. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

### Engine does not switch off

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks if certain conditions have been met. If the indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display, the engine will not be stopped, for example in the following situations:

- – The engine has not reached the minimum required temperature for Start/Stop mode.
- – The interior temperature selected by the climate control system* has not been reached.
- – The outside temperature is extremely high/low.
- – The windshield is being defrosted.
- – The parking system* is switched on.
- – The vehicle battery charge level is too low.
- – The steering wheel is turned at a sharp angle or is moving.
- – After engaging the reverse gear.
- – On sharp inclines.
- – At high altitudes.

### Engine automatically restarts

The standard Start/Stop mode will be canceled during a stop phase in the following situations. The engine restarts without any action by the driver.

- – The vehicle rolls, for example while on a slope.
- – The interior temperature differs from the temperature selected in the A/C system.
- – The windshield is being defrosted.
- – The brake pedal is pressed several times in a row.
- – The vehicle battery charge level is too low.
- – Power consumption is high.

The engine can turn off again when the conditions for Start/Stop mode are met [1].

### Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition will switch off **automatically** under the following conditions:

- – The Start/Stop system has stopped the engine.
- – The vehicle is stationary.
- – You exited the vehicle.

In this case, the activated low beam is replaced by the parking light. The parking lights will switch off after approximately 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle. ▸

[1] Market-specific

If the Start/Stop system has not turned off the engine or if you have switched the Start/Stop system off manually, the ignition will not be automatically switched off and the engine will continue to run ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

**Tips**

If you select the "D" or "N" selector lever position in a vehicle with an automatic transmission after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the engine to switch off again.

## Manually switching the Start/Stop system on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

*If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.*

**Fig. 88** Center console: Start/Stop system button

- To switch the Start/Stop system off/on manually, press the Ⓐ button. The LED in the button turns on when the system is switched off.

**Tips**

If you switch the system off during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

## Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

**Ⓐ Start/stop system: deactivated. Please start engine manually**

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a stop phase. The Start/Stop system will **not** be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started manually.

**Ⓐ Start/stop system: malfunction! Function unavailable**

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

# Electromechanical parking brake

**Fig. 89** Center console: parking brake

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake (1) ⇨ *fig. 89*. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

### Setting/manually releasing the parking brake

- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch turns on. The PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light also turns on in the instrument cluster display.
- To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light in the display turn off.

### Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the parking brake must be set. ▶

▸ To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 83, Starting from a stop*.

### Preventing the automatic parking brake release

The vehicle could begin rolling unintentionally, depending on the hill or if towing a trailer.

▸ To prevent the parking brake from releasing automatically, pull and hold the Ⓟ switch and press the accelerator pedal. The parking brake remains set and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
▸ You can release the Ⓟ switch again once you are sure that you are giving enough driving force to the wheels by pressing the accelerator pedal.

### Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brake operation malfunctions or is disabled.

▸ Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
▸ As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking stops.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

### Parking

▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
▸ Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
▸ Place the selector lever in the P position.
▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently if a gear is selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
– Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal brake pedal has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. Around curves and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.
– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake if it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the P position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise, children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one, especially children, should remain in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

**Tips**

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, you can set the parking brake manually. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a ▸

selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and your vehicle starts to move ⇨ *page 83*.

**Tips**

– Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.
– If there is a power failure, the parking brake will not set if it is released, and it will not release if it is set ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

## Starting from a stop

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

### Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed.

▸ To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

### Starting on hills with hill hold assist

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

▸ To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be in an uphill direction of travel.

After releasing the brake pedal, the braking power is maintained for a brief moment ⇨ ⚠ to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. During this time, you can easily begin to move your vehicle.

**WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with hill hold assist

– If you do not begin driving immediately or the engine stalls after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The intelligent technology of hill hold assist cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. The increased comfort offered by hill hold assist should not cause you to take safety risks.
– Hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle in place on all hills (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

## Automatic transmission

### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with automatic transmissions

The automatic transmission is controlled electronically. Upshifting and downshifting occur automatically.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

In the "S" selector lever position, the transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)** ⇨ *page 88, Manual shifting (tiptronic mode)*.

The S tronic is a dual-clutch transmission. Power is transferred using two clutches that work independently from one another. They replace the torque converter used in conventional automatic ▸

transmissions and allow the vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

## Selector lever positions

Applies to: vehicles with automatic transmissions

**Fig. 90** Instrument cluster: selector lever positions

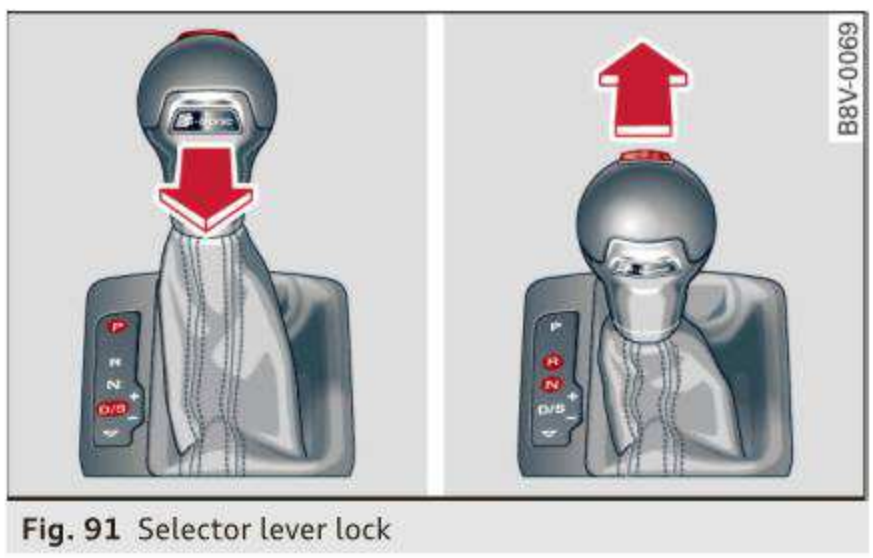



**Fig. 91** Selector lever lock

The selected selector lever position is shown hear the selector lever ⇨ *fig. 91* and in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *fig. 90*.

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ In the "P/N" position, you must release the selector lever lock ⇨ *page 84*.
- ▸ Move the selector lever into the desired position. The engaged selector lever position is shown in the shift gate.

### Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a gear accidentally, causing the vehicle to roll.

The selector lever is locked in the "P" and "N" positions when the ignition is switched on. You must press the brake pedal to select another position. You must also press the interlock button if you are moving from the "P" and "N" position.

The selector lever lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below approximately 1 mph (2 km/h). At higher speeds, the lock is automatically deactivated in the "N" position.

The selector lever is not locked when shifting quickly through "N", for example from "R" to "D/S". This makes it possible to free the vehicle when it is stuck by “rocking” it. The selector lever lock engages if the lever stays in the "N" position longer than approximately two seconds when the brake pedal is not pressed.

### Ignition key safety interlock*

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

You can only remove the key from the ignition after switching the ignition off if the selector lever is in the "P" position. The selector lever will be locked in the "P" position as long as the key is not in the ignition.

### P - Park

This selector lever position prevents the vehicle from rolling. You can only shift into Park when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇨ ⚠.

To shift in and out of the "P" selector lever position, press the selector lever lock (button in the selector lever handle) *and* press the brake pedal at the same time.

The selector lever will be locked in the "P" position if there is a power failure ⇨ *page 90, Selector lever emergency release*.

### R – Reverse

Only shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠.

To select the "R" selector lever position, press the selector lever lock *while* pressing the brake pedal.

### N - Neutral

The transmission is in idle in this position.

### D/S - Normal position for driving forward

In the "D/S" selector lever position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal "D" ▸

mode or in the "S" sport mode. To select the "S" sport mode, pull the selector lever back briefly. Pulling the lever back again will select the normal "D" mode. The instrument cluster display shows the selected driving mode.

In the **normal mode** "D", the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

The engine's power reserves are used fully in the **Sport mode** "S". Shifting may become noticeable when accelerating.

To move from selector lever position "N" to "D", you must press the brake pedal and the vehicle must be traveling less than 1 mph (2 km/h) or be stationary ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

Read and follow all WARNINGS.

- The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never select "R" or "P" while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except "P") when the engine is running. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident.
- Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped if a gear is engaged. Otherwise the risk of an accident increases because the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the "P" position.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, the selector lever must be in the "P" position and the parking brake must be set before opening the hood and working on a running engine. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment*.
- Read and following all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving tips on page 86*.

**Note**

Never let the vehicle roll downhill with engine off and the selector lever in the "N" position, because this could damage the automatic transmission and catalytic converter.

**Tips**

- Audi drive select: sporty shifting characteristics can be selected using the **Dynamic** driving mode ⇨ *page 140* "S" will appear in the instrument cluster display instead of "D".
- If you accidentally select "N" while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal immediately and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting "D" or "S".
- If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the "P" position. The emergency release can be used if this happens ⇨ *page 90*.

**Tips**

If the selector lever does not engage, there is a malfunction. The engine is disabled to prevent the vehicle from driving off unintentionally. To allow the selector lever to engage again, proceed as follows:

- Briefly press the brake pedal.
- If the vehicle does not move forward or in reverse even though a drive position is selected, proceed as follows:
- If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the system may not have engaged the drive position correctly. Press the brake pedal and select the drive position again. ▶

– If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system malfunction. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance to have the system checked.

**Tips**

Plug-in hybrid drive*: the transmission switches automatically to the normal mode "D" if the button ⇨ *page 98* is pressed while in sport mode "S".

## Driving tips

Applies to: vehicles with automatic transmissions

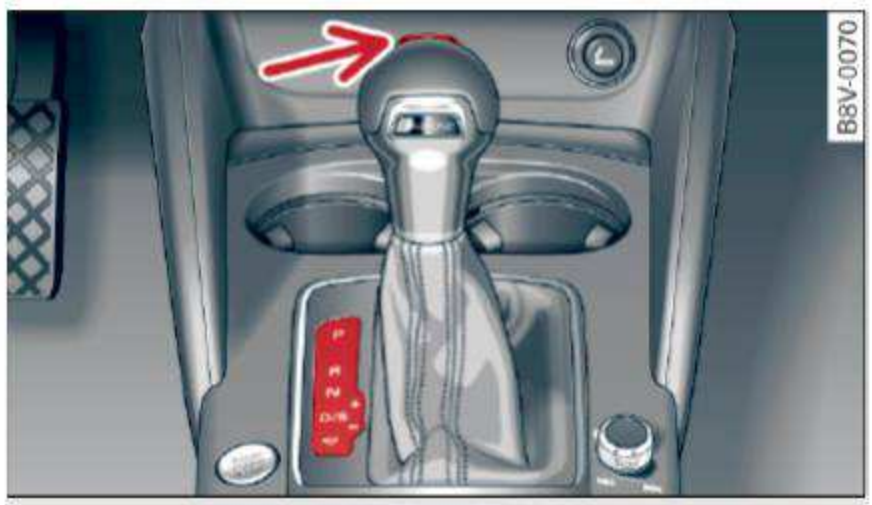



**Fig. 92** Section of the center console: selector lever with interlock button

### Starting the engine

- Select the "P" or "N" selector lever position. At low temperatures (below 14 °F (–10 °C)), the engine can only be started when the selector lever is in the "P" position.

### Starting from a stop

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the interlock button in the selector lever handle, select the desired selector lever position such as "D" ⇨ *page 84* and release the lock button.
- Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
- Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Various convenience functions are available for starting on hills ⇨ *page 83*.

### Stopping temporarily

- Keep the vehicle stationary using the braking pedal, for example at traffic lights.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep hills ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ (!).
- The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal. Requirement: the driver's door must be closed.

### Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the "P" position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. In vehicles with a convenience key*, the message: **Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P** appears. A warning tone will also sound.

- Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the "P" selector lever position.

Under certain circumstances, (such as driving in the mountains or towing a trailer), it may be useful to switch temporarily to the manual shift program in order to adjust the gears to the driving conditions by hand ⇨ *page 88*.

When parking on a level surface, simply place the selector lever in the "P" position. On inclines, activate the parking brake first and then move the selector lever to the "P" position ⇨ *page 81*. This prevents the locking mechanism from being loaded too heavily and will make it easier to move the selector lever out of the "P" position.

**WARNING**

– The vehicle can roll even when the engine is switched off.
– Unintended vehicle movement can lead to serious injuries.
– Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, set the parking brake and move the selector lever to the "P" position. ▶

– Power is still transferred to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from “creeping”, you must keep your foot on the brake when the engine is running and the selector lever is in the "D", "S" or "R" position or “tiptronic” mode is selected.
– Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped if a gear is engaged. Otherwise the risk of an accident increases because the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
– Never engage the "R" or "P" selector level positions while driving. It could cause a crash.
– Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with “tiptronic”.
– Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving downhill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.
– If you must stop on an incline, always hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake or parking brake to prevent it from rolling back.
– Never hold the vehicle on an incline with a slipping clutch. The clutch opens automatically when it becomes too hot from the overload. The indicator light turns on and a message appears ⇨ *page 89* when the clutch is overloaded.

**Note**

– When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat and can damage it. Set the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped while the selector lever is in the "N" position will damage the automatic transmission, because it is not lubricated under those circumstances ⇨ *page 378, Towing with a tow truck*.
– The transmission can overheat and be damaged under certain driving and traffic conditions such as frequent starts, creeping for a long time, or stop-and-go traffic. When the or indicator light turns on, stop the vehicle at the next opportunity and let the transmission cool ⇨ *page 89*.

**Tips**

For safety reasons, the parking brake only releases automatically when the driver's door is closed.

## Hill descent control

Applies to: vehicles with automatic transmissions

*The hill descent control system assists the driver when driving down hills.*

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in the "D" or "S" position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the hill. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brakes. Because hill descent control cannot shift down farther than 3rd gear, it may be necessary to shift into tiptronic mode in very steep areas. In this case, shift into 2nd or 1st gear in tiptronic mode to use the engine's braking force to relieve the brakes.

Hill descent control switches off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with a cruise control system* ⇨ *page 120*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set. ▶

**WARNING**

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

## Manual shifting (tiptronic mode)

Applies to: vehicles with automatic transmissions

*The tiptronic mode allows the driver to shift the gears manually.*

**Fig. 93** Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever

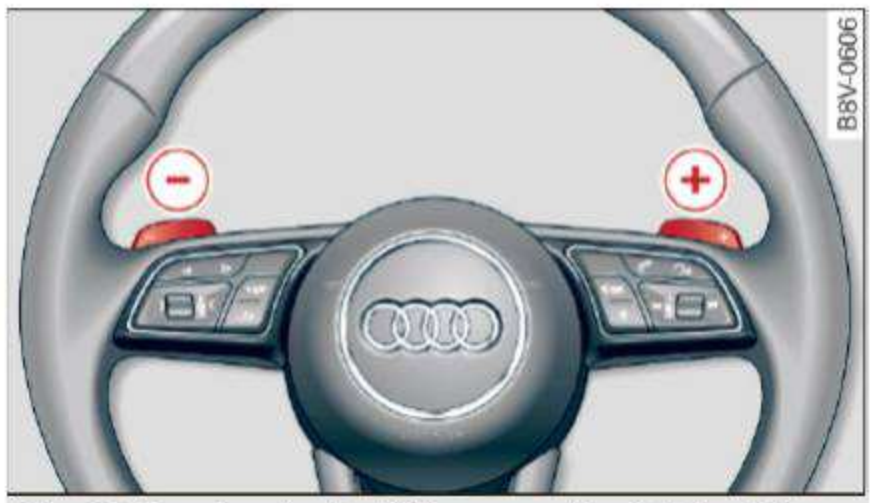



**Fig. 94** Steering wheel: shifting manually with the shift paddles*

### Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into tiptronic mode while stationary and while driving.

- To shift into tiptronic mode, push the selector lever from the "D/S" position to the right in the tiptronic shift gate. Once the transmission has switched modes, the selector lever position **M** is shown in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *page 84, fig. 90*. For example, **M4** means the fourth gear is engaged.
- To shift up a gear, tap the selector lever forward ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 93*.
- To shift down a gear, tap the selector lever backward ⊖.

### Shifting with the shift paddles*

You can operate the shift paddles in the "D/S" or "**M**" (tiptronic shift gate) selector lever positions.

- To shift up one gear, tap the shift paddle ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 94*.
- To shift down a gear, tap the ⊖ shift paddle.
- Applies to: RS models: to select the lowest/highest possible gear, press and hold the shift paddle ⊖ / ⊕.

If the shift paddles are tapped while in the "D/S" selector lever position, automatic mode switches off briefly. To switch from manually shifting back to automatic shifting immediately, tap the shift paddle ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 94* for 1 second.

To keep shifting using the shift paddles, move the selector lever to the right out of the "D/S" position into the tiptronic shift gate.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

Applies to: RS models: when accelerating, the transmission does **not** automatically shift to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine RPM is reached. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

## Kick-down

Applies to: vehicles with automatic transmissions

*Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.*

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point (called kick-down), the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine RPM. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum specified engine RPM is reached.

Applies to: RS models: in tiptronic mode, the transmission does **not** automatically shift down into a lower gear. If you must accelerate, for example to pass a vehicle, you must shift manually. ▶

**WARNING**

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

## Launch control program

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic transmission and Launch Control Program

*The launch control program provides the best possible acceleration when starting from a stop.*

Requirement: the engine must be at operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

- ▸ Deactivate [1] the Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 81*. The LED in the button turns on.
- ▸ With the engine running, press the OFF button briefly one time. The indicator light turns on and the message **Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability** appears in the instrument cluster display.
- ▸ Pull the selector lever back out of the "D/S" position briefly to select the S position, or press it toward the right into the tiptronic position or select the **Dynamic** driving mode in drive select* ⇨ *page 140*.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least one second.
- ▸ At the same time, press the gas pedal all the way down with your right foot until the engine reaches and stays at a high RPM level.
- ▸ Remove your left foot from the brake pedal within five seconds ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

- Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
- Only use Launch Control when road and traffic conditions allow it and other drivers will not be endangered or impacted by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
- Please note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can break away when sport mode is switched on, especially when the road is slippery.
- Once the vehicle has started moving, press the OFF button briefly to turn the sport mode off.

**Tips**

- The transmission temperature may increase significantly after using the launch control program. If that happens, the program may not be available for a few minutes. It will be available again after a cool-down period.
- When accelerating using the launch control program, all vehicle parts are subject to heavy loads. This can lead to increased wear.

## Transmission malfunction

Applies to: vehicles with automatic transmissions

**Transmission: malfunction! Please stop vehicle and shift to P**

There is a malfunction in the transmission. Park the vehicle securely and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Transmission overheating! Please stop the vehicle!**

The transmission is too hot and can become damaged. Stop and let the transmission cool with the engine running (at idle) in the "P" selector lever position. Then the indicator light and the message turn off, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If the indicator light and the driver message do not turn off, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual** ▶

[1] It is not possible to deactivate the system with all versions of the transmission.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. No reverse gear**

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving in D until engine is off**

Drive the vehicle away from moving traffic and park. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style**

The transmission temperature has increased significantly. Drive very cautiously or take a break from driving until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

**Transmission: please press brake pedal and select gear again**

If the transmission malfunctions because the temperature is too high, a message appears when the transmission is cooled.

## Selector lever emergency release

Applies to: vehicles with automatic transmissions

*If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.*

**Fig. 95** Selector lever: removing the shifter boot

**Fig. 96** Selector lever: using the emergency release to move out of the Park position

To maneuver or tow the vehicle, the emergency release must be used to move the selector lever from the P position.

The emergency release mechanism is located in the right area under the selector lever shift gate. Using the emergency release can be complicated. We recommend contacting an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance, if necessary.

The screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit located in the luggage compartment is needed to for the emergency release ⇨ *page 360*. Use the flat side of the reversible screwdriver blade.

### Removing the shifter boot

- ▸ Set the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ ⚠ to secure your vehicle from rolling. If this is not possible, secure your vehicle from rolling using another method.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off. ▶

- ▸ To loosen the shifter boot, carefully insert the flat side of the screwdriver sideways into the slit near the shifter boot ⇨ *fig. 95*.
- ▸ Carefully pry the shifter boot out with the screwdriver while gripping the boot at the fold and pulling it upward and out -arrow- until all four corners are released.
- ▸ Fold the shifter boot up around the shifter knob ⇨ *fig. 96*.

### Selector lever emergency release

- ▸ Press and hold the yellow release button with the screwdriver ⇨ *fig. 96*.
- ▸ Press the release button in the selector lever Ⓐ and move the lever into the "N" position.
- ▸ Clip the shift cover back into the shift gate after using the emergency release.

**WARNING**

– Only activate the emergency release while on a level surface or a slight slope.
– Only move the selector lever out of the "P" position when the parking brake is set. If it is not functioning, secure the vehicle from rolling using the brake pedal or other suitable means, such as blocking a front and a rear wheel. An unsecured vehicle may roll away, which increases the risk of an accident.

# e-tron

# Plug-in hybrid drive

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

### General information

The plug-in hybrid drive is a drive concept that allows you to choose between driving with the electric motor, with the gasoline engine or using a combination of both.

All work done on the high-voltage system must only be performed by certified high-voltage technicians at authorized Audi dealers or authorized Audi Service Facilities in accordance with Audi guidelines.

The high-voltage system is composed of the following high-voltage components: the high-voltage battery, the power electronics, the electric motor, the high-voltage A/C compressor, the high-voltage heater, the charging system and charging port as well as the orange high-voltage wiring.

The pedal referred to in this section of the Owner's Manual is the equivalent of the accelerator pedal (gas pedal) in a standard vehicle.

### High-voltage battery

The high-voltage battery is located on the vehicle underbody in front of the rear axle and does not require any maintenance from the driver. Additional information about the high-voltage battery can be found under ⇨ *page 106*.

**⚠ WARNING**

The voltage in the high-voltage system is life-threatening. Touching a damaged high-voltage component can result in a fatal electric shock. The components in the high-voltage system are marked with a warning label which warns against the high-voltage.

- The voltage level in the high-voltage system is still dangerous and potentially life-threatening when the ignition is switched off.
- Never perform work on orange high-voltage cables or on high-voltage components. Only authorized repair facilities that are certified may perform work on the high-voltage system.
- Never damage, alter or remove the orange high-voltage cable or disconnect it from the high-voltage system.
- Never perform any work using cutting, shaping or sharp-edged tools or heat sources near the high-voltage system and high-voltage cables.
- Audi regulations must be followed during all work performed on the high-voltage system and high-voltage components.
- When working on the high-voltage system and high-voltage components, make sure the remote control key is kept far enough away from the vehicle so that there is no risk of the ignition being inadvertently switched on.
- Gases that escape from the high-voltage battery can be poisonous or flammable.
- Damage to the high-voltage battery could cause the high-voltage battery to leak immediately or in the future, and poisonous or flammable gases could escape. Do not inhale the gases!
- Do not expose yourself to any leaking fluids and do not come into contact with them.
- The high-voltage battery electrolyte fluid is caustic. If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area for at least 15 minutes with clean water. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.
- In the event of a technical emergency, inform the responders that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never leave the vehicle unattended when in drive ready mode ⇨ *page 94* with a gear engaged. The vehicle can start moving ("creeping") even if the gasoline engine is switched off, since the electric motor is still operating. This may cause collisions and severe or fatal ▶

injuries. When the vehicle enters drive ready mode, the status message **e-tron READY** appears briefly in the instrument cluster display and the needle in the power meter points to **READY** ⇨ *page 95*.

– Make sure that the selector lever is in the P position and the ignition is switched off when leaving the vehicle.

**Note**

– The high-voltage system can be damaged if the vehicle underbody comes into contact with the ground. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized repair facility and have it inspected.
– The electric drive motor can become very hot during operation. Do not stop the vehicle if there is oil, fuel residue or other flammable substances under or next to the vehicle.

## Special considerations for the high-voltage battery

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Please first read and note the introductory information and heed the warnings ⇨ *page 92*.

All batteries age with use and over time. There are things you should know about the care of the high voltage battery that will help it keep giving you good service and reliability over time. Please read and keep the following information in mind while you enjoy the performance and economy of your vehicle.

– Be sure to charge the high voltage battery before leaving the vehicle parked and unused for a longer period of time. Ideally the high-voltage battery should have a charge level between 40 % and 60 % when parked for a long time.
– If the battery charge level is below 3 %, never park the vehicle for more than 21 days without charging the high-voltage battery. Should you have to park the vehicle for a long time, make sure that the charge level is sufficient to help prevent the battery from aging prematurely.
– Frequent and consecutive charging of the high-voltage battery when the charge level is above 98 % can also decrease the capacity of the high-voltage battery. Make sure the charge level is below 98 % when you start the charging process.
– Should the vehicle be parked for longer than 2 days at temperatures below - 13 °F (-25 °C), the high-voltage battery could freeze and not be able to provide energy to the electric motor. The battery will start working again, once it warms up. The battery can be warmed up when the outside temperature rises or when the vehicle is garaged appropriately. The battery will also warm up when being used (switching on the air conditioner, the heater or by driving the vehicle). Should you have to park your vehicle at very low temperatures for longer than 1 day, make sure that the high-voltage battery does not freeze by parking the vehicle in a garage that is heated or protected from the outside temperature.
– The high-voltage battery can be damaged and the capacity can be decreased when the vehicle is parked for longer than 24 hours when the ambient temperature is higher than 118 °F (48 °C). Always make sure that the high-voltage battery is not exposed to temperatures above 118 °F (48 °C) for a long time.
– Never park the vehicle in areas that are likely to be flooded, such as beaches or river banks, and never drive the vehicle in WATER, on flooded roads or through water that is higher than the bottom of the vehicle body. The high-voltage battery, along with other vehicle components, can be damaged severely if the high-voltage battery is exposed to open water especially for a longer time. However, you can drive through water on roads under certain conditions ⇨ *page 72*.

Failure to heed any of these requirements can age the battery prematurely and lead to a permanent decrease of the high-voltage battery's capacity.

**Tips**

Always make sure that the high-voltage battery is not exposed to extremely low and high temperatures as well as to water especially for a longer time. Failure to protect and care ▶

for the high voltage battery can lead to serious damage and/or a decrease of the capacity void coverage under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Starting/driving the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The vehicle is started and stopped with the START ENGINE STOP button. Please also read the information under ⇨ *page 76, Starting the engine*.

### Establishing drive ready mode

See ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 92*.

Requirement: a charging cable must not be connected to the vehicle ⇨ *page 115* and the selector lever must be in the "P" or "N" position.

– Press the brake pedal.
– Press the START ENGINE STOP button.

When the vehicle enters drive ready mode, the status message **e-tron READY** appears briefly in the instrument cluster display and the needle in the power meter points to **READY** ⇨ *page 95*.

### Driving

The vehicle starts with the electric motor after establishing the drive ready mode and if the conditions for electric drive mode have been met ⇨ *page 98*.

The conditions to drive are essentially the same as for the automatic transmission ⇨ *page 83*.

You and your passengers should anticipate the possibility of a sporty acceleration.

### Ending drive ready mode

– Place the selector lever in the P position.
– Switch the ignition off with the START ENGINE STOP button.

### Vehicle sound[1)]

The vehicle generates an electronic engine sound so that your vehicle can be heard from the outside when in electric drive mode. The vehicle sound automatically fades out at higher speeds when the sounds from the tires and wind start increasing.

### Switching the ignition on/off

You can switch the ignition on without establishing drive ready mode.

– To switch the ignition on or off, press the START ENGINE STOP button. Do not press the brake pedal while doing this.

When the ignition is switched on, the needle stays pointed at **OFF** (1) ⇨ *page 95, fig. 98* or **OFF** is displayed (1) ⇨ *page 95, fig. 98*.

No indicator lights stay turned on when the ignition is switched off.

### Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition will switch off automatically under the following conditions:

– The vehicle has already been driven.
– The vehicle is stationary.
– The gasoline engine is not running.
– The driver's door is opened.
– The driver's safety belt is unbuckled.
– The brake pedal is not pressed.

In this case, the activated low beam is replaced by the parking light. The message **Side marker lights will switch off automatically in 30 minutes. See owner's manual** appears in the instrument cluster display. The parking lights will switch off after approximately 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle.

If the gasoline engine was not stopped, the motor continues running and the ignition does not automatically switch off ⇨ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces. ▶

[1)] Not available in all markets.

**Tips**

The vehicle cannot start when outside temperatures are below -18 °F (-28 °C)
⇨ *page 96*.

## Power meter overview

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

*The power meter shows the status of the plug-in hybrid drive and the availability of the plug-in hybrid system.*

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit
**Fig. 97** Power meter overview (diagram)

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster
**Fig. 98** Power meter overview (diagram)

### Selecting the power meter display format

- Open the first Vehicle tab (trip computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: Select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Left dial** > **Tachometer** or **Power meter** > **Combination view**. ▶

For additional information, see ⇨ *page 17, Trip computer (Audi virtual cockpit)*.

▸ Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: Open the **Tachometer** display by turning the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel.

When opening the driver's door, the charge level is shown in the instrument cluster when the ignition is switched on, or the charge level and the remaining charge time for the high-voltage battery is displayed when charging.

The power meter gives feedback about the particular accelerator pedal position and shows the current demand (%) for electricity or fuel regardless of which engine is active.

An economical driving and recuperation range is shown in green ⇨ *page 99, Energy recovery (recuperation)*. A driving range that is not economical is shown in orange.

① Vehicle not drive ready (OFF)
② Recuperation (CHARGE)
③ Vehicle ready to drive (READY) or coasting
④ Efficient driving with electric motor and/or gasoline engine (EFFICIENCY)
⑤ Economic driving while the electric motor or gasoline engine is in the partial power range
⑥ Driving in full power range
⑦ 100% output
⑧ BOOST: the electric motor supports the combustion engine
⑨ High-voltage battery charge level
⑩ EV mode: active EV, standby, EV or currently unavailable. EV
⑪ Speed limit for electric driving in EV mode (80 mph / 130 km/h)

## Indicator lights and messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Also note the indicator lights in ⇨ *page 20*.

The gasoline engine is active when the indicator light turns on.

**/ Drive system: system fault! Safely park vehicle**

There is a malfunction in the plug-in hybrid system. The brake booster and the power steering may stop working. Stop the vehicle immediately or as soon as possible. Park the vehicle in a safe place outdoors that is not near buildings, roof overhangs, carports or similar structures. Switch the ignition off. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**/ Electric drive: overheated! Safely stop vehicle and check coolant**

The coolant level is too low or the coolant temperature is too high.

Stop the vehicle in the outdoors as soon as it is safely possible. Switch the ignition off.

Read the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Coolant on page 103* and check the coolant level ⇨ *page 102*.

If the coolant level is OK, the malfunction may be caused by the system overheating. Let the vehicle's electric drive system cool down for some time.

If the message turns off after cooling down and switching the ignition back on, you can continue driving. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

If the indicator light stays on, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**/ Drive system: system fault! Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the plug-in hybrid system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**/ Drive system: system fault! Restart not possible. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the plug-in hybrid system. Do not open the hood. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service ▶

Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Battery temperature too low. Vehicle cannot be started. See owner's manual**

The outside temperature is too low. The vehicle can no longer start at temperatures below -18 °F (-28 °C). Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**POWER LIMIT Warning! Limited performance**

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there may be an engine control malfunction. The EPC* indicator light in the instrument cluster also turns on. The engine output is reduced. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**e-tron mode: EV currently unavailable**

This message appears when the EV button is pressed and the conditions for electric drive mode are not met.

**Vehicle sound: malfunction! Pedestrians cannot hear vehicle. Please contact Service**

The vehicle sound is no longer functioning. Drive extremely carefully, since others may not hear your vehicle. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

## Range display

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 99** Instrument cluster: range display

The range can be displayed in the trip computer. You can access the range display with the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 13, Multifunction steering wheel plus* or ⇨ *page 16, Multifunction steering wheel*.

Depending on the selected plug-in hybrid mode, the display gives the following information:

① Remaining electric motor range or combined total range

② Remaining gasoline engine range

③ Remaining electric motor range

**Tips**

The values given are based on the latest consumption values.

## Range and statistics

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 100** Infotainment system: e-tron range monitor

### Opening the range monitor

The range monitor in the Infotainment system shows the relationship between energy consumers and electric range ⇨ *fig. 100*. The three largest energy consumers will be listed in sequential order. Switching off the consumers increases the electric range.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Range & statistics** > **Range**.

### Opening the statistics

The statistics in the Infotainment system show the distances driven without emissions (electric) and with fuel. The values are taken from the short-term memory and long-term memory of the on-board computer.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Range & statistics** > **e-tron statistics**. ▶

▸ To switch between the short-term and long-term memory, turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel.

## Setting plug-in hybrid drive modes

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

*You can select between one electric mode and two hybrid modes.*

**Fig. 101** Center console: button EV

▸ Press the EV button repeatedly until the desired drive mode is displayed in the instrument cluster/Infotainment system display.

You can change modes when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If the vehicle operating conditions will not allow you to set the mode manually, the last active mode is selected.

The active mode is displayed the first time the EV button is pressed.

**e-tron mode: EV** - EV mode is electric driving only. EV mode is active at the beginning of every trip depending on the operating condition of the vehicle. The LED in the EV button turns on. The EV indicator light also appears in the instrument cluster. The gasoline engine remains turned off, as long as the conditions for electric driving are met ⇨ *page 98, Conditions for electric driving*.

**e-tron mode: Hybrid** - the electric motor and the gasoline engine work efficiently together in hybrid mode. The high-voltage battery will be used to the fullest extent when this mode is switched on. This mode is best suited for long distances.

**e-tron mode: Battery Hold** - the electric motor and the gasoline engine work together in Battery Hold mode, so that the high-voltage battery charge level is maintained as much as possible.

### Tips

– Applies to: Battery Hold mode: the high-voltage battery charge level can still decrease depending on the driving behavior.
– If you select the sport driving mode "S" when in EV mode, the Battery Hold mode is automatically selected.
– If the EV ⇨ *page 98* button is pressed while in sport driving mode "S", the transmission switches automatically to normal mode "D".
– When temperatures are below approximately 14 °F (–10 °C), the vehicle heat output in EV mode is reduced in order to attain higher ranges. If the windows fog up or a higher heat output is desired, switch on the Hybrid or Battery Hold mode.

## Conditions for electric driving

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The EV mode can only be switched on if the following conditions are met:

– The charge level of the high-voltage battery must be sufficient.
– The temperature of the high-voltage battery must be adequate (outside temperatures not below approximately 14°F / -10°C and not above 104°F / 40°C)
– The speed must not be higher than approximately 80 mph (130 km/h).
– Kick-down must not be activated.
– The sport drive mode "S" must not be selected.

EV mode is switched off if one or more of the conditions are not met. The gasoline engine will start automatically. The indicator light turns on as a message in the instrument cluster. The LED in the EV button and the EV indicator light turn off.

Electric drive mode will not continue automatically. Reactivate the EV mode ⇨ *page 98*. ▶

**Tips**

It may be necessary for the gasoline engine to run longer for technical reasons, such as when condensation accumulates in the engine. Driving exclusively in electric mode is not possible in this phase.

## Plug-in hybrid functions

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The functions described below activate automatically depending on the driving style.

### Full-throttle acceleration (boost)

The boost function is activated by pressing the accelerator pedal farther down (kick-down). The vehicle is powered by both the gasoline engine and the electric motor when in full acceleration. Boost is only available for a short time, because it uses a large amount of energy. Availability depends on the high-voltage battery charge level.

### Coasting

The gasoline engine switches off and disengages at speeds up to approximately 112 mph (180 km/h) if the accelerator pedal is not pressed and the "D" position is selected. Driving conservatively like this can reduce fuel consumption.

### Energy recovery (recuperation)

When braking, the electric motor will act as a generator creating electric energy that is then stored in the high-voltage battery. This also occurs when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill.

If the brakes are applied early and evenly, the electric motor will brake the vehicle (2) ⇨ *page 95, fig. 98*. By doing this, a large amount of the kinetic energy is recovered and may be stored as electric energy in the high-voltage battery. The conventional brakes are also activated when the brakes are pressed very hard.

The strength of recuperation can depend on the following factors:

– If you are in tiptronic mode ⇨ *page 88*. Or
– If the sport driving mode "S" was selected.

The energy recovery is shown in the energy flow display in the instrument cluster display/Infotainment system ⇨ *page 100*.

## Tips for efficient driving

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

| Driving situations | Conditions | Vehicle behavior |
|---|---|---|
| Constant driving and coasting (gliding) | – Cautious driving and reserved acceleration.<br>– Release the accelerator pedal early and entirely. | The kinetic energy of the vehicle is used to move the vehicle.<br>The gasoline engine turns off automatically and disengages when you release the accelerator pedal completely. The vehicle glides without being propelled. |
| Energy recovery (recuperation) | – Brake early and evenly with short pedal movements. | The electric motor brakes the vehicle. By doing this, a large amount of the kinetic energy is recovered and may be stored in the high-voltage battery in the form of electric energy. |
| Driving in city traffic | – Accelerate moderately and brake early and evenly | The kinetic energy of the vehicle is used to move the vehicle. |

| Driving situations | Conditions | Vehicle behavior |
|---|---|---|
| Driving on highways and expressways | – Intentionally take your foot off of the gas pedal to allow for prolonged coasting. | The gasoline engine turns off automatically and disengages when you release the accelerator pedal completely. The vehicle glides without being propelled. |
| | – Reduce the vehicle speed by releasing the accelerator pedal and not by braking. | Fuel consumption can be reduced by coasting. |
| | – Use the "S" selector lever position and tiptronic mode sparingly. | A sporty driving style increases fuel consumption. |
| Driving in cold weather | – Do not run the gasoline engine to warm the engine while the vehicle is parked | The temperature of the gasoline engine rises very slowly and the fuel consumption increases considerably. |
| | – Use the rear window/exterior mirror defogger and the seat heating sparingly. | This conserves the energy in the high-voltage battery so that it is available to run the vehicle in electric mode. |
| | – Park the vehicle in a garage overnight | This reduces exposure of the high-voltage battery to cold temperatures. The required temperature range for the high-voltage battery will then be reached more quickly after you start driving. |

## Energy flow display

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

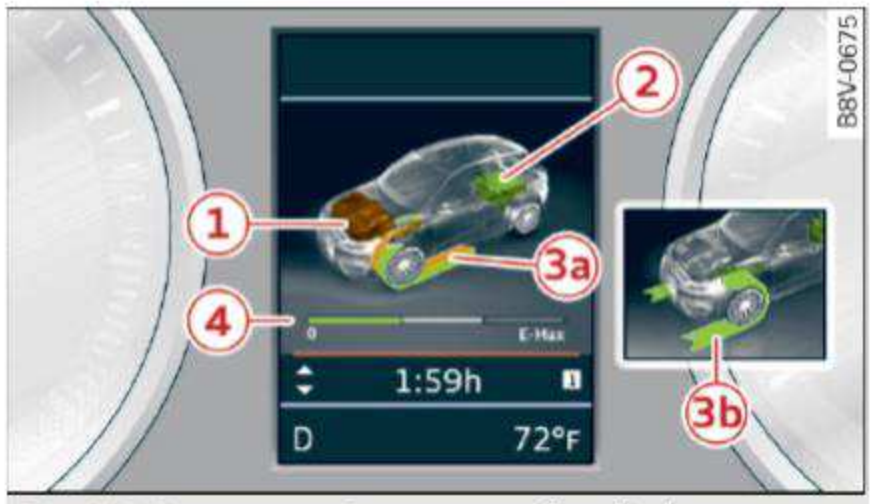



**Fig. 102** Instrument cluster: energy flow display

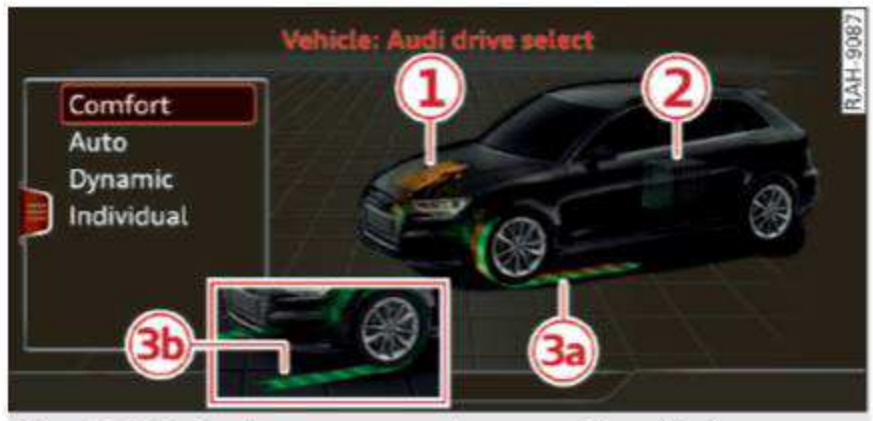



**Fig. 103** Infotainment system*: energy flow display

An energy flow display can be shown in the instrument cluster display/Infotainment system [1].

The image is animated in the Infotainment system [1].

### Display of energy flow indicator in the instrument cluster display

- Open the first Vehicle tab (trip computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: on the multifunction steering wheel, select: left control button > **Energy flow**. ▶

[1] Not available in all Infotainment systems.

► Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: open the **Energy flow indicator** display by turning the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel.

**Image in the Infotainment display**[1)]

► In the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Audi drive select**.

| Component | Color | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| ① Gasoline engine | Orange | The gasoline engine is running |
| | Gray | The gasoline engine is off |
| ② High-voltage battery | Green | High-voltage battery charge level |
| | Green (animated in the Infotainment system [a)]) | The high-voltage battery is charging |
| | Gray | The vehicle is not in drive ready mode |
| ③a Motion arrow | Green | Electric driving |
| | Orange | Driving with the gasoline engine |
| | Green-orange | Driving with the gasoline engine and electric motor (boost) |
| ③b Motion arrow | Green | Recuperation |

a) Not available in all Infotainment systems.

The power currently available in the electric drive system is displayed when you open the energy flow display.

The bars are filled in with different colors based on the power status ④ ⇨ *fig. 102*:

– White: electric power currently available
– Green: electric power currently being used

The more bars that are filled in the E-max section ④, the longer the maximum power can be utilized. The bars turn off in the E-max section when the maximum power can no longer be utilized.

When the electric drive power is greatly reduced, the drive mode will automatically switch to using the gasoline engine.

The availability of power is generally restricted under the following conditions:

– The temperature of the high-voltage battery is very cold or very hot.
– The high-voltage battery charge level is low.

The power availability is not visible if the indicator light turns on.

**Tips**

High power availability is necessary, for example, when needing to accelerate quickly while in electric driving mode to pass another vehicle.

## Vehicle tool kit and tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 104** Luggage compartment: vehicle tool kit and tire mobility kit

1) Not available in all Infotainment systems.

The vehicle tool kit and the tire mobility kit (Tire Mobility System) are located in the side trim panel Ⓐ and Ⓑ in the luggage compartment.

Additional information about the vehicle tool kit may be found under ⇨ *page 360* and information about the tire mobility kit under ⇨ *page 361*.

**Tips**

The vehicle must not be operated without the tire repair set.

## Vehicle transport

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

*The following contains information you should know about transporting your vehicle.*

The MQB-A high-voltage lithium-ion battery system equipped in your vehicle is composed of SANYO 12 UF 261 591 high-voltage batteries and has passed test 38.3 in accordance with the UN Tests and Criteria handbook. The vehicle may be transported with the high-voltage battery installed as conventional class 9 hazardous materials without additional official consent for air and sea shipment (current law ICAO-TI and IMDG-Code 01.01.2012).

## Jump start

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

*The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.*

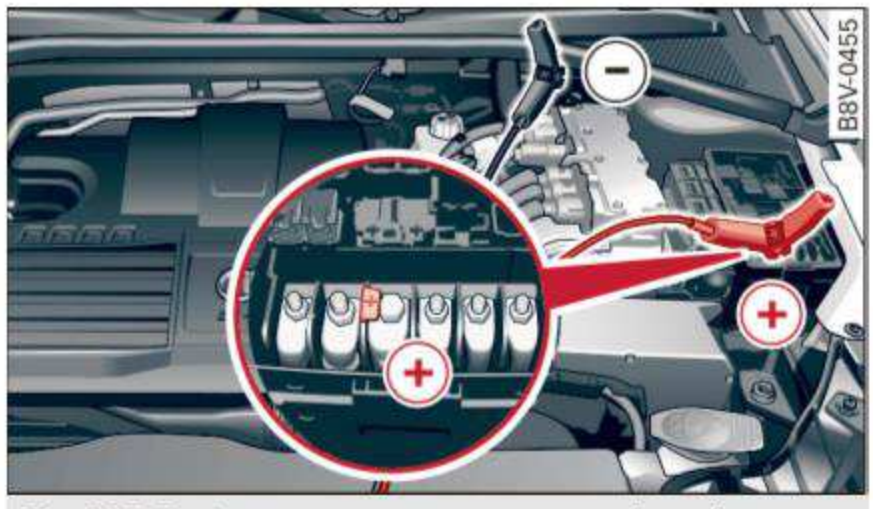



**Fig. 105** Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

The vehicle is equipped with one vehicle battery and one high-voltage battery.

If the vehicle battery is drained, it can be charged with a charger or you can jump start the vehicle using another vehicle's battery in the same way as a conventional vehicle.

Read the information about charging the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 327* and for jump starting the vehicle ⇨ *page 375*.

- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 320*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse box cover Ⓢ to access the positive terminal ⊕ ⇨ *page 321*.
- ▸ Clamp the terminal clamps from the charging device or jump start cable to the positive terminal ⊕ and to the body ground point ⊖.

**Note**

You must **not** give a jump start with your vehicle. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system in your vehicle.

## Coolant

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 106** Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank

Your vehicle has two coolant expansion tanks that are separate from each other:

Ⓐ: expansion tank for gasoline engine and electric motor.

Ⓑ: expansion tank for the high-voltage area.

**The expansion tank Ⓑ must not be opened** ⇨ ⚠.

- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 320*.
- ▸ Always check the coolant level in both coolant expansion tanks Ⓐ and Ⓑ using the outer markings. ▶

- ▸ When you fill coolant in the expansion tank Ⓐ, please refer to ⇨ *page 324, Cooling system*.
- ▸ Do not drive any farther if the coolant level in the expansion tank Ⓑ is low. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately ⇨ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment* before opening the hood and checking the coolant level.
- The expansion tank Ⓑ may only be opened and filled by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Coolant can enter the inside of the high-voltage battery when filling the expansion tank Ⓑ and cause a short circuit, which increases the risk of fire.

# Refueling

## Opening the fuel filler door

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 107** Driver's door: button ⛽

The tank system must be vented before refueling

- ▸ Switch the ignition off with the START ENGINE STOP button.
- ▸ Pull on the ⛽ switch.
- ▸ The fuel filler door will open automatically after venting is complete.

Read and follow the directions for inserting the fuel pump nozzle ⇨ *page 103*.

Read and follow the instructions for refueling ⇨ *page 315*.

## Inserting the fuel pump nozzle

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 108** Fueling procedure: insert the fuel pump nozzle correctly

Make sure when inserting the fuel pump nozzle that you do not press on the fuel filler door opener ① with the fuel pump nozzle. See the label in the fuel filler door ②. Otherwise, a valve will close in the fuel filler neck and fueling will stop even if the tank is not full.

You must vent the tank system again if you press on the fuel filler door opener. The fuel pump nozzle can stay in the fuel filler neck when doing this. Vent the tank system by pulling the ⛽ switch again in the driver's door ⇨ *page 103*.

## Messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**⛽ Fuel filler door open. Please press button again to refuel**

Fueling is possible for a certain amount of time after pressing the ⛽ button. You must press the ⛽ button again if this time is exceeded.

**⛽ Fuel filler door: malfunction! Unlock fuel filler door manually. See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction. You must manually unlock the fuel filler door ⇨ *page 104*.

**⛽ Warning! Vehicle performance may be limited**

The fuel tank is almost empty. You must anticipate a significant power loss. Drive immediately to a gas station.

**POWER LIMIT / POWER LIMIT Warning! Limited performance** ▸

The gasoline engine is no longer available because there is not enough fuel. Drive immediately to a gas station.

## Fuel filler door emergency release

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You must use the emergency release to open the fuel filler door when there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 317*.

The tank is **not** vented. You can only fill a small amount of fuel in the tank.

- ▸ Fill only until the automatic fuel pump nozzle turns off for the first time when it is operated correctly.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Tips**

Pressure can escape if you open the tank cap after using the emergency release. This can create noises.

# Charging

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Two options are available for charging the vehicle:

- Charge at a public charging station with a special charging cable* ⇨ *page 106*.
- Charge with household and industrial power sockets using the Audi e-tron charging system ⇨ *page 106*.

### Environmental conditions when using the Audi e-tron charging system

- Operating temperature: -13 °F (-25 °C) to 95 °F (+35 °C)
- Humidity: 5% to 95%, non-condensing
- 13,000 feet (4,000 meters) maximum above sea level
- Protected against dust and spray (IP54 (USA: enclosure 3R))

### Warnings when using the charging system

| | |
|---|---|
| | Surfaces can become very hot when in direct sunlight. |
| | Incorrect use increases the risk of electric shock. |
| | Do not use any extensions cords or cable reels. |
| | Do not use any travel adapters. |
| | Do not use any power strips. |
| | Do not use any charging cables with damage to the electronics or the connecting wires. |

**WARNING**

Sockets that are installed incorrectly can cause electric shock or fire when charging the high-voltage battery using the vehicle charging connection.

- Installation and setup of the household connection for the Audi e-tron charging system may only be performed by a qualified electrician. The qualified electrician is thereby fully responsible for adhering to applicable standards and regulations.
- Make sure that the selected charging connection is suitable for drawing 16 amps.
- Make sure that the household socket is grounded and shielded from water.
- The Audi e-tron charging system may only be used with a properly grounded power network. It cannot be used with non-grounded power networks (such as IT networks).
- Please follow the safety precautions in the assembly instructions for the Audi charging dock* or the Audi charging clips*.

**WARNING**

If you are not familiar with the socket or the electrical installation or it has not been checked by qualified experts, never use it for charging. Even very low charging currents can cause serious damage and in particular fires if the socket or electrical installation is in bad ▸

condition. If necessary, get expert assistance from a qualified electrical installation specialist.

**WARNING**

Incorrect handling of the connector contacts can cause electric shock or fire.

- Do not touch the contacts for vehicle charging port and for the Audi e-tron charging system.
- Do not insert any objects in the vehicle charging port or in the Audi e-tron charging system.
- Protect the sockets and connectors against any moisture, water and other fluids.

**WARNING**

Using a damaged or incorrect charging cable or a damaged or incorrect socket, using the Audi e-tron charging system incorrectly or disregarding the safety precautions could cause short circuiting, electric shock, explosions, fires and burns.

- Do not use the Audi e-tron charging system if it is damaged and/or dirty. Check the cable and connector for damage and dirt before using.
- The Audi e-tron charging system must only be connected to sockets that are installed correctly and that are not damaged as well as to electrical installations that have no faults.
- Do not use any extension cords, cable reels, power strips or (travel) adapters.
- Disconnect the Audi e-tron charging system from the power network during a thunderstorm.
- Do not modify or repair any electrical components.
- Never immerse the Audi e-tron charging system and connectors in water.
- The Audi e-tron charging system must only be cleaned when the control unit is completely disconnected from the power supply and from the vehicle. Use a dry towel to clean.
- If a 110 volt household socket is used for charging, only connect one vehicle at a time to the same circuit. Use a different circuit if an additional vehicle needs to be charged at the same time. Note the maximum permitted current draw for the circuit. Contact a qualified electrical technician if there is any doubt.

**WARNING**

The components in the Audi e-tron charging system can trigger sparks which can cause flammable or explosive fumes to ignite.

- To reduce the risk of explosions, especially in garages, make sure the control unit is at least 19 inches (50 cm) above the floor when charging.
- Do not use the Audi e-tron charging system in areas at risk for explosions.
- The Audi e-tron charging system is only suited for use on Audi vehicles and vehicles within the Volkswagen Group. Using the device on vehicles made by another manufacturer is not authorized.

**Note**

Make sure that you always use the suitable power plug provided with the Audi e-tron charging system for the corresponding market. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

**Tips**

- Only use the factory-provided charging cable from Audi or the Volkswagen Group to charge your vehicle.
- For an uninterrupted charging process, we recommend only charging using sockets that are connected to a separately protected circuit.
- Using either NEMA sockets with a current rating of at least 30 A or industrial sockets in accordance with IEC 60309 when charging is recommended. ▶

– When charging the high-voltage battery using household/industrial sockets, the electrical installation can be used at full capacity. Having a qualified electrician regularly inspect the electrical installations that are used for charging is recommended.
– The vehicle radio and TV systems may have limited reception when charging the vehicle.

# Charging at public charging stations

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Use the charging cable supplied at the public charging station for charging. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

- ▸ Follow the operating instructions at the charging station to charge the high-voltage battery.
- ▸ Unlock the vehicle if necessary ⇨ *page 31*.
- ▸ Make sure that the selector lever is in the P position and drive ready mode is switched off.
- ▸ Turn the lock until it is vertical to open the cover on the charging unit ⇨ *page 110, fig. 117*.
- ▸ Slide the cover carefully to the side if necessary.
- ▸ Remove the lock on the charging port ⇨ *page 110, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Remove the cap from the charging cable.
- ▸ Connect the cable to the vehicle charging port.
- ▸ If a charging timer is not set, the charging process will start automatically depending on the charging station ⇨ *page 110, Setting the charging timer*.
- ▸ The vehicle operating status is indicated by the status LED ② ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116* or ⇨ *table on page 113*.
- ▸ Also read the information found in ⇨ *page 112, After charging*.

**Tips**

Only charge your vehicle at charging stations that conform to the following standards, depending on the country:
– GB/T 18487.1 and GB/T 20234 (China)
– IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe)
– SAE J1772 (North America, Japan)

**Tips**

– It is not possible to charge using the charging timer at some charging stations.
– You can use your Audi e-tron charging system if there is a household or industrial connection available at the charging station.

# Charging the battery with the Audi e-tron charging system

## Charging system overview

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

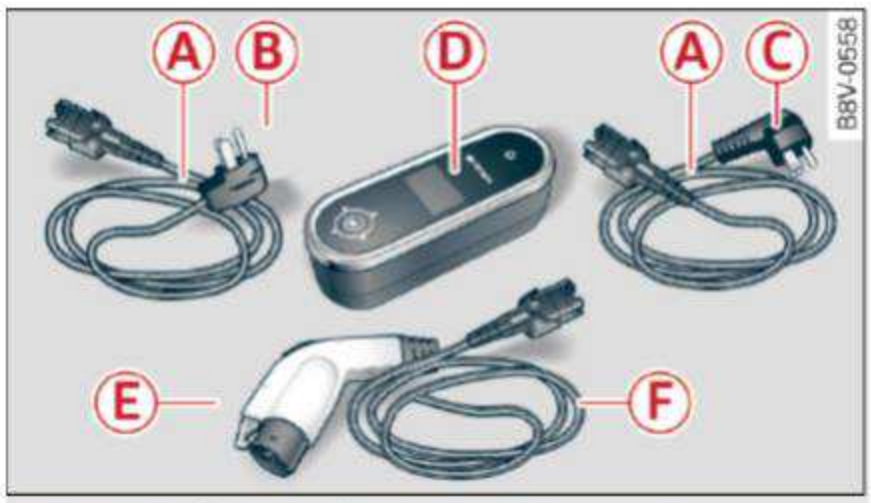



**Fig. 109** Audi e-tron charging system overview

Ⓐ Power cable

Ⓑ Power plug (for industrial sockets)

Ⓒ Power plug (for household sockets)

Ⓓ Control unit

Ⓔ Vehicle charging connector (connector for the vehicle)

Ⓕ Vehicle cable

The power cable Ⓐ is plugged into the upper end of the control unit and the vehicle cable Ⓕ is plugged into the lower end of the control unit Ⓓ.

**Note**

The charging system can be operated within a temperature range of -13 °F (-25 °C) to 95 °F (+35 °C). Note the following information:
– Protect the charging system against any strain, such as being run over, falling, pulling, bending and crushing. ▸

– Using the control unit while operating the charging dock* ⇨ *page 108* or charging clip* ⇨ *page 108* is recommended.
– Do **not** immerse the control unit in water or cover with snow or ice.

### Tips

– Always place the Audi e-tron charging system on a secure surface when charging.
– To reduce the risk of overheating during operation, do not place the Audi e-tron charging system in direct sunlight for long periods of time.
– If the temperature inside the control unit rises above 176 °F (80 °C), the charging process will stop automatically until the temperature decreases back down to the normal range.

## Changing/attaching the power/vehicle cable

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

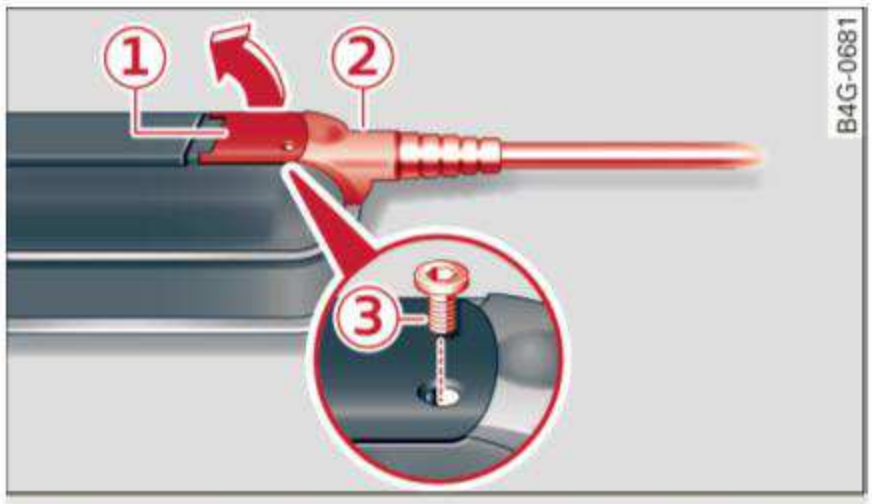



**Fig. 110** Control unit: removing/attaching the cable

### Requirements:

- The charging process for the high-voltage battery must be ended.
- The vehicle charging connector must be removed from the vehicle charging port.
- The power cable must be removed from the socket.

### Loosening the cable

- If necessary, loosen the screw ③ ⇨ *fig. 110* using the screwdriver provided.
- Lift the lever ① all the way up.
- Pull the connector ② out just until you feel resistance.
- Close the lever ① until it is resting on the connector ②.
- Remove the connector ② completely.

### Attaching the cable

- Lift the lever ① up slightly.
- Insert the connector ② into the control unit just until you feel resistance.
- Lift the lever ① all the way up.
- Insert the connector ② all the way into the control unit.
- Close the lever ①.
- Tighten the screw ③ using the screwdriver provided.

### WARNING

– Always remove the power cable from the socket before changing the power cable or vehicle cable.
– Always follow the instructions given when charging the high-voltage battery. Do not remove the vehicle charging cable from the socket during the charging process. End the charging process before removing the vehicle charging cable from the socket.
– Only change cables in a dry environment.
– The Audi e-tron charging system may only be used as one unit composed of power cables, the control unit and vehicle cable. We recommend using only cables approved by Audi.

## Charging dock

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and charging dock

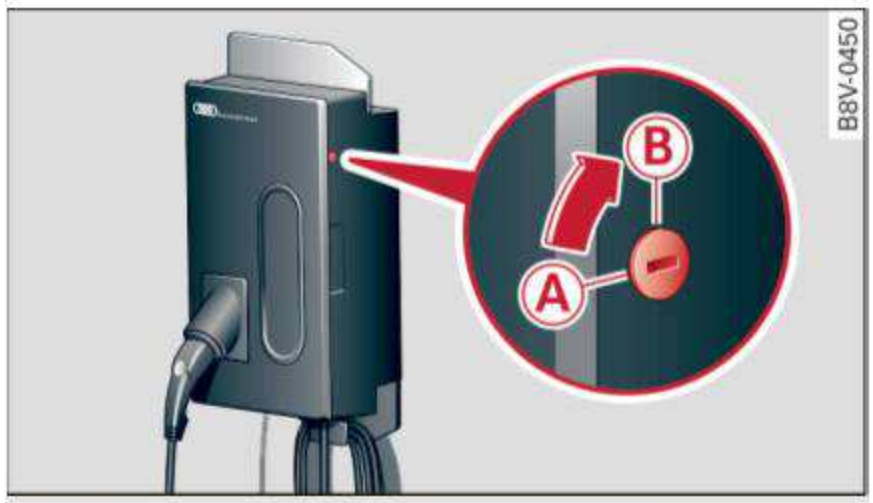



**Fig. 111** Opening/closing the charging dock

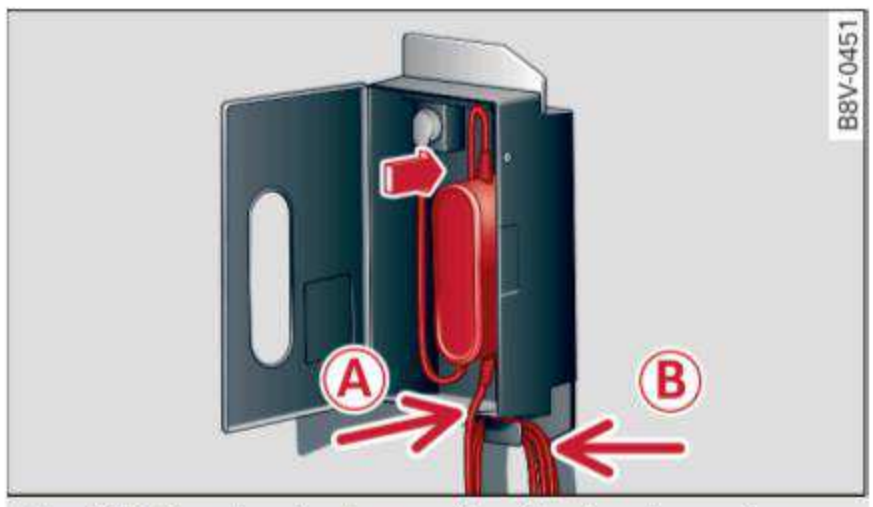



**Fig. 112** Charging dock: mounting the charging system

You can store the charging system in the charging dock.

### Opening/closing the charging dock

- ▸ If necessary, you can unlock/lock the charging dock using the key provided by turning it to the unlocked position (B) or locked position (A) ⇨ *fig. 111*.
- ▸ Opening/closing the door on the charging dock.

### Mounting the charging system in the charging dock

- ▸ Open the door on the charging dock.
- ▸ First insert the control unit in the bottom tabs on the charging dock and then into the upper tabs.
- ▸ Push the control unit toward the rear and let it lock into place.
- ▸ Guide the vehicle cable through the opening (A) ⇨ *fig. 112*.
- ▸ Wrap the extra cable length around the adapter (B).
- ▸ Plug the power cable into the socket in the charging dock.
- ▸ Close the door.
- ▸ After charging, you can place the vehicle charging connector (E) ⇨ *page 106, fig. 109* in the holder on the charging dock door ⇨ *fig. 111*.

### Removing the charging system from the charging dock

- ▸ Open the door on the charging dock.
- ▸ Remove the power cable connector from the socket in the charging dock.
- ▸ Unwrap the cable from the adapter (B).
- ▸ To loosen the control unit from the holder, press the release tabs above the control unit (B) ⇨ *fig. 112*.

**Tips**

– Always keep the door on the charging dock closed.

– Do not place any objects on the door or the charging dock.

## Charging clip

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and charging clip

**Fig. 113** Charging clip: charging system connected

### Connecting the charging system to the charging clip

- ▸ First insert the control unit in the bottom tabs on the charging clip and then into the upper tabs.
- ▸ Push the control unit toward the rear -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 113* and let it lock into place.
- ▸ Wrap the extra cable length around the charging connector mount (1).
- ▸ Plug the power cable into the socket (2).
- ▸ After charging, you can hook the vehicle charging connector (E) ⇨ *page 106, fig. 109* to the charging connector mount (1) ⇨ *fig. 113*. ▶

### Removing the charging system from the charging clip

- ▸ Remove the power cable connector from the socket ②.
- ▸ Unwind the cable from the charging connector mount ①.
- ▸ To loosen the control unit from the bracket, push the locking mechanism ③ upward ⇨ *fig. 113*.

## Transporting

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 114** Storage bag

- ▸ Store the charging system and the special charging cable* in the bag before transporting.
- ▸ Secure the bag using the tie-downs ⇨ *page 64*. The flat hook must be secured to the left side of the tie-downs.

**WARNING**

– If the vehicle charging cable is not secured or positioned correctly, it can slide out of place and endanger vehicle occupants when braking, when changing directions, or in an accident.
– Never transport the Audi e-tron charging system or the special charging cable* unsecured.
– Store the Audi e-tron charging system or the special charging cable* in the storage bag in the luggage compartment.
– Always transport the storage bag in the luggage compartment and never in the passenger compartment (for example the seats or in front of them).

## Charging overview

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

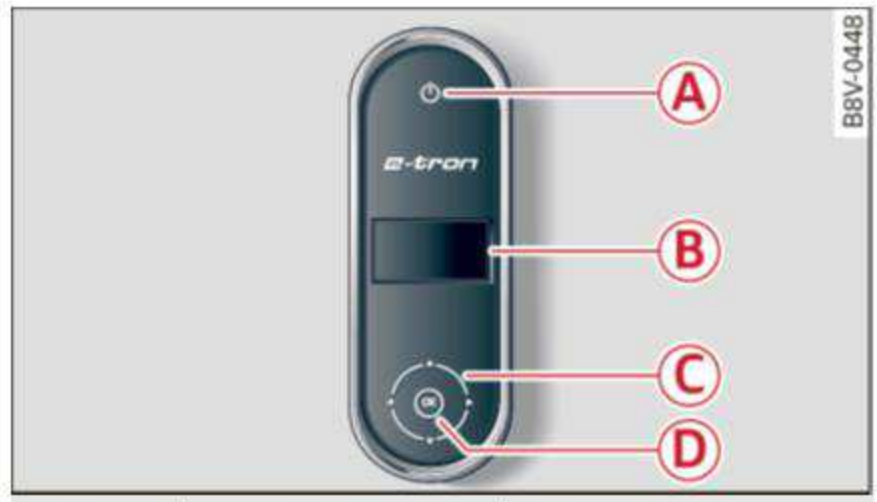



**Fig. 115** Charging system: control unit

**Fig. 116** Radiator grille: vehicle charging port and button module

The charging unit is located behind the Audi rings on the front of the vehicle.

Ⓐ ⏻ Button/LED

Ⓑ Display field

Ⓒ Arrow buttons

Ⓓ OK Button

① Charging timer button

② Status LED

③ Immediate charging button

The meaning of the different status displays for the charging system and the vehicle can be found under ⇨ *page 112, Status displays*.

**WARNING**

There is an error in the control unit if the LED Ⓐ is red. Disconnect the control unit from the power supply. Refer to this chapter ⇨ *page 112, Status displays*.

### Tips

– The device runs a self test after power has been restored to the control unit.
– You can activate a PIN for the control unit ⇨ *page 115*.
– The vehicle cannot be started if a charging connector is connected.

## Before charging

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

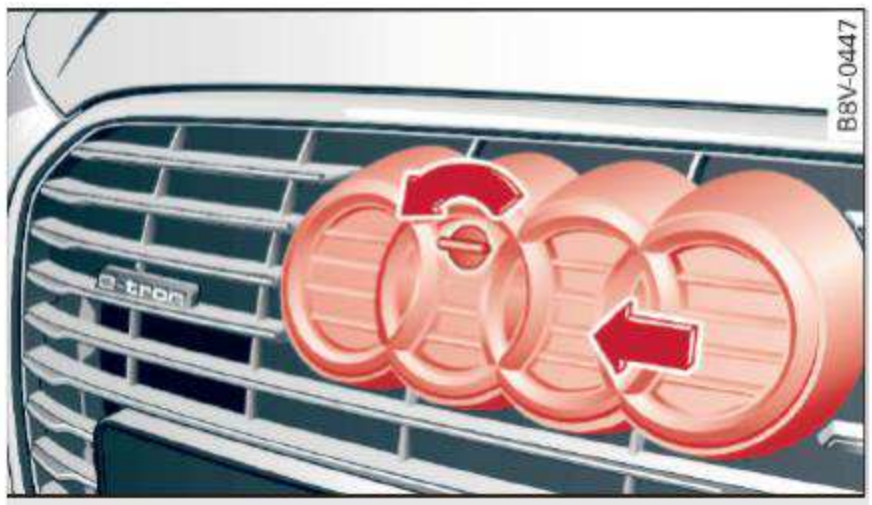



**Fig. 117** Radiator grille: opening the charging unit cover

**Fig. 118** Radiator grille: charging port cap

- ▸ Unlock the vehicle if necessary ⇨ *page 31*.
- ▸ Make sure that the selector lever is in the P position and drive ready mode is switched off ⇨ *page 94*.
- ▸ Turn the lock until it is vertical to open the cover on the charging unit ⇨ *fig. 117*.
- ▸ Slide the cover carefully to the side if necessary.
- ▸ Remove the lock on the charging port ⇨ *fig. 118*.
- ▸ Insert power plug Ⓑ or Ⓒ into the socket ⇨ *page 106, fig. 109*.
- ▸ Plug the vehicle charging connector Ⓔ ⇨ *page 106, fig. 109* into the vehicle charging port ⇨ *fig. 118*. The charging process starts automatically if no charging timer is set.

### Tips

Remove ice and snow from the cover using a hand brush and solvent-free deicing spray.

## Charging

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You can switch between the immediate charging ③ and charging timer ① options ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116* during the charging process if a charging timer was set. Press the desired button to do this ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116*.

You have different charging options:

### Immediate charging

To start the charging process immediately, press the button ③ ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116*. The LED in the button turns on.

### Setting the charging timer

You can delay the charging time with the charging timer in the Infotainment system [1]. You can set two different timers.

- ▸ If a timer was already set, press the button ① ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116*. The LED in the button turns on.
- ▸ To set a charging timer, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Charge** > right control button > **Program timer**.
- ▸ Select **Individual timer** or **Repeat timer**.
- ▸ Set the departure time, the date or day of the week.
- ▸ You can specify a preferred charging time with the charging timer, for example if you would like to use the off-peak rate.
- ▸ You can activate the auxiliary air conditioning with the charging timer while charging by selecting **Air conditioning** with the control knob. ▶

[1] Not available in all Infotainment systems.

A ✓ appears in the box. This activation is separate from the Infotainment system settings in the climate control menu ⇨ *page 116*.

- ▸ Press the BACK button.
- ▸ To activate the desired timer, confirm the setting with the control knob. A ✓ appears in the box.

### Power save mode

Power save mode is automatically switched on when the control unit has not been operated for more than one minute. The LED Ⓐ ⇨ *page 109, fig. 115* stays on. All other displays turn off.

- ▸ To switch power save mode on or off, press the ⏻ button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 109, fig. 115*.

Power save mode ends automatically when the vehicle charging connector is plugged into the vehicle.

The high-voltage battery is charging when the LED Ⓐ blinks.

**Tips**

– Auxiliary climate control is powered electrically if you select climate control using the charging timer. This may also be used in confined spaces such as garages.
– Using the auxiliary air conditioning while charging can also reduce the charge level of the high-voltage battery.
– The high-voltage battery also charges in power save mode.
– If the charging process is in progress, it will not be interrupted when power save mode switches on.
– The charging process can be interrupted at any time. Press the active button on the vehicle to do this ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116*.
– The climate control output while charging depends on the capacity of the electrical connection. Additional information on climate control can be found under ⇨ *page 116*.

## Setting the charging power level

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The control unit automatically recognizes the voltage and the available current strength. You can set whether you would like to charge with the full or half of the charging power.

- ▸ Press the OK Ⓓ ⇨ *page 109, fig. 115* button on the control unit.
- ▸ Enter the PIN if necessary.
- ▸ **POWER** and **SET PIN** appear in the display field.
- ▸ Select **POWER** with the arrow button Ⓒ.
- ▸ Press the OK button Ⓓ.
- ▸ The charging power display appears. The current set value (50% or 100%) is marked with a frame.
- ▸ If necessary, change the setting using the arrow button Ⓒ to move downward or upward.
- ▸ Press the OK button Ⓓ.

**Tips**

– If a household socket is used for the charging process, the charging power level is automatically set to 100%. If multiple electrical consumers are connected to a circuit, the charging power may be limited to 50% when charging with a household socket in order to relieve the load on the electrical installation.
– If an industrial socket is used for the charging process, the charging power level is automatically set to 50%. To receive the maximum charging power, the value must be set to 100%.
– A selected value remains set until the power cable is connected again.

## After charging

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 119** Radiator grille: unlocking and removing the vehicle charging connector

After completing the charging or climate control process, the vehicle enters a sleep mode. No displays are visible on the charging unit during this period.

### Deactivating sleep mode

- ▸ Unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 31*. Or
- ▸ Open the driver's door. Or
- ▸ Press the button ③ ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116*.

### Unlocking the vehicle charging connector

- ▸ Press the release ① ⇨ *fig. 119*.
- ▸ Remove the vehicle charging connector ②.

### Closing the charging unit

- ▸ Put the cap back on the charging port ⇨ *page 110, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Carefully slide the cover back in its original position.
- ▸ Turn the lock to the horizontal position ⇨ *page 110, fig. 117*.

**Note**

If you drive with an open charging unit, both the cover and the electronics installed behind it could be damaged.

**Tips**

The instrument cluster will show if the charging unit is open. However, please check if the cover is locked before every trip after charging.

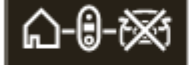
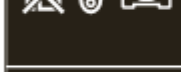
## Status displays

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You can check the various operating statuses using the LED Ⓐ, the display field on the control unit Ⓑ ⇨ *page 109, fig. 115* and the status LED ② ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116*.

### Charging system: control unit

| Symbol | Error code | LED on the control unit Ⓐ | | Meaning | Solution |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Blue | Flashes | Self test | |
| PLUGGED | | Green | On | Cable inserted correctly | |
| PLUGGED AND CHARGING | | | Flashes | Cable inserted and charging | |
| UNPLUGGED | | White | On | Self test completed successfully, cable is not connected or is connected incorrectly to the vehicle charging port. | Insert the cable correctly. |
| | 330, 340 | Red | On | Cable inserted incorrectly or faulty. | Check the cable and insert it correctly or replace the cable. |

| Symbol | Error code | LED on the control unit Ⓐ | | Meaning | Solution |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 200, 210, 260, 410, 450, 460, 490, 500 | Red | On | Error in the control unit. | Disconnect the control unit from the power supply and have the malfunction corrected at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility |
| | 180, 190 | Red | On | The control unit is overheating or not cooled enough. | Allow the control unit to cool down or operate it in the specified temperature range. |
|  | 130, 140, 470 | Red | On | Communication to the vehicle is malfunctioning. | Have the malfunction corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. |
|  | 300, 310, 370, 390 | Red | On | Error in the household installation. | Have the electrical installation checked by a qualified electrician. |
| | 480 | Red | Flashes | Fault in the household installation. | Have the electrical installation up to the control unit checked by a qualified electrician. |
| | 110 | Red | Flashes | Ground fault interrupter (GFI) triggered in the control unit. | Reset the ground fault interrupter with the OK Ⓓ button ⇨ *page 109, fig. 115*. Have the electrical installation checked by a qualified electrician if the same display appears. |

**Vehicle: charging unit**

| LED on the vehicle ② | | Meaning | Solution |
|---|---|---|---|
| Green | On | High-voltage battery charging process is completed. | Remove the charger, put the cap on and close the cover on the charging unit. |
| | Pulsating light | The high-voltage battery is charging or the vehicle is being air conditioned/heated. | |
| | Blinks for approximately one minute after leaving the vehicle | Charging timer was programmed but the charging process has not started yet. The LED in the button ① ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116* also turns on. | |

| LED on the vehicle ② | | Meaning | Solution |
|---|---|---|---|
| Yellow | On | No power supply was recognized even though the charging cable is plugged in. | Have the power supply or power supply system inspected. Check the status display on the control unit ⇨ *table on page 112*. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary. |
| | Flashes | The selector lever in not in the P position. | Move the selector lever into the P position. |
| Red | On | The charging connector could not be correctly locked in the vehicle charging port. | Check if the charging connector is inserted correctly ⇨ *page 110*. Remove the charging connector and insert it into the charging port again. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary. |
| | Flashes | Fault in the charging system. The high-voltage battery cannot be charged.<br>**Or**: the outside temperature is too low. The high-voltage battery could not be fully charged. | See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary. |

**Tips**

The operation statuses indicated by the LED ② on the vehicle are also displayed in the instrument cluster display/Infotainment system.

## Charging time

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The length of the charging process using the Audi e-tron charging system can vary based on the following factors:

– Sockets being used (household or industrial sockets).
– System voltage and current strength specific to a country.
– The value set for the charging power level on the control unit (50% or 100%).
– Fluctuations in the system voltage.
– Temperature outside the vehicle.
– Temperature of the high-voltage battery.
– Adjustments to the climate control inside the vehicle.
– Current capacity of the charging connector.
– Ignition is on/off.

**Example charging times**

| Connection | Charging time at 100% charge |
|---|---|
| Household socket (100 V, 10 A) | approximately 10 hours |
| Household socket (110 V, 10 A) | approximately 8.2 hours |
| Household socket (220 V, 8 A) | approximately 5.2 hours |
| Household socket (230 V, 10 A) | approximately 3.8 hours |
| Industrial socket (200 V, 16 A) | approximately 2.3 hours |
| Industrial socket (220 V, 16 A) | approximately 2.3 hours |
| Industrial socket (230 V, 16 A) | approximately 2.3 hours |
| Industrial socket (240 V, 16 A) | approximately 2.3 hours |

**Tips**

– Multiple versions of charging cables are offered due to the different power supply systems in different countries. The maximum charging power may potentially be unavailable because of this. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Charging may take longer when temperatures are extremely high or low.
– The charging time at public charging stations may vary from the times given in the table ⇨ *table on page 114*.

## Audi e-tron charging system PIN

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The control unit can be locked by entering a 4-digit PIN of your choice. If a PIN is activated, the selected PIN must be entered before every use.

We recommend locking your control unit to protect it against unauthorized access by a third party.

### Activating the PIN

▸ Press the OK Ⓓ ⇨ *page 109, fig. 115* button on the control unit. **POWER** and **SET PIN** appear in the display field.
▸ Select **SET PIN** using the arrow button Ⓒ.
▸ Press the OK button Ⓓ. **ENTER PIN** appears in the display field.
▸ Select the desired value by pressing the arrow buttons Ⓒ up or down.
▸ Use the right arrow button Ⓒ to go to the next digit.
▸ Press the left arrow button Ⓒ to go to the previous menu.
▸ Enter all of the digits.
▸ Press the OK button Ⓓ after the last digit.
▸ **REPEAT PIN** appears in the display field.
▸ Enter the PIN again using the arrow buttons Ⓒ.
▸ Press the OK button Ⓓ.
▸ **PIN OK** appears in the display field if both entries match.
▸ The PIN is now activated.

### Deactivating the PIN

Requirement: the control unit must be unlocked.

▸ Enter the numerical code **0000**. Proceed as if you were activating the PIN ⇨ *page 115*.
▸ The PIN is deactivated.

### Locking the control unit

Requirement: the PIN must be activated.

▸ Press the ⏻ button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 109, fig. 115* on the control unit.

### Unlocking the control unit

Requirement: the PIN must be activated.

▸ Press any button on the control unit.
▸ **PIN?** appears in the display field.
▸ Enter the PIN.
▸ Press the OK button Ⓓ.

**Tips**

– The PIN is deactivated in the factory default settings.
– If you do not remember your PIN, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– If the first PIN entry differs from the second entry, the first PIN entry is displayed.
– If nothing is entered within 20 seconds of this, the set value is not changed.

# Indicator lights and messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

If the indicator light turns on, the high-voltage battery is charging or is already completely charged.

If the indicator light stays on, there is a malfunction in the charging system. Have the problem corrected immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**Charging connector still attached. Vehicle cannot be driven**

This message appears when the charging system is still connected to the vehicle. Remove the connector ⇨ *page 112, After charging*. ▶

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit **Incompatible charging system. Please check charging system**

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: **AC charging: currently not possible**

This message appears when the charging system is incompatible. Only charge using the charging system that is designed for your vehicle.

**AC charging system: malfunction! Please contact Service**

This message appears if there is a malfunction in the charging system. Have the problem corrected immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

# Charging unit cover emergency release

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

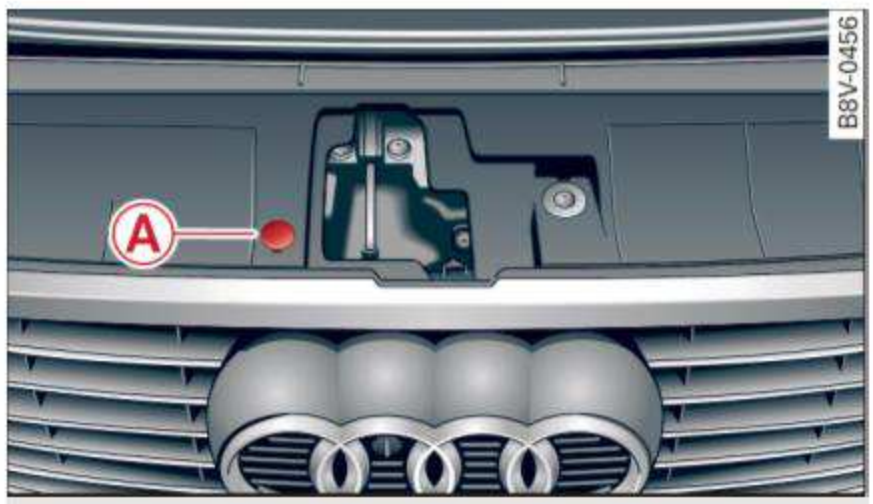



**Fig. 120** Front of the vehicle: cover emergency release

You can release the cover using the emergency release.

- ▸ Turn the cover lock to the horizontal position.
- ▸ Unlock the vehicle.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 320, Opening/closing the hood*.
- ▸ Carefully pull on the knob Ⓐ until there is resistance.
- ▸ Turn the cover lock to the vertical position ⇨ *page 110, fig. 117*.
- ▸ Slide the cover carefully to the side if necessary.

# Climate control

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Your vehicle has auxiliary air conditioning

The auxiliary air conditioning is activated depending on the outside temperature and the temperature set on the climate control unit. You can immediately switch the climate control on or off ⇨ *page 116* as well as set a timer ⇨ *page 117*.

### Auxiliary climate control

The auxiliary climate control controls the temperature in the vehicle interior entirely with electric power. It turns on only if the high-voltage battery charge level is sufficient and there is enough fuel in the tank.

**Tips**

- The temperature that the climate control system adjusts to depends on the last temperature you set in the climate control unit ⇨ *page 69*.
- Using the auxiliary air conditioning while charging can also reduce the charge level of the high-voltage battery.
- The climate control system does not automatically switch on or off earlier if the high-voltage battery charge or fuel level is too low.

## Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

### Switching the auxiliary climate control on/off:

- ▸ Select the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Auxiliary air conditioning** > **Turn on auxiliary heating/AC** or **Turn off auxiliary AC**.

**Tips**

- The auxiliary climate control can also be switched on and off immediately when a timer is set.
- If the blower is switched off with the ❀ ⇨ *page 69, fig. 81* button, then the auxiliary ▶

air conditioning also switches off immediately.

## Setting the timer

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

By setting the departure time, you determine when your vehicle should reach the desired temperature. You can set the timer in the auxiliary air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.

### Auxiliary climate control: setting the timer

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Auxiliary A/C** > right control button > **Program timer**.
- ▸ Set the time and the date.
- ▸ Press the BACK button.
- ▸ Confirm the setting with the control knob to activate the timer. A ✓ appears in the box.

When you reprogram a timer, the next calendar day is automatically entered in the Infotainment system. To activate the auxiliary climate control for the next day, confirm the setting (✓ in the Infotainment system).

### Error messages

- The high-voltage battery charge level is too low to heat/air condition the vehicle using only electric power.

If one of the following symbols appears in the display, then you cannot switch on the auxiliary climate control:

- There is a system malfunction.

- The fuel level is too low.

**Tips**

- You can set the timer a maximum of seven days in advance.
- You can operate the climate control in the vehicle interior when the high-voltage battery is charging using the charging timer ⇨ *page 110*. The climate control output depends on the power socket capacity.
- Make sure the time and date match in the Infotainment system settings so that the timer can function properly ⇨ *page 243*.
- The auxiliary climate control can continue to run after the departure time is reached.

# Cleaning/maintenance information

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not direct cleaning spray at the charging unit in the radiator grille or at the charging dock*/charging clip*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 60 °C.

Remove contaminants on the Audi e-tron system with a dry towel.

Remove contaminants on the charging dock*/charging clip* with a wet towel dampened with alcohol-free cleaning solution.

**WARNING**

- Never immerse the Audi e-tron charging system and connectors in water.
- The Audi e-tron charging system must only be cleaned when the control unit is completely disconnected from the power supply and from the vehicle.

**Note**

To decrease the risk of discoloration, never clean the charging dock*/charging clip* with harsh cleaning solutions or solutions that contain alcohol.

# Trailer towing

## Driving with a trailer

### General information

Your vehicle is primarily intended for transporting people and luggage. However, if you drive with a trailer, follow the technical requirements, the operation and driving tips, and the legal regulations.

Driving with a trailer affects the vehicle's fuel consumption, performance and wear. It also requires higher concentration from the driver.

**WARNING**

Do not transport any people in a trailer due to the risk of fatal injury.

### Technical requirements

*Certain requirements must be met when towing a trailer.*

#### Trailer hitch

Only use a trailer hitch with a removable ball hitch mount and ball hitch. The trailer hitch must be permitted for the vehicle, the trailer and the permitted total weight of the trailer being pulled. Above all, it must be securely and safely attached to the vehicle trailer.

Never mount a trailer hitch on the bumper. The trailer hitch must be mounted in a way that does not impair the function of the bumper. Do not make any changes to the exhaust system and the brake system.

Check regularly if the trailer hitch is securely mounted. Always follow the instructions given by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

#### Trailer brakes

If the trailer has its own brake system, then follow the manufacturer specifications. However, the brake system on the trailer must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

#### Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer means a higher load on the engine and the cooling system. The cooling system must be designed for additional load and contain enough coolant ⇨ (!).

**Note**

Longer inclines cannot be driven without a suitable cooling system, especially if the outside temperatures are high. otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage.

### Operating instructions

*Several things must be noted when towing a trailer.*

#### Towing capacity

Your vehicle can only be operated with class 1 or class 2 trailers.

#### Load distribution

Poor cargo load and distribution can negatively impact vehicle handling. To have the lowest impact as possible, load the trailer according to these criteria:

– Store objects preferably in the vehicle luggage compartment. The vehicle should always carry the heaviest possible load and the trailer should have the lightest possible load.
– Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heavy objects are as close to the axle as possible.
– Secure objects from sliding out of place.
– Utilize the maximum permitted tongue weight if possible.

#### Tires

Set the tire pressure on your vehicle for a “full load”; see the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 341*. If necessary, also adjust the tire pressure on the trailer according to the manufacturer's recommendation.

Winter tires should be mounted on the vehicle and on the trailer during winter temperatures. ▶

### Outside mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard exterior mirrors, then you must attach additional exterior mirrors. Adjust them so you have a sufficient visibility behind you.

### Exterior lighting

Follow the legal regulations regarding the lighting equipment on your trailer. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Before starting to drive, check all lighting equipment on the hitched trailer.

The headlight range control adjusts automatically to the light range of the headlights.

### Safety chains

Make sure the safety chains are correctly applied when pulling a trailer. The chains should hang enough so that the trailer can drive around curves. However, they must not touch the ground.

**Tips**

- Use chocks when parking on inclines if the trailer is loaded.
- We recommend also having the vehicle inspected between the inspection intervals if you are towing a trailer frequently.
- Avoid driving with a trailer during the vehicle break-in period.

## Driving with a trailer

*Driving with a trailer requires extra caution.*

### Speed

Adhere to the legal speed limits. Follow the legal regulations specific to the country.

As the speed increases, the driving stability of the trailer decreases. Therefore you should not exceed the maximum legal speed limit when there are unfavorable road, weather and/or wind conditions. This especially applies when driving downhill.

You must always reduce your speed as soon as you notice even the slightest swinging motion of the trailer. Never try to “straighten out” the trailer by accelerating.

The weight distribution is very poor if the vehicle is empty and the trailer is loaded. However if you must drive under these circumstances, then drive especially slowly.

### Brakes

Brake in a timely manner. Downshift before driving downhill so that the engine can assist with braking ⇨ ⚠.

When using a trailer with overrun brakes, first brake gently then quickly. This reduces the risk of jerking while braking if the trailer wheels lock up.

### Engine coolant temperature

Pay attention specifically to the coolant temperature display when there are high outside temperatures, and when driving on long inclines ⇨ *page 11*. Shift to a higher gear in a timely manner.

**WARNING**

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.

# Assistance systems

## Speed warning system

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

*The speed warning system helps you to stay below a specified maximum speed that can be set, changed or deleted in the Infotainment system.*

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. A warning tone will sound as soon as your speed exceeds the stored value slightly. The MPH (USA models)/Km/h (Canada models) indicator light and the corresponding message appear in the instrument cluster display at the same time. The MPH (USA models)/Km/h (Canada models) indicator light and the message turn off when the vehicle speed drops below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

#### Setting the warning threshold

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning** > **Manual**.

**Tips**

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

## Cruise control system

### Switching on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

*The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 15 mph (20 km/h).*

**Fig. 121** Operating lever: cruise control system

- To switch the system on, pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 121*.
- Drive at the speed to be maintained.
- To store the speed, press the button (A).

The CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster.

The stored or preselected speed will be displayed briefly in the instrument cluster.

The speed is maintained by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

**WARNING**

- Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control system is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones.
- Please note that unconsciously “resting” your foot on the accelerator pedal prevents ▶

the cruise control from braking. This is because pressing the accelerator pedal overrides the cruise control system.
– If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The rest of the cruise control system functions remain active as long as the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light is on.

**Note**

Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and relieves the brakes.

**Tips**

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are activated.

## Changing the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To increase or decrease the speed in increments, **tap** the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction ⇨ *page 120, fig. 121*.
- To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever in the ⊕ / ⊖ direction until the desired speed is reached.

## Overriding the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can press the accelerator pedal to increase your speed, for example if you want to pass someone. The speed you set earlier will resume as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

However, if you are driving considerably faster than the stored speed for a long period of time, the cruise control system will temporarily switch off. The CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off and the stored speed is maintained.

## Preselecting a speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

*You can pre-select your desired speed when the vehicle is stationary.*

- Switch the ignition on.
- Pull the lever into position ① ⇨ *page 120, fig. 121*.
- To increase or decrease the speed, tap the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control system by pulling the lever toward the position ①.

## Switching off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

### Deactivating temporarily

- Press the brake pedal, or
- Press the lever into position ② (not clicked into place) ⇨ *page 120, fig. 121*, or

### Switching off completely

- Press the lever into position ② (clicked into place), or
- Switch the ignition off.

The speed you stored will be maintained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the stored speed, release the brake pedal and pull the lever to position ①.

Switching the ignition off will erase the stored speed.

### Switching off automatically

**CRUISE (USA models)/ (Canada models)**
**Cruise control system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual**

The cruise control system was automatically turned off because the system has detected a malfunction that is impairing the cruise control function. Try switching the cruise control system on again later. ▶

**WARNING**

You should only resume the stored speed if it is not too high for existing traffic conditions. Otherwise you can increase the risk of an accident.

# Lap timer

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

*You can measure and analyze lap times with the lap timer in the display.*

### Opening the lap timer

- Open the first Vehicle tab (trip computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: Press the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel and select **Lap timer** in the menu.
- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: on the multifunction steering wheel, select: left control button > **Lap times**.

### Operating the lap timer

- On the multifunction steering wheel, turn the left thumbwheel (7) ⇨ *page 13* or (1) ⇨ *page 16* until the desired menu item is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- Press the left thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

**WARNING**

Your focus should always be on driving your vehicle safely. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions such as the lap timer in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

**Tips**

You can retrieve information from the trip computer while the lap timer stopwatch is running.

## Lap times and timing

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Requirement: the lap timer must be open ⇨ *page 122*.

### Timing laps

- To start timing, select **Lap 1 - press OK** or **Start lap 1** in the menu.
- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: to start timing automatically when you start driving, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** in the menu.
- To measure the lap time, select **New lap - press OK** or **New lap** in the menu. This starts timing the next lap at the same time.

After completing, the difference between the last lap and the previous best lap time will be indicated with a "–"/ or "+"/ .

### Pausing timing and displaying a split time

- To insert a pause , select **Pause** in the menu.
- To continue timing, select **Press OK to resume** or **Resume** in the menu.
- To display a split time, select **Split time** in the menu. The split time appears for approximately 10 seconds in the instrument cluster. The timing of the current lap continues.

### Resetting timing

- Using the multifunction steering wheel, select **Reset** or **Reset times** in the menu.

**Tips**

– A maximum of 30 lap times (analog instrument cluster) or 99 lap times (Audi virtual cockpit*) can be measured.
– If timing is paused, you can continue it later even if you switch the ignition off.
– Saved lap times cannot be individually deleted from the total results.
– The saved lap timer values will remain after switching the ignition off.

## Lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

### Displaying lap statistics

You can display the number of laps driven, the fastest lap "+", the slowest lap "–", and the average time "Ø" in the instrument cluster.

- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: select **Statistics** in the menu using the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: on the multifunction steering wheel, select: left control button > **Lap statistics** or **Statistics**.
- ▸ Turn the thumbwheel down or up to display the individual lap times.
- ▸ To return to the lap timing that was begun, press the left thumbwheel.

### Resetting lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

- ▸ On the multifunction steering wheel, select: the right control button > **Reset statistics**.

### Tips

- – The lap statistics list the lap times for the last 30 laps.
- – Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: the fastest and slowest lap times from up to 99 timed laps will be displayed.

# Audi adaptive cruise control

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

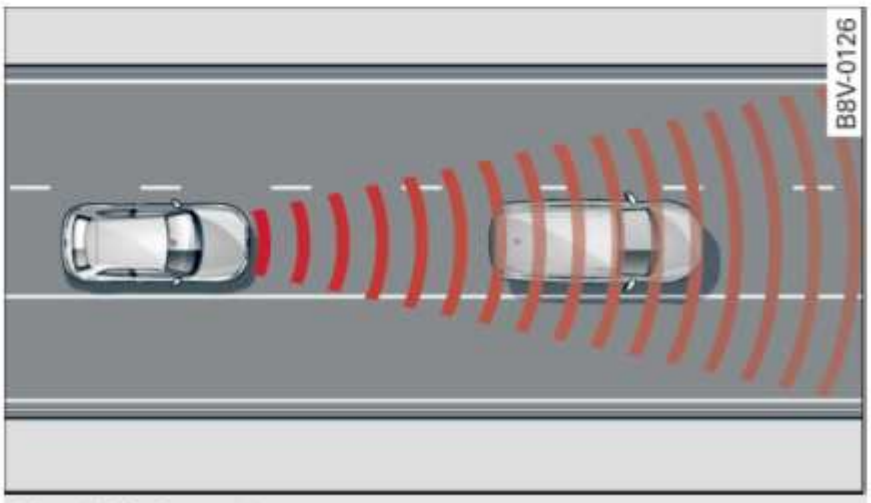



**Fig. 122** Detection range

The adaptive cruise control system is a combination of speed and distance regulation. It assists the driver by both regulating the speed and maintaining a distance to the vehicle driving ahead, within the limits of the system. If the system detects a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate your vehicle. This increases driving comfort during long trips on highways and in stop-and-go traffic.

### What can adaptive cruise control do?

The adaptive cruise control system uses radar. The radar is subject to designated system limits ⇨ *page 124*.

On open roads with no traffic, it functions like a cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching a vehicle ahead and the system detects it, the adaptive cruise control system automatically brakes to match that object's speed and then maintains the stored distance. As soon as the system does not detect a vehicle driving ahead, adaptive cruise control accelerates up to the stored speed.

Within the limits of the system, adaptive cruise control can brake in stop-and-go traffic until the vehicle is stationary and then begin driving again under certain conditions ⇨ *page 127, Driving in stop-and-go traffic*.

### Which functions can be controlled?

When you switch adaptive cruise control on, you can set the current speed as the "control speed" ⇨ *page 125, Switching on/off*.

When driving, you can stop cruise control ⇨ *page 127* or change the speed ⇨ *page 126* at any time.

You can also set the distance to the vehicle ahead and set the adaptive cruise control driving program ⇨ *page 128*.

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control/Audi pre sense front

**Fig. 123** Front of vehicle: sensor

The radar sensor area ⇨ *fig. 123* must not be covered with stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the function of the adaptive cruise control or the pre sense front. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 354*. The same applies for any modifications made in the front area.

The function of the adaptive cruise control system or pre sense front is limited in some conditions:

– Vehicles can only be detected when they are within the sensor range ⇨ *page 123, fig. 122*.
– The system has a limited ability to detect vehicles that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle or moving into your lane.
– Objects that are difficult to detect such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance or an overhanging load are detected late or not detected at all.
– When driving through curves ⇨ *page 125*.
– When the vehicle is stationary ⇨ *page 125*.

**WARNING**

Always pay attention to the traffic around you when adaptive cruise control is switched on. As the driver, you are still responsible for your own speed and the distance to other vehicles. The adaptive cruise control is used to assist you. The driver must always take action to avoid a collision. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– For safety reasons, do not use adaptive cruise control when driving on roads with many curves, when the road surface is in poor condition and/or in bad weather (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning). Using the system under these conditions could result in a collision.
– Switch adaptive cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, on expressway exits or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.
– The adaptive cruise control system will not brake by itself if you put your foot on the accelerator pedal. Doing so can override the speed and distance regulation.
– Adaptive cruise control does not respond to people, animals, or crossing or oncoming objects.
– The function of the radar sensors can be affected by reflective objects such as guard rails, the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain or ice.

**Note**

The sensor can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the adaptive cruise control. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

**Tips**

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 386*.

## In curves

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control/Audi pre sense front

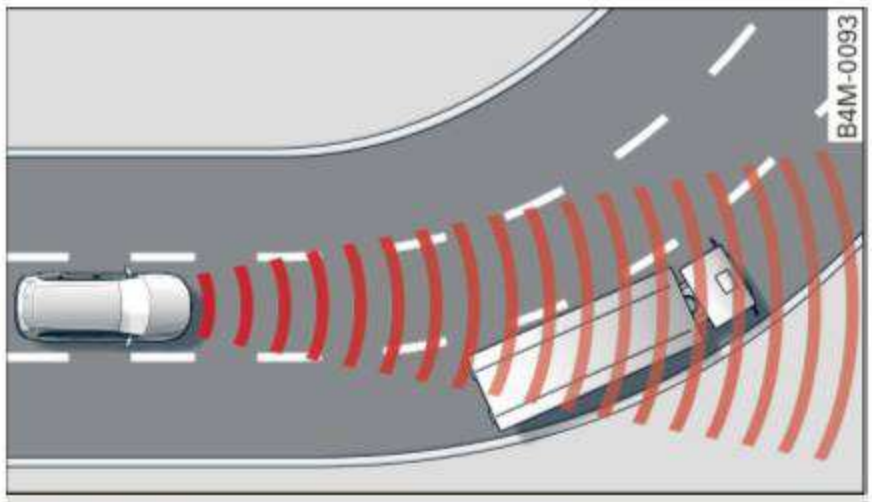



**Fig. 124** Example: driving into a curve

When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 124* and out of a curve, the system may react to a vehicle in the neighboring lane and apply the brakes. You can prevent that by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.

## Stationary vehicles

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

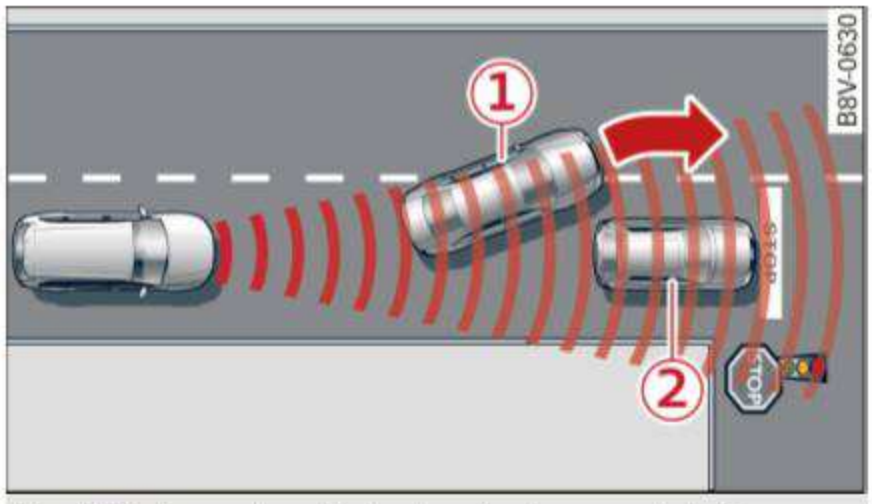



**Fig. 125** Example: vehicle changing lanes and stationary vehicle

### Adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control system only reacts to vehicles that being moving or to vehicles that the system has already detected as moving. For example, it can react when a vehicle that has already been detected ① turns or changes lanes, but adaptive cruise control does not react to a stationary vehicle ②. Press the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

## Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

**Fig. 126** Operating lever: switching on and off

**Fig. 127** Instrument cluster: adaptive cruise control

**ACC:** you can set any speed between 20 and 95 mph (30 and 150 km/h).

Indicator lights and messages in the instrument cluster display inform you about the current situation and setting.

### Switching adaptive cruise control on

- Pull the lever toward you into position ① ⇨ *fig. 126*.

### Storing the speed and activating regulation

- To store the current speed and activate the regulation, press the SET button ⇨ *fig. 126* ⇨ ⚠. The stored speed is shown in the tachometer LED line ② and appears briefly in the information line ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 127*.
- To activate the regulation while stationary, you must press the brake pedal.

### Switching adaptive cruise control off

- Push the lever away from you into position ⓪ until it clicks into place. The message **ACC: off** appears.

The stored speed in the LED line is erased. ▶

### ③ Indicator lights

- Adaptive cruise control is switched on. No vehicles are detected ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

- A vehicle driving ahead was detected. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead and brakes/accelerates automatically.

- Adaptive cruise control is switched on. A vehicle was detected ahead. Your vehicle remains stopped and will not start driving automatically.

- The automatic braking is not enough to maintain a sufficient distance to a vehicle driving ahead. You must intervene ⇨ *page 129, Driver intervention request*.

### ④ Instrument cluster display

If adaptive cruise control is not shown in the instrument cluster display, you can call it up using the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 13*.

Based on the graphics in the display, you can determine if the system is maintaining a distance to a vehicle ahead and what that distance to this vehicle is:

**No vehicle** - no vehicle was detected driving ahead.

**Silver vehicle** - a vehicle was detected driving ahead.

**Red vehicle** - request for driver intervention ⇨ *page 129*.

The five **distance bars** on the **gauge** ④ represent the set distance (refer to ⇨ *page 128* for information on how to change the distance). If you fall below the selected distance, the distance bars become red from the bottom upward.

**WARNING**

If you press the SET button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), the vehicle accelerates automatically up to 20 mph (30 km/h), which is the minimum speed that can be set.

**Tips**

- If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise control system off, the set speed is erased for safety reasons.
- The electronic stabilization control (ESC) and the anti-slip-regulation (ASR) are automatically switched on when the adaptive cruise control is switched on.

## Changing the speed

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

**Fig. 128** Operating lever: changing the speed

- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed in increments, **tap** the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever toward ⊕/⊖ until the red LED ② ⇨ *page 125, fig. 127* reaches the desired speed.

You can also preselect the speed when adaptive cruise control is not active by moving the lever in the desired direction ⊕/⊖. Activate the previously selected speed by pulling the lever into position ① ⇨ *page 125, fig. 126*.

After each change, the new stored speed appears briefly in the status line ⇨ *page 125, fig. 127* ⑤. When adaptive cruise control is active, the or indicator light turns on, and when adaptive cruise control is not active, the indicator light turns on. In the Audi virtual cockpit*, the indicator light turns on instead.

## Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

**Fig. 129** Instrument cluster: safe start monitor

The adaptive cruise control system assists you in stop-and-go traffic. If a vehicle that is detected ahead stops, your vehicle will brake and stay at a stop, within the limits of the system.

- ▸ To resume driving with adaptive cruise control, tap the accelerator pedal or
- ▸ Pull the lever toward you into position ② ⇨ *page 127, fig. 130*.

### Starting to drive with adaptive cruise control[1)]

As long as the message **ACC: automatic go** is displayed and the object detected ahead starts to move, your vehicle will continue driving ⇨ ⚠. You can activate **ACC: automatic go** again for a short time by pulling the lever to position ②.

The **ACC: automatic go** start mode ends when the brake pedal is pressed.

For safety reasons, your vehicle will only start to drive automatically if:

– the driver's safety belt is fastened
– all doors and the hood are closed
– your vehicle is not stationary for more than three minutes

### Safe start monitor

If an obstacle is detected when you start driving, you will be alerted to the danger by the indicator light and the image in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *fig. 129* ⇨ ⚠. An audio signal will also sound. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also happen in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle.

– Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

**WARNING**

If the message **ACC: automatic go**[1)] appears, your vehicle will start driving even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle driving ahead. This increases the risk of an accident.

**Tips**

If adaptive cruise control is active and your vehicle does not start driving even though the message **ACC: automatic go**[1)] appears, you can start driving by tapping the accelerator pedal.

## Interrupting cruise control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

**Fig. 130** Operating lever

Requirement: adaptive cruise control must be switched on.

### Overriding cruise control

- ▸ To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you into position ② and hold it there, or press the accelerator pedal. The message **ACC: override** appears.
- ▸ To resume cruise control, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator pedal. ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

### Interrupting cruise control while driving

- ▸ Move the lever into position ③. The message **ACC: standby** appears. Or
- ▸ Press the brake pedal.
- ▸ To resume the stored speed, move the lever into position ②.

### Interrupting cruise control when stopped

- ▸ Push the lever away from you into position ③. The message **ACC: standby** appears.
- ▸ To resume cruise control, press the brake pedal and pull the lever toward you into position ②.

**WARNING**

It is dangerous to activate cruise control and resume the stored speed when the current road, traffic or weather conditions do not permit this. This increases the risk of an accident.

## Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

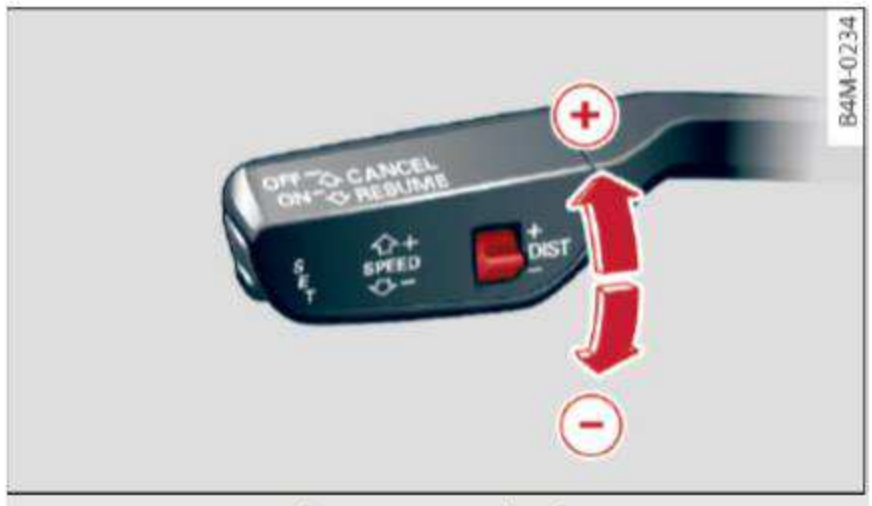



**Fig. 131** Operating lever: setting the distance

- ▸ Tap the switch to display the current set distance ⇨ *fig. 131*.
- ▸ To increase or reduce the distance in increments, tap the switch upward/downward again. The distance between the two vehicles will change in the instrument cluster display.

When approaching a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise control system brakes to match that vehicle's speed and then adjusts to the set distance. If the vehicle driving ahead accelerates, then the adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the speed that you have set.

The higher the speed, the greater the distance ⇨ ⚠. The **Distance 3** setting is recommended. That is equal to the general recommendation of "half the speed shown on the speedometer".

The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and how the vehicle ahead is driving, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

If you change the time gaps, the newly set value appears briefly in the instrument cluster display, for example for **Distance 3**. This only occurs if the adaptive cruise control is not currently shown in the display ⇨ *page 125, fig. 127*.

**Distance 1**: this setting corresponds to a distance of 92 feet (28 meters) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 1 second.

**Distance 2**: this setting corresponds to a distance of 118 feet (36 meters) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 1.3 seconds.

**Distance 3**: this setting corresponds to a distance of 164 feet (50 meters) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 1.8 seconds.

**Distance 4**: this setting corresponds to a distance of 219 feet (67 meters) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 2.4 seconds.

**Distance 5**: this setting corresponds to a distance of 328 feet (100 meters) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 3.6 seconds.

**WARNING**

When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to any applicable legal regulations.

**Tips**

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

## Setting the driving program

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Depending on the selected driving program and distance, driving behavior when accelerating will vary from dynamic to comfortable.

### Setting the driving program on vehicles without drive select*

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi adaptive cruise control** > **Driving program** > **Comfort, Standard** or **Dynamic**.

### Setting the driving mode on vehicles with drive select*

See ⇨ *page 141*.

**Tips**

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

## Driver intervention request

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

**Fig. 132** Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

The request for driver intervention instructs you to take over if the adaptive cruise control braking function is not able to maintain a sufficient distance to the vehicle driving ahead ⇨ *fig. 132*.

## Distance display and distance warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

*This function measures the time between the vehicle driving ahead and shows this in the instrument cluster display.*

**Fig. 133** Instrument cluster: distance indicator/warning

### Description

At speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h), this function measures the distance to the vehicle ahead as time.

- Switch the adaptive cruise control display on in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *page 13*.

The indicator light turns on if you fall below the set distance.

### Setting the warning threshold

You can set, change or delete the warning threshold in the Infotainment system.

- In the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Distance warning**.

**WARNING**

- Read and follow the warnings on ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124*.
- The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in that country.

**Tips**

You may fall below he warning threshold briefly when passing or when quickly approaching a slow vehicle. There is no warning in this scenario. A warning is given only if you ▶

fall below the warning threshold for an extended period of time.

## Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

**ACC: unavailable**

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensor was moved or is faulty. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**ACC: currently unavailable. No sensor view**

**ACC: currently unavailable. Sensor vision restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensor ⇨ *page 124, fig. 123*.

**ACC: currently unavailable. Incline too steep**

The road exceeds the maximum possible angle for safe adaptive cruise control operation. The adaptive cruise control cannot be switched on.

**ACC: only available in D, S or M**

Select the "D/S" or "M" selector lever position.

**ACC: parking brake applied**

The adaptive cruise control system switches off automatically if the parking brake is set. The adaptive cruise control is available again after releasing the parking brake.

**ACC: currently unavailable. Stabilization control input**

This message appears if the electronic stabilization control (ESC) is taking action to stabilize the vehicle. In this case, adaptive cruise control switches off automatically.

**ACC: Please take over!**

This message appears if the vehicle rolls back when starting on a slight incline, even though ACC is active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling or starting to move.

**Distance warning: malfunction! Please contact Service**

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The radar sensor was moved or is faulty. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Distance warning: currently unavailable. Sensor view limited due to surroundings.**

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensor ⇨ *page 124, fig. 123*.

**Distance warning: currently unavailable. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system has a temporary failure. If this occurs multiple times, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Fasten seat belt**

The system is not completely available if the driver's seat belt is unfastened.

**Stat. obj. ahead**

This message appears if you would like to switch the system on and there is a stationary object directly in front of your vehicle.

**Door open**

The system is not available when the vehicle is stationary and the driver's door is open.

# Audi pre sense

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Within the limits of the system, the pre sense functions can initiate measures in particularly dangerous situations to protect the vehicle passengers and other road users. ▶

– Due to the interlinking of various vehicle systems, critical driving situations can be detected by **pre sense basic** and measures for preventative occupant protection are can be initiated.
– The **pre sense front** uses the data from the radar sensors and calculates the probability of an accident ⇨ *page 124*. An impending collision with vehicles can be detected within the limits of the system. In this case, the system warns the driver visually, acoustically and with a jerk on the brakes if necessary. If needed, it can initiate a partial or full deceleration to reduce the collision speed or to avoid the collision under certain circumstances. In conjunction with pre sense basic, the front safety belts are also reversibly tensioned when needed. The pre sense front is also active when adaptive cruise control* is switched off.

**WARNING**

Also follow the general instructions found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124*.

**Tips**

– Certain pre sense functions switch off when driving in reverse.
– The pre sense functions may not be available if there is a malfunction in the ESC system or the airbag control module.
– Note that the reversible belt tensioner on the front passenger's side deactivates when the front passenger's airbag is deactivated.
– Switch the pre sense off when you are not using public streets or when loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship or other type of transportation. This can prevent an undesired intervention from the pre sense system.

## Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

The pre sense basic functions are activated at a speed of approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) or higher.

The following functions can be triggered under certain conditions within the limits of the system:

– Tensioning of the safety belts (for example, during heavy braking): the front safety belts have reversible belt tensioners. If a collision does not occur, the safety belts loosen slightly and are ready to trigger again.
– Initiating the closing of the windows and the panorama glass roof* (for example when under- or oversteering).

Audi drive select*: the trigger times are adjusted depending on the mode selected.

## Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

**Fig. 134** Instrument cluster: approach warning

### Description

Within the limits of the system and depending on the situation and speed, pre sense front can warn you about impending collisions with stationary, stopped, and moving vehicles and initiate appropriate braking measures.

If detection is not possible, then pre sense front does not react.

The following functions trigger in conjunction with pre sense basic at corresponding vehicle speeds:

– Reversible tensioning of the front safety belts.
– Closing the windows and panorama glass roof*.

### Early warning/acute warning

The system can provide visual and audible warnings when dangerous situations are detected. The **early warning** may occur if:

– a vehicle driving ahead brakes strongly, ▶

– your vehicle is traveling at speeds between approximately 20 to 50 mph (30 to 85 km/h) and it approaches a stationary vehicle.
– your vehicle is traveling at speeds between approximately 20 to 155 mph (30 to 250 km/h) and it approaches a vehicle that is clearly traveling more slowly or a vehicle in your direction of travel that is stopped.

When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly. The message **Audi pre sense** ⚠ ⇨ *fig. 134* and a warning tone will warn you about the danger.

If there is an impending collision with vehicles, there will also be an **acute warning** in the form of sharp braking. If you do not react to the acute warning, pre sense front can brake with increasing force within the limits of the system. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.

### Automatic deceleration

Depending on the speed, pre sense front can **decelerate automatically** shortly before a collision:

– if there are stationary vehicles when you are traveling at speeds up to approximately 28 mph (45 km/h)
– if there are vehicles driving or stopped ahead when you are traveling at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h)

### Automatic braking force increase

If pre sense front determines that you are not braking strongly enough when a collision is imminent, it can increase the braking force, depending on the situation and speed:

– if there are stationary vehicles when you are traveling at speeds up to approximately 50 mph (85 km/h)
– if there are vehicles driving or stopped ahead when you are traveling at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h)

**⚠ WARNING**

Pre sense front cannot overcome the laws of physics. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision in every circumstance. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.

– Keep in mind that pre sense front can provide warnings or brake unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.
– The system can deploy incorrectly due to system-specific limits.
– Please note that the sensor does not always detect all objects. This increases the risk of a collision.
– Pre sense front does not react to vehicles traveling toward you in the same lane, to people, groups of people, animals, objects that are crossing the road, or objects that are difficult to detect ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124*.

**⚠ WARNING**

Pre sense front may be restricted or not available in the following example situations:

– if there are other reflective objects nearby, such as guard rails or vehicles
– when driving into a tunnel
– in heavy fog, rain, spray or snow
– if the radar sensor is dirty, covered in ice, damaged, or covered
– in curves
– if the ESC was restricted or switched off

**! Note**

The sensor can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. Pre sense front can be impaired by this. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function. ▶

**Tips**

– You can cancel the braking with increasing force that is initiated by the system by braking yourself, by accelerating noticeably or by swerving.
– Certain pre sense front functions switch off when ESC is switched off (sport mode) or when driving in reverse.
– If you restrict or switch off the ESC, the pre sense also switches itself off ⇨ *page 149*.

## Settings in the Infotainment system

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi pre sense**.

**System** - the pre sense functions can be switched on/off.

If the system is switched off, it switches on again automatically once the ignition is switched on again.

**Prewarning** - the early warning can be switched **off** permanently or the pre sense front warning point can be set (**Early**/**Medium**/**Late**).

Set the warning time for the early warning to **Early** at first. If this causes undesired early warnings to appear, then set the warning time to **Medium**. The **Late** warning time should only be set in special circumstances.

## Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

**Audi pre sense: malfunction! Please contact Service**

This message appears when the pre sense function is affected. For example, this could be caused by a faulty sensor. If the message stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Audi pre sense: currently limited. Sensor view limited due to surroundings.**

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensor if necessary ⇨ *page 124, fig. 123*.

**Audi pre sense: currently limited**

This message appears if the ESC is restricted or switched off, for example.

**Audi pre sense: currently limited. See owner's manual**

This message appears when there is a temporary failure in a subsystem, such as the ESC. If this message appears repeatedly, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Audi pre sense: emergency braking system off**

This message appears if the pre sense functions are switched off through the Infotainment system or if the system is not ready.

# Audi active lane assist

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

Active lane assist (lane departure warning) detects lane marker lines within the limits of the system using a camera in the windshield. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system will warn you with corrective steering. You can override this steering at any time. If you pass over a line, the steering wheel will vibrate lightly. In order for this warning vibration to occur, it must first be switched on in the Infotainment system. Active lane assist is ready for operation when the lane marker line is detected on at least one side of the vehicle.

The system is designed for driving on expressways and highways and therefore only activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h). ▶

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If you activate a turn signal when active lane assist is ready and it classifies a lane change as critical because of vehicles traveling alongside you or approaching you, there will be noticeable corrective steering shortly before you leave the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

Applies to: vehicles without Audi side assist

The system will not warn you before crossing a lane marker line if you have activated the turn signal. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

**WARNING**

- The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane, but it does not drive by itself. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
- Corrective steering may not occur in certain situations, such as during heavy braking.
- There may be cases where the camera does not recognize all lane marker lines. Corrective steering can only take place on the side of the vehicle where lane marker lines are detected.
- Other road structures or objects could possibly be identified unintentionally as lane marker lines. As a result, corrective steering may be unexpected or may not occur.
- The camera view can be restricted, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray light shining into the camera or by dirt on the window. This can result in active lane assist not detecting the lane marker lines or detecting them incorrectly.
- Under certain conditions such as ruts in the road, an inclined roadway or crosswinds, the corrective steering alone may not be enough to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
- For safety reasons, active lane assist must not be used when there are poor road and/or weather conditions such as slippery roads, fog, gravel, heavy rain, snow and the potential for hydroplaning. Using active lane assist under these conditions may increase the risk of a crash.

## Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

**Fig. 135** Turn signal lever: button for active lane assist

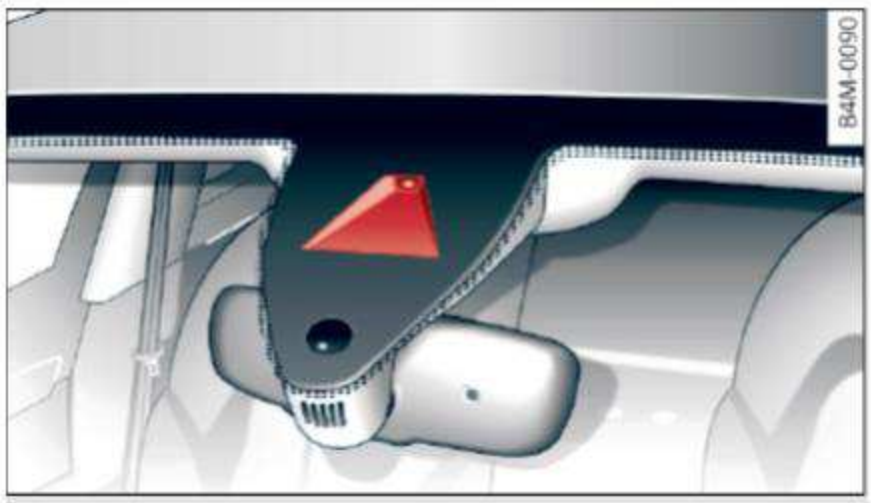



**Fig. 136** Windshield: camera window for active lane assist

▸ Press the button to switch the system on and off ⇨ *fig. 135*. The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or off. ▶

| Analog instrument cluster | Audi virtual cockpit* | Meaning on the corresponding side |
|---|---|---|
| Green lines | Green line(s) (left/right) | Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings. |
| - | Red line (left/right) | Active lane assist warns you before leaving a lane. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates lightly. |
| Yellow lines | Yellow line(s) (left/right) | Active lane assist is activated, but is not ready to give warning |

If the system is switched on but is not ready to provide warnings, one of the following could be the cause:

- There is no lane marker line.
- The relevant lane marker lines are not detected (for example, markings in a construction zone or because they are obstructed by snow, dirt, water or lighting).
- The vehicle speed is below the activation speed of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The curve is too narrow.
- The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.

**Tips**

- Make sure the camera's field of view ⇨ *fig. 136* is not obstructed by stickers or anything else. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 354*.
- In certain markets: if the system is switched on, it will switch on automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

## Display in the instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

**Fig. 137** Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on and ready to provide warnings

You can open the active lane assist display using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 13* or ⇨ *page 16*.

| Display in the instrument cluster | Meaning on the corresponding side |
|---|---|
| Green line(s) (left or right) | Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings. |
| Red line (left or right) | Active lane assist warns you before leaving a lane. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates lightly. |
| Gray line(s) (left or right) | Active lane assist is activated, but is not ready to give warning |

### Messages in the instrument cluster display

If the active lane assist switches off automatically, the indicator light in the display turns off and one of the following messages appears:

**Audi active lane assist: malfunction! See owner's manual**

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. No camera view**

This message appears if the camera is unable to detect the lines. This could happen if: ▶

– The camera field of view ⇨ *page 134, fig. 136* is dirty or covered in ice. Clean this area on the windshield.
– The camera field of view is fogged over. Wait until the fog has cleared before switching the active lane assist on again.
– The system has been unable to detect the lanes for an extended period of time due to road conditions. Switch active lane assist back on when the lines are more visible.

**Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable**

There is a temporary active lane assist malfunction. Try switching the active lane assist on again later.

**Audi active lane assist: Please take over steering!**

This message appears if you are not steering by yourself. Active lane assist is activated, but is not ready to give warning

**WARNING**

Note that messages may be delayed or not displayed on vehicles with accessories mounted on the steering wheel, such as a steering wheel spinner knob. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.

## Setting the vibration warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

*You can adjust individual Audi active lane assist settings in the Infotainment system.*

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi active lane assist**.

### Vibration warning

You can switch the additional vibration warning in the steering wheel on or off.

**WARNING**

With the vibration warning switched off, there will also be no visual warning in the instrument cluster display when crossing a lane marker line.

**Tips**

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

# Audi side assist

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

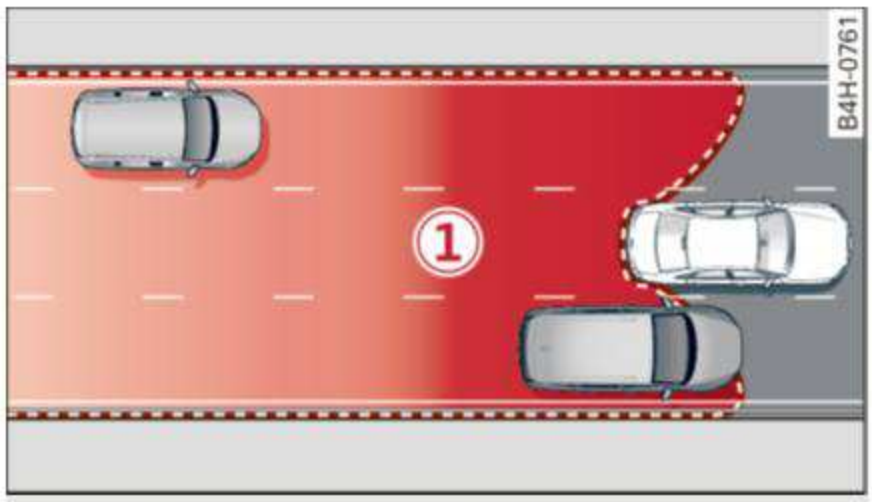



**Fig. 138** Sensor detection range

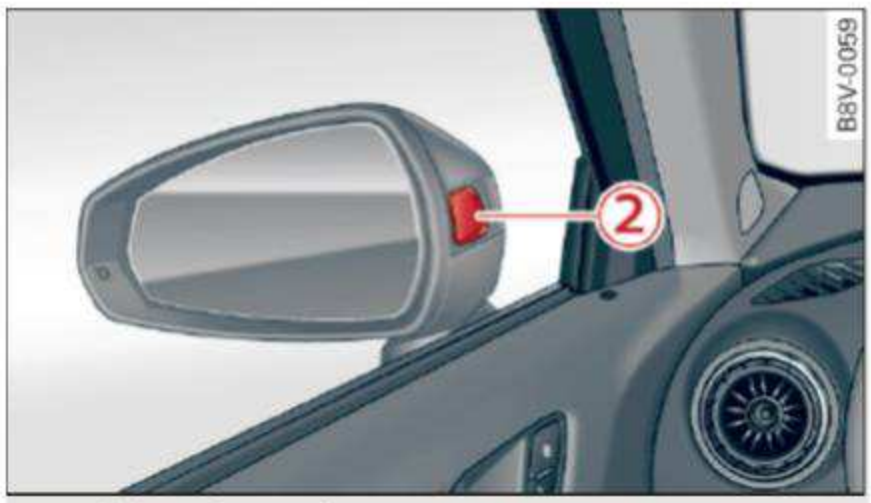



**Fig. 139** Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist (lane change assist) helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 138*. If a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror turns on ⇨ *fig. 139*.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

### Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are ▸

detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

### Warning stage

If the display in a mirror blinks brightly when you activate a turn signal, side assist is *warning* you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the exterior mirrors and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 138*.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

The display in the mirror can also blink if you have not activated a turn signal: if you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears you will be leaving the lane, side assist will warn you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical.

**Tips**

You can adjust the brightness on of the display on the rearview mirror ⇨ *page 138*.

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

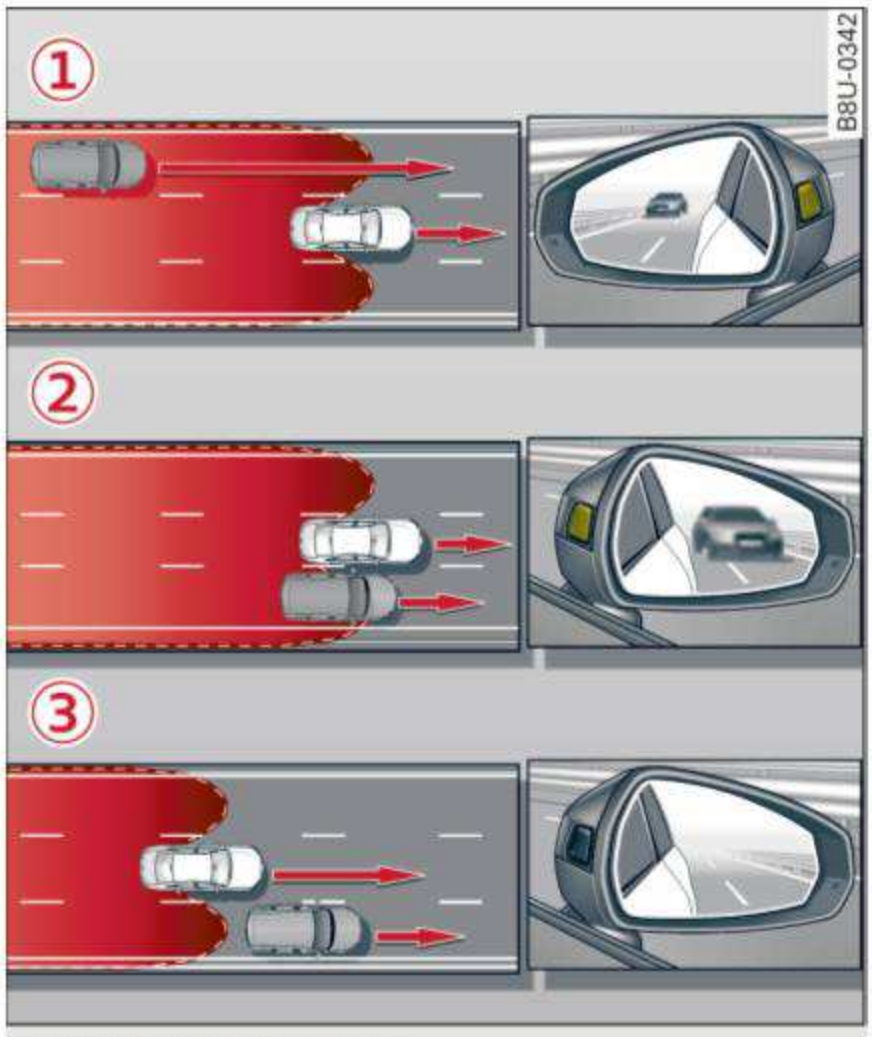



**Fig. 140** Driving situations

**Fig. 141** Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

### ① Approaching vehicles

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

### ② Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

### ③ Vehicles you are passing

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than approximately 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than approximately 9 mph (15 km/h)).

### Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example: ▶

– If the lanes are narrow or if you are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected a vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
– If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
– In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 141* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because they will impair the function. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 354*.

**WARNING**

– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
– In some situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  – If vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  – In poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  – On very wide lanes, in tight curves, or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

**Note**

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the system. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

**Tips**

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 386*.

## Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

*The system can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system.*

If the system is activated, the displays in the exterior mirrors will turn on briefly when the ignition is switched on.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**. **Off** switches the system off.

## Setting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

*The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.*

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**.

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the automatic adjustment will set the display to the minimum or maximum level. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage. ▶

**Tips**

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

## Rear cross-traffic assist

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

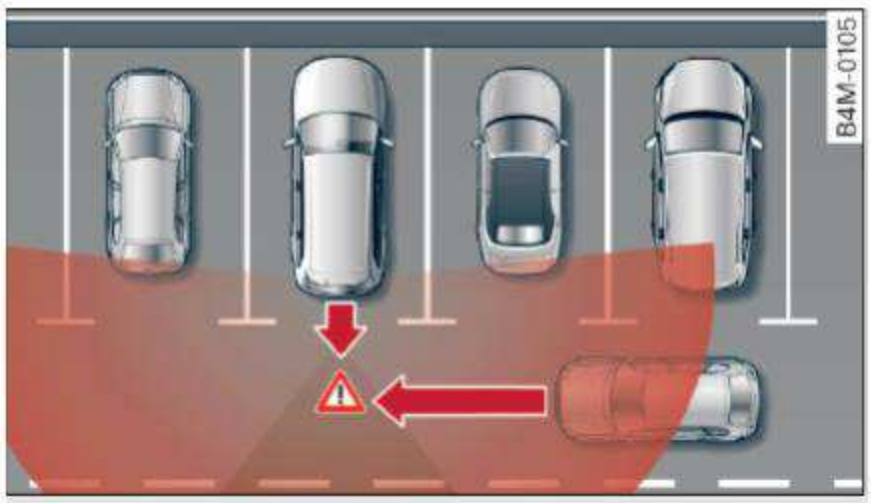



**Fig. 142** Example display

**Fig. 143** Infotainment system: rear cross-traffic assist display

### Activating rear cross-traffic assist

The rear cross-traffic assist is activated automatically if you turn on the parking aid ⇨ *page 143* or shift into reverse gear.

The rear cross-traffic assist can warn the driver of a potential collision with approaching cross-traffic when driving in reverse at speeds up to approximately 7 mph (12 km/h). Within its limits, the system monitors the areas behind and next to the vehicle using the radar sensors when leaving a parking space ⇨ *page 137, fig. 141*. Moving objects that are approaching, such as cars, are detected ⇨ *fig. 142*.

If the system detects critical cross traffic when backing out of a parking space, it will react as follows:

- **Visual indicator**: an indicator appears in the Infotainment system display with a red arrow symbol. The arrow points in the direction from which the object is approaching ⇨ *fig. 143*.
- **Audible warning signal**: a continuous tone may sound as an additional indicator when driving in reverse.
- **Automatic brake activation**: a brief activation of the brakes may also warn you of a potential collision with an approaching object.

The audible warning signal and the automatic brake activation occur only when driving in reverse.

**WARNING**

- The rear cross-traffic assist is an assist system and cannot prevent a collision by itself. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.
- Please note that the rear cross-traffic assist may activate the brakes unexpectedly. Secure any cargo that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.
- An additional brake activation may be triggered within 10 seconds after an automatic brake activation.
- If there is an acoustic warning signal from the rear cross-traffic assist, then the parking system may not warn you of detected obstacles under certain circumstances.
- The view of the radar sensors may be impaired by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 137, fig. 141*.

**WARNING**

- The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.
- The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts about people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.

– The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts if the vehicle is in a parallel parking space or an angled parking space.

**Note**

Also read the information in ⇨ *in General information on page 138*.

**Tips**

– You can cancel the automatic brake activation with increasing braking force if you apply the brakes yourself or accelerate considerably.
– In some situations, rear cross-traffic assist may warn you even if there is no cross traffic in a critical area, for example when backing into a parking space or maneuvering.
– The rear cross-traffic assist also switches off when you switch off the ESC.
– The system is not available when towing a trailer.

## Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If the side assist switches off automatically, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Audi side assist: malfunction! Please contact Service**

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

**Audi side assist: currently unavailable. No sensor view**

**Audi side assist: currently unavailable. Sensor vision restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual**

The radar sensor vision is impaired. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 137, fig. 141*.

**Audi side assist: currently unavailable**

Side assist cannot be switched on at this time because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

**Audi side assist: unavailable in towing mode**

**Audi side assist: unavailable in towing mode**

Side assist switches off automatically after a short time when a factory-installed trailer hitch is connected to the electrical connector on the trailer. There is no guarantee the system will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer.

**Rear parking aid: obstacle detection restricted**

The rear cross-traffic assist is not available. Either the ESC is switched off, or the radar sensors may be covered by a bike rack, stickers, leaves, snow or other objects. Switch the ESC on, or clean the area in front of the sensors if necessary ⇨ *page 137, fig. 141*. If this message continues to be displayed, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

# Audi drive select

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Audi drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. The driver can select from three modes, **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic**, using the drive select button in the center console or by using the Infotainment system. This allows you to switch between a sporty and a comfortable driving mode, for example. In the **Individual*** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine setting with light steering.

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The vehicle setup in each mode depends on the vehicle's features. However, the engine and steering are always affected. ▶

### Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and automatic transmission* respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements. In the sporty dynamic mode, the transmission shifts at higher speed ranges.

### Suspension control (Audi magnetic ride)*

The suspension control uses sensors to record information regarding steering movements, braking and acceleration operations by the driver, as well as information about the road surface, driving speed, and load. With Audi drive select you can adjust the suspension control to sporty (dynamic), comfortable (comfort) or balanced (auto).

### Steering

The steering adapts in terms of steering assistance. There are different modes ⇨ *page 142*. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. The dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

For vehicles with progressive steering* the steering performance is more agile.

### Audi adaptive light*

The illumination on curves in adaptive light is adapted to the selected mode.

### Audi adaptive cruise control*

The behavior when accelerating can be adjusted from comfortable to sporty, depending on the drive select mode. Adaptive cruise control also responds to the driving behavior of the vehicle ahead in a more conservative or sporty manner.

**Tips**

– In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the auto and dynamic modes.

– The "S" selector lever position automatically engages if the dynamic mode is selected.

## Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

*You can choose between comfort, auto, dynamic and individual*.*

**Fig. 144** Center console: drive select button

▸ Press the drive select ⇨ *fig. 144* button repeatedly until the desired mode is displayed in the instrument cluster/Infotainment system. Or

▸ In the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button >**Audi drive select**.

▸ Select and confirm the desired setting.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

**Comfort** - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

**Auto** - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

**Dynamic** - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

**Individual*** - ⇨ *page 142*.

**WARNING**

Pay attention to traffic when operating the drive select to reduce the risk of an accident.

## Adjusting the Individual mode

*You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.*

▸ Select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > **Audi drive select**> **Individual** > right control button.

After you have closed the settings, you will automatically drive in the **Individual*** mode.

The systems you can adjust depend on the equipment and engine in your vehicle. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics.

| Systems | comfort | auto | dynamic |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Engine/transmission** | comfortable | balanced | sporty |
| **Steering** | comfortable | balanced | sporty |
| **Engine sound*** | subtle | subtle/sporty[a)] | sporty |
| **Audi adaptive cruise control*** | comfortable | balanced | sporty |
| **Suspension control*** | comfortable | balanced | sporty |
| **quattro*** | balanced | balanced | sporty |
| Applies to: RS models: **quattro** | balanced | neutral | sporty |

a) Subtle in the selector lever position "D" and sporty in "S".

### Tips

Your **Individual*** mode settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key in use.

# Parking aid

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 143*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park or maneuver ⇨ *page 145*.

**WARNING**

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or leaving a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- Always pay attention to the area around the vehicle – using the rearview mirror, too.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking system may be impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

**Note**

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - objects with certain surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.
- Keep enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims.

**Tips**

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or when there is tall grass
  - external ultrasonic sources such as from cleaning vehicles
  - in heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 147*.
- What appears in the infotainment display is somewhat time-delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for the parking aid to operate.

## Parking system plus

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

*Parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.*

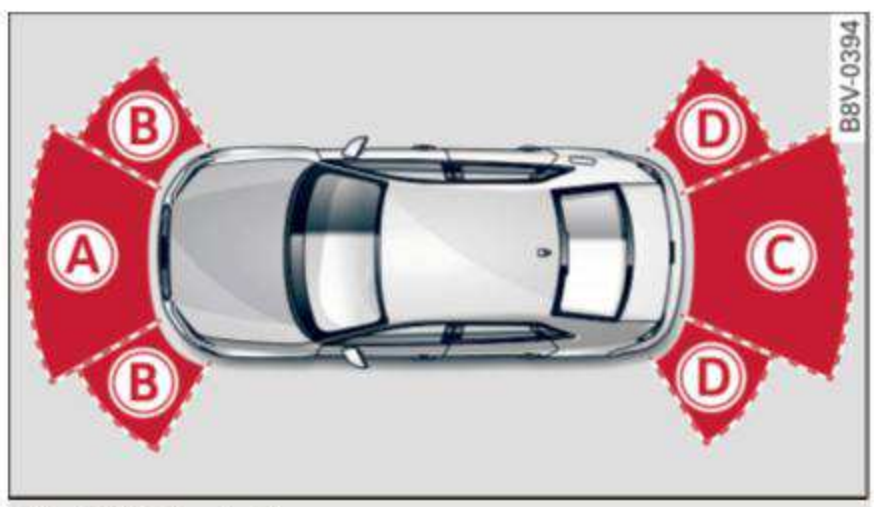



**Fig. 145** Illustration:

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the function of the system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 354*.

The display field begins approximately at:

| | |
|---|---|
| Ⓐ | 4 ft (1.20 m) |
| Ⓑ | 3 ft (0.90 m) |
| Ⓒ | 5.2 ft (1.60 m) |
| Ⓓ | 3 ft (0.90 m) |

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 143*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 143*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually lowers after a few seconds until it is muted (this is not apply in the continuous tone range). If the obstacle becomes closer than it was before the sound was muted, the tone will sound again. If the obstacle is farther away than it was before the sound was muted, no tone will sound. Pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings when you start to drive.

## Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

**Fig. 146** Center console: parking aid button

**Fig. 147** Infotainment system: visual distance display

### Switching on/off

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

- ▸ Press the P button in the center console. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

### Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running. A brief confirmation tone will sound.

If **Activate automatically** is switched on in the Infotainment system and if the vehicle approaches an obstacle at speeds under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), the parking aid will switch on automatically. Audible signals will sound once the obstacle is within the sensor detection area.

### Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically when driving forward faster than 6 mph (10 km/h).

### Segments in the visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 147* help you to determine the distance between your vehicle and an obstacle. The red lines* mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or ▶

in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 143*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 143*!

### Tips

If you press the P button to switch the parking aid off, it can only be reactivated automatically when one of the following conditions is met:

– The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
– The ignition is switched off and back on again.
– The parking brake is set and then released.
– The "P" selector lever position is engaged and released again.

# Rearview camera

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

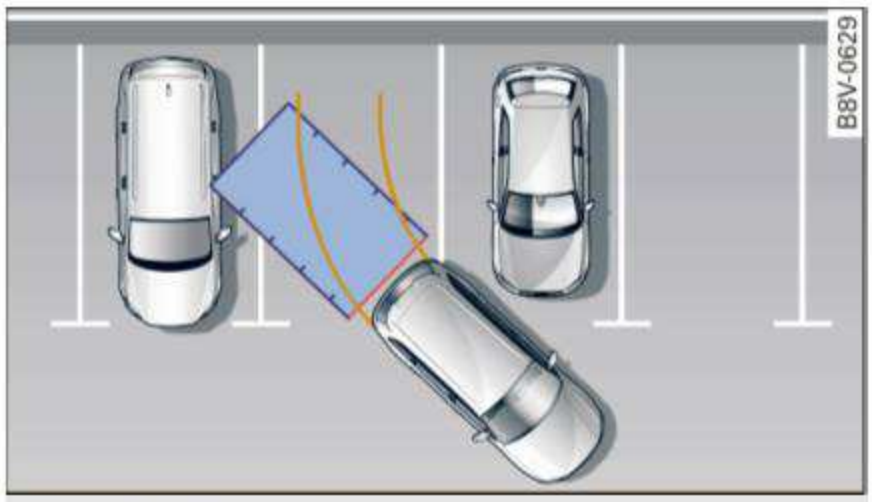



**Fig. 148** Illustration: cross parking

The rearview camera helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

**Fig. 149** Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera (example)

**Fig. 150** Luggage compartment lid: location of the rearview camera (example)

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 150* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can affect the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 354*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 149*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are in area ②, which is not covered, are not displayed.

### WARNING

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 143*.
– If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. ▶

– Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
– Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. If the luggage compartment lid is open the orientation lines and blue surfaces are hidden. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
– The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
– In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away:
  – For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the orientation lines in this case.
  – If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  – If driven toward protruding objects.
  – If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

**Note**

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 143*.
– The orange-colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

## Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

### Switching on/off

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

▸ Press the P button in the center console. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

### Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running.

### Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically when driving forward faster than 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Tips**

– The visual display* in the right section of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle area.
– You can change the volume of the signals and the display ⇨ *page 147*.

## Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

*This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.*

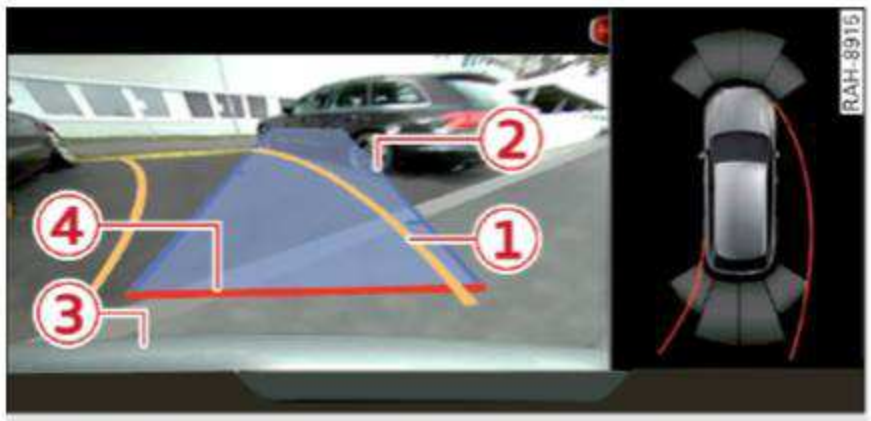



**Fig. 151** Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space

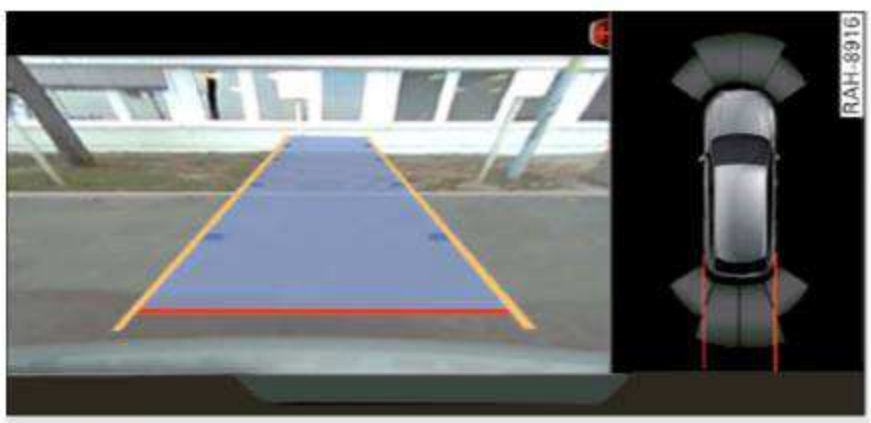



**Fig. 152** Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear.
▸ The orange orientation lines ① show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering ▶

wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 151*. Use the markings (2) to help you estimate the distance from an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.

- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 145*, ⇨ (!) *in General information on page 146*. (3) represents the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle, at the latest, when the red orientation line (4) borders an object.

# Adjusting the parking aid

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera

*The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.*

- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**. Or
- ▸ When the parking aid is active, select in the Infotainment system: right control button*.

**End system*** - stop the parking aid

**Activate automatically** - switch automatic activation on/off

**Front volume*** - volume for the front area

**Rear volume** - volume for the rear area

**Entertainment fader** - the volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking system is turned on.

The new value is given briefly during the adjustment.

**Tips**

- Several menus can be accessed with the right control button only when the parking aid is active.
- The settings for volume and automatic activation are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

# Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera

**Rear park assist: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected**

**Front park assist: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected**

**Park assist: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected**

When one of these messages appears, there is a system malfunction. The LED in the P button also blinks when switching it on. The relevant message only appears again when you manually activate the parking aid with the button.

**Rear parking aid: obstacle detection restricted**

The rear cross-traffic assist* ⇨ *page 139, Rear cross-traffic assist* is not available. Either the ESC is switched off, or the radar sensors may be covered by a bike rack, stickers, leaves, snow or other objects. Switch the ESC on, or clean the area in front of the sensors if necessary ⇨ *page 137, fig. 141*. If this message continues to be displayed, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

### Parking system plus*

If a sensor or speaker is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas (A) and (B) are shown ⇨ *page 143, fig. 145*. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas (C) and (D) are shown.

# Intelligent Technology

## Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

### Description

Electronic stabilization control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations such as the vehicle oversteering and understeering or the wheels are spinning. The vehicle is stabilized by applying the brakes or reducing engine torque. When the ESC engages, the indicator light blinks in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

#### Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

#### Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. In vehicles with adaptive cruise control*, the brake assist system is more sensitive if the distance detected to the vehicle driving ahead is too small.

#### Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

#### Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to a wheel that starts spinning and transfers the drive power to the other driving wheel or wheels (if the vehicle is equipped with all wheel drive*). This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still working correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

#### Power steering

The ESC can also support vehicle stability through steering.

#### Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

#### Automatic post-collision braking system

The “automatic post-collision braking system” can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if:

– the driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
– the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle electrical system are not functioning.

**WARNING**

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!

▶

– Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on even, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

**Tips**

– The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

## Switching on/off

*ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.*

**Fig. 153** Upper center console: ESC button

The ESC is designed to function in levels. Depending on the level that is selected, the stabilization function of the ESC is limited or switched off. The amount of stabilization control will differ depending on the level.

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

| | Sport mode on | ESC/ASR off | Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Behavior** | The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠. | The stabilization function is not available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and ASR are switched off. | The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again. |
| **Operating** | Press the button briefly. | Press and hold the button longer than three seconds. | Press the button again. |
| **Indicator lights** | turns on. | and ESC OFF* turn on. | turns off or and ESC OFF* turn off. |
| **Messages*** | **Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability** | **Stabilization control (ESC): off. Warning! Limited stability** | **Stabilization control (ESC): on** |

**WARNING**

You should only switch sport mode on or switch ESC/ASR off if your driving abilities and road conditions permit.

– The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.

8V2012721BF

– There is no vehicle stabilization when ESC/ASR are switched off.

**Tips**

– ESC/ASR cannot be switched off or sport mode cannot be switched on if the cruise control system* or the adaptive cruise control* is switched on.
– Malfunctions in the Audi magnetic ride* may make it impossible to switch the ESC/ASR off or to switch sport mode on.

# Brakes

### New brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

The break-in period can be considerably longer for vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

### Wear

**Brake pad** wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. This is especially true if you are driving frequently in the city and on curves or with a sporty driving style.

### Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Noises may become more apparent at lower speeds due to the nature of the materials in the ceramic brake rotors*.

### Effect of water and road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be "dried" first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This action, which is not felt by the driver, happens at regular intervals and ensures a better reaction time for the brakes in wet weather.

The braking effect can also be reduced if you are driving on salted roads and you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time. The layer of salt on the brake rotors and pads must be worn off first when the brakes are applied.

Due to its surface, the ceramic brake rotor* absorbs moisture in certain situations. Therefore, there will temporarily be less braking force than when the brakes are dry. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal harder.

### Corrosion

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage and avoiding heavy braking can contribute to corrosion on the brake rotors and to dirty brake pads.

If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads ⇨ ⚠.

### Brake system malfunction

If you notice that the brake pedal travel has *suddenly* increased, then a brake circuit in the dual-circuit brake system may have malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the problem corrected. On the way there, drive with reduced speed and keep in mind that you will need a longer distance to stop and you will need to press the brake pedal harder.

### Low brake fluid level

When the brake fluid level is low, malfunctions in the brake system may occur. The brake fluid level is electronically monitored. ▶

### Brake booster

The brake booster amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It only operates while the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on (plug-in hybrid drive*) .

**WARNING**

- Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users. This increases the risk of an accident.
- Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, the brake pedal may be pulled downward when the vehicle automatically initiates braking.
- Never place objects in the driver's footwell. An object could end up in the area around the pedals and prevent you from using them. You would not be able to use the pedals if sudden driving or braking maneuvers were needed, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Only use floor mats that do not obstruct the area around the pedals and that can be securely fastened in the footwells.
- To reduce the risk of injury, do not place your foot under the brake pedal.

**Note**

- Never let the brakes "rub" by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
- Before driving on a long stretch with steep slopes, reduce your speed and shift to the next lower gear This makes use of the engine braking effect and relieves the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

**Tips**

- If the brake booster is not working, you must press the brake pedal with much more force than normal.
- If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the front wheels is not interrupted. Otherwise the brake system can become too hot.

## Electromechanical steering

*The electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements.*

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

### Indicator lights and messages

**Do not drive vehicle: steering defective**

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do **not** continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Steering: system fault! You can continue driving**

If the indicator light turns on, the steering wheel may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

**Tips**

If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

# All wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

*In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.*

### General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. Also see ⇨ *page 148, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

### Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good *forward* motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, using winter or all season tires on *all four* wheels in the winter is recommended, because this will improve the *braking* effect.

### Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 346, Snow chains*.

### Replacing tires

For vehicles with all wheel drive, only wheels with the same rolling circumference should be used. Avoid using tires with different tread depths ⇨ *page 337, New tires or wheels*.

### Offroad vehicle?

Your Audi is not an offroad vehicle - there is not enough ground clearance. For this reason, avoid difficult terrain.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can "hydroplane" if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine does not rev higher suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

# Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

**ⓘ Tips**

– If you drive short distances frequently, the vehicle battery may not charge enough while driving. As a result, convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
– The vehicle battery will gradually drain if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if electrical equipment is used when the engine is not running. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be reduced or switched off.

# Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

### Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to ▶

record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Audi will only access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others with the consent of the owner or lessee or in accordance with applicable law. States vary in their access/disclosure restrictions for EDR data, but typically such data can be accessed/disclosed in the following circumstances:

- when the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees; or
- upon the official request by the police; or
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.
- Audi may also use the data, once retrieved from the vehicle under permissible circumstances, in an anonymous format.
- for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for such research purposes.

### Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

**Tips**

Your vehicle may be equipped with Audi connect. Your use of certain Audi connect features requires wireless services that are provided by a third party wireless telecommunications provider. For details regarding how information obtained through Audi connect is collected, processed, transmitted, used, and shared, please see your contract with the wireless telecommunications provider.

# Multi Media Interface

## Traffic safety information

Audi recommends performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, only when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

**WARNING**

Only use the Infotainment system when traffic conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

**Tips**

Certain functions are not available while driving.

## Introduction

*The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various systems for communication, navigation* and entertainment in your Audi. You can operate the MMI using the MMI control panel, the multifunction steering wheel or the voice recognition system*.*

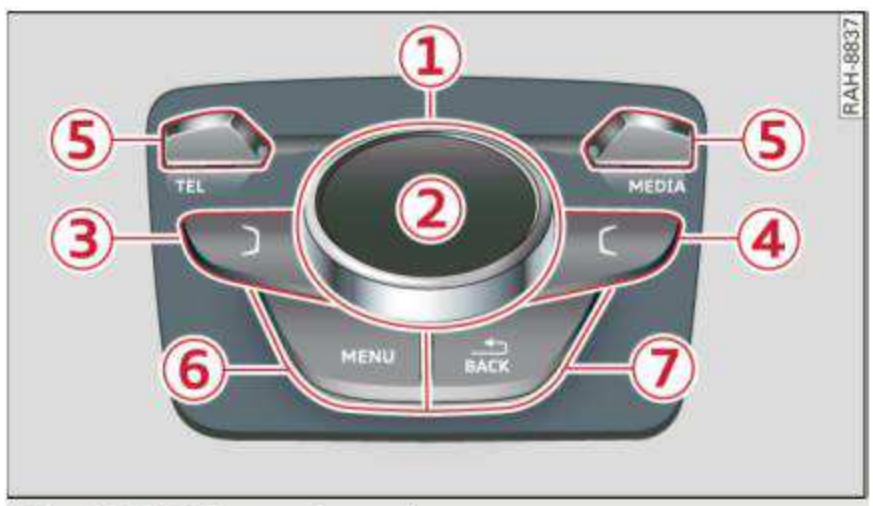



**Fig. 154** MMI control panel

MMI control panel overview


① Control knob with joystick function* ..... 155, 159
② MMI touch control pad* ..... 157
③ Left control button ..... 156
④ Right control button ..... 156
⑤ Buttons for opening menus directly ..... 156
⑥ MENU button ..... 156
⑦ BACK button ..... 155


## MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

### Operating

**Fig. 155** MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

**Switching the MMI on/off**: the MMI can be switched on/off manually.

– **Switching on manually**: press the On/Off knob ① briefly ⇨ *fig. 155*. **Or**: press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154* or one of the buttons to open the menus directly ⑤.

– **Switching off manually**: press and hold the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 155* until the MMI switches off. If the MMI has been switched off manually, it does *not* switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Additional functions**:

– **Adjusting the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 155*.

– **Muting**: press the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 155* briefly.

– **Selecting the previous/next function (for example, a radio station/track)**: press the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 155* briefly toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭.

– **Fast forwarding/rewinding (for example songs)**: press and hold the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 155* toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭. ▶

**WARNING**

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

**Tips**

The MMI switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the vehicle battery is low.

# Infotainment system display

## Switching on/off

▸ Press the ⏻ or ⏻ button to switch the Infotainment system on and off.

When the MMI is switched on and the display is switched off, you can operate certain functions using the On/Off knob with the MMI joystick function ⇨ *page 154*.

**Tips**

There may be delays when switching on the display.

# MMI operation

## Selecting and confirming a function

**Fig. 156** Operating the control knob

### Selecting and confirming a function in a menu/list

▸ **Selecting a function**: turn the control knob ① ⇨ *fig. 156* to the desired function (such as selecting a frequency).

▸ **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob ② ⇨ *fig. 156*.

### Returning to functions at higher levels

▸ Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154*.

## Opening the main menu/menu

**Fig. 157** Diagram: main menu

### Opening the main menu

- Press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154*. The MMI menus (such as **Radio**) are displayed ⇨ *fig. 157*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

### Opening a menu directly

- Press the applicable button to directly open the menus ⑤ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154* in the direction of the desired menu (such as RADIO). Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

## Opening the selection menu/options menu with the control buttons

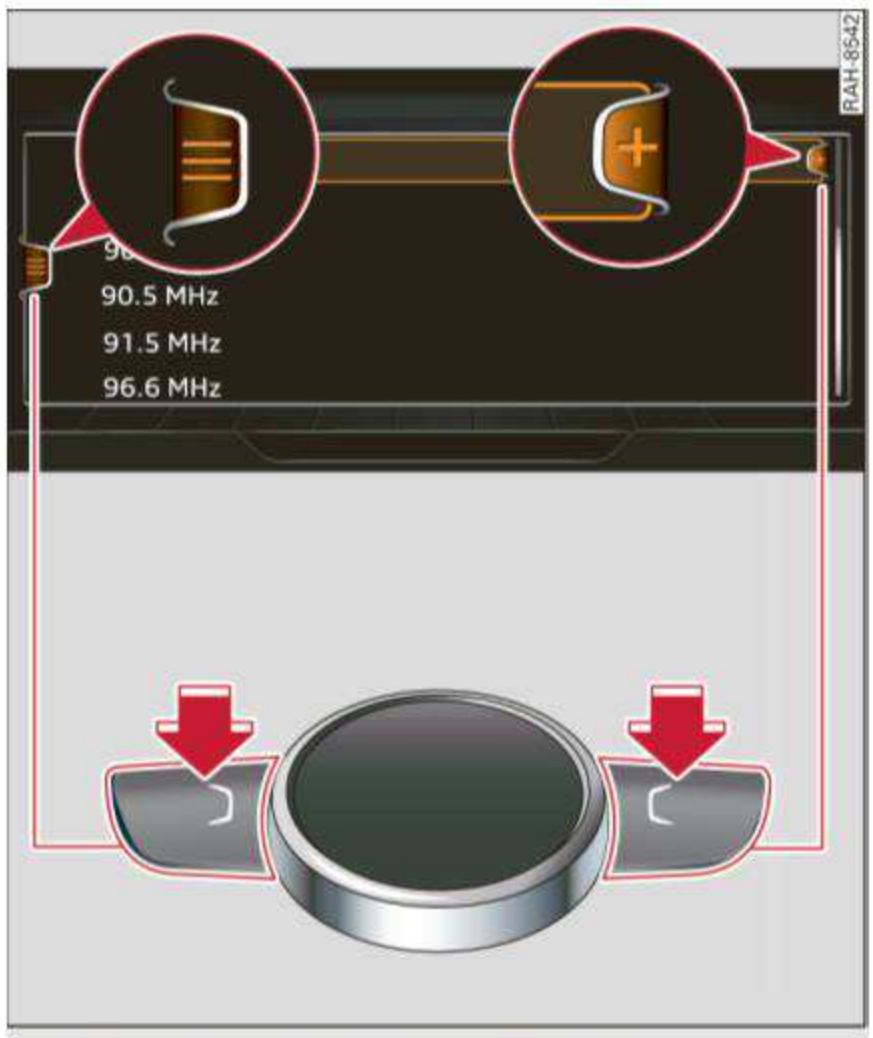



**Fig. 158** Control buttons on the MMI control panel

**Selection menu**: through the selection menu, you can open additional functions within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Requirement: the selection menu symbol must be displayed in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 158*.

**Opening/closing the selection menu**: press the left control button ⇨ *fig. 158*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

**Options menu**: using the options menu, you can select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Requirement: the options menu symbol + must be displayed in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 158*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

**Opening/closing the options menu**: press the right control button ⇨ *fig. 158*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

## Information about menu paths

*This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.*

### Example of a path

- Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**.

### Following the path

- Press the RADIO button.
- Press the left control button.
- Turn the control knob to the **FM** menu item to select it.
- Press the control knob to confirm the selected **FM** menu item.
- The selected and confirmed function is executed. In this example, the **FM** frequency band is set.

# MMI touch

## MMI touch control pad

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

*You can enter data using handwriting recognition on the MMI touch control pad.*

**Fig. 159** Example: entering a navigation destination using the MMI touch

The MMI touch control pad is on the surface with the control knob ⇨ *fig. 159*.

## Entering letters, numbers and symbols

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

*The MMI touch allows you to enter data on the MMI touch control pad using handwriting recognition.*

**Fig. 160** Display when MMI touch is active

Requirement: it must be possible to enter text or numbers and the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 160* must appear in the Infotainment system display.

- **Initial entry**: write an individual upper case or lower case letter or number/symbol on the MMI touch control pad using your finger. A symbol that is recognized clearly by the system is displayed in the Infotainment system display ① ⇨ *page 157, fig. 159*, confirmed with an audible signal if necessary, and transferred to the input field.
- **Entering spaces**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from left to right.
- **Deleting characters**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from right to left.
- **Selecting the input suggestion**: press the control knob.
- **Switching directly to the results list**: turn the control knob to the right
- **Opening the speller**: select the right control button > **Open speller**. Text or numbers are entered using the speller ⇨ *page 161*.

## Moving the crosshairs

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

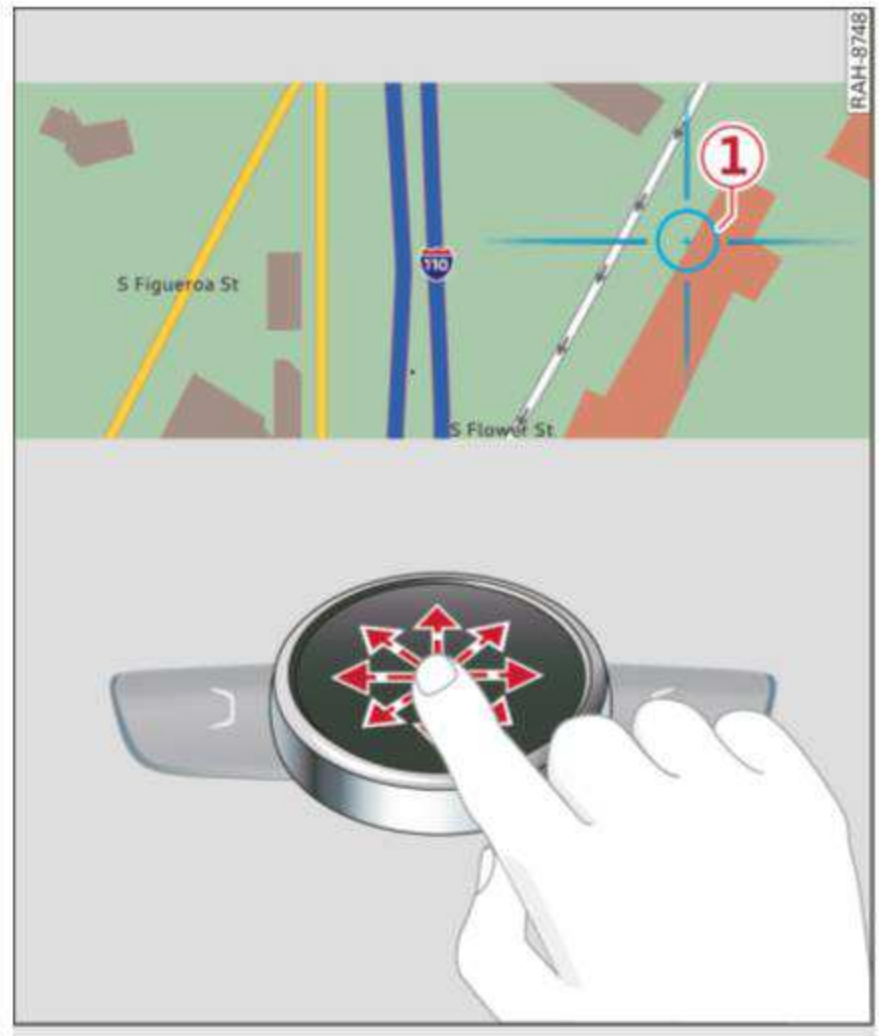



**Fig. 161** Moving the crosshairs

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 210*.

– **Showing/hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs ① ⇨ *fig. 161*. **Or**: press on the MMI touch control pad. Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154* to hide the crosshairs again.
– **Moving the crosshairs on a map**: move the crosshairs shown in the desired direction using your finger on the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *fig. 161*.

**Moving the crosshairs quickly**: when the crosshairs are visible ① ⇨ *fig. 161*, slide your finger quickly across the MMI touch control pad in the desired direction ⇨ *fig. 161*. The crosshairs will come to a stop after several seconds.

## Moving the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

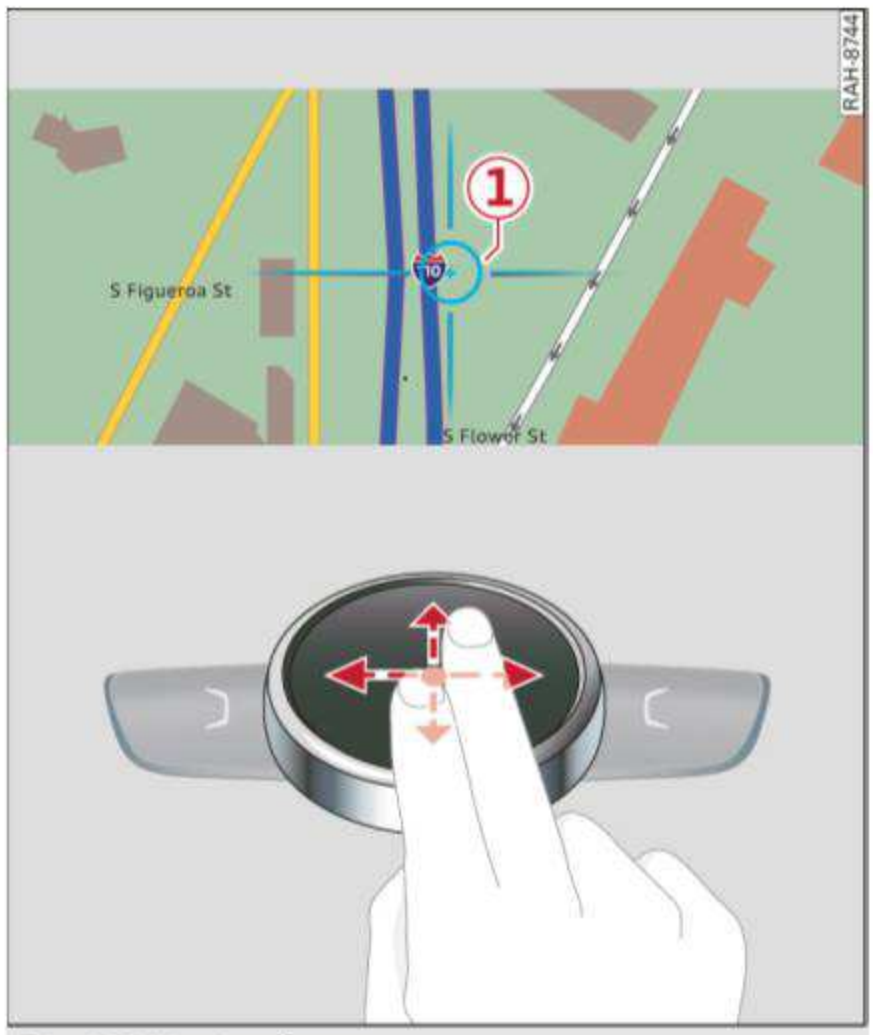



**Fig. 162** Moving the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 210*.

– **Showing/hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs ① ⇨ *fig. 162*. Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154* to hide the crosshairs again.
– **Moving the standard map/satellite map**[1)]: move the crosshairs shown in the desired direction using two fingers on the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *fig. 162*.
– **Moving the map quickly**: when the crosshairs are visible, pull two fingers across the MMI touch control pad quickly in the desired direction. The map will come to a stop after several seconds.

## Zooming in/out on the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

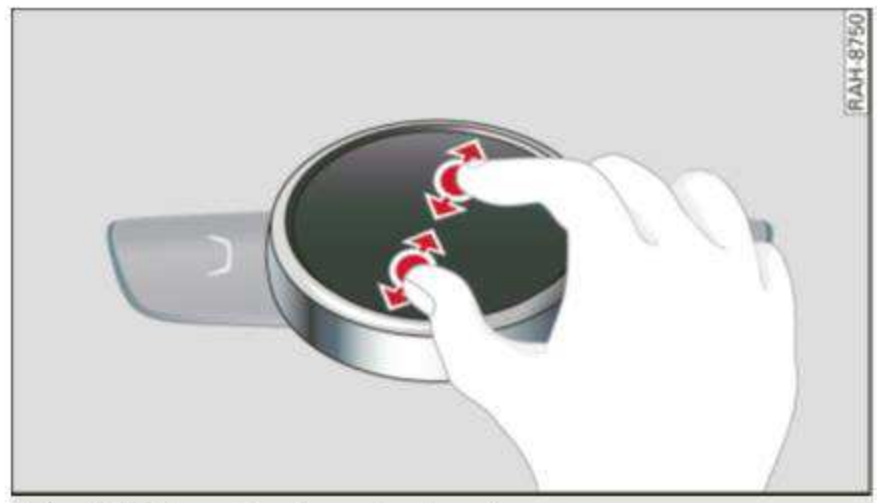



**Fig. 163** Zooming in and out on the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 210*.

– **Zooming in/out on the map**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs. Touch the MMI touch control pad with two fingers and pull your fingers apart or together ⇨ *fig. 163*.

Press the BACK button ⑦ to hide the crosshairs ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154*.

## Adjusting the sound focus

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

Requirement: the balance/fader function must be selected ⇨ *page 247*. ▶

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

– **Moving the crosshairs for sound focus**: move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch control pad.
– **Storing the crosshairs location**: press the control knob twice. **Or**: press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154*.

## Using the DVD main menu

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 232*.

– **Selecting a menu item**: move your finger up/down or left/right on the MMI touch control pad.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

**Tips**

The volume of the voice guidance prompts for the MMI touch* can be adjusted separately ⇨ *page 248*.

# Control knob with joystick function

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function

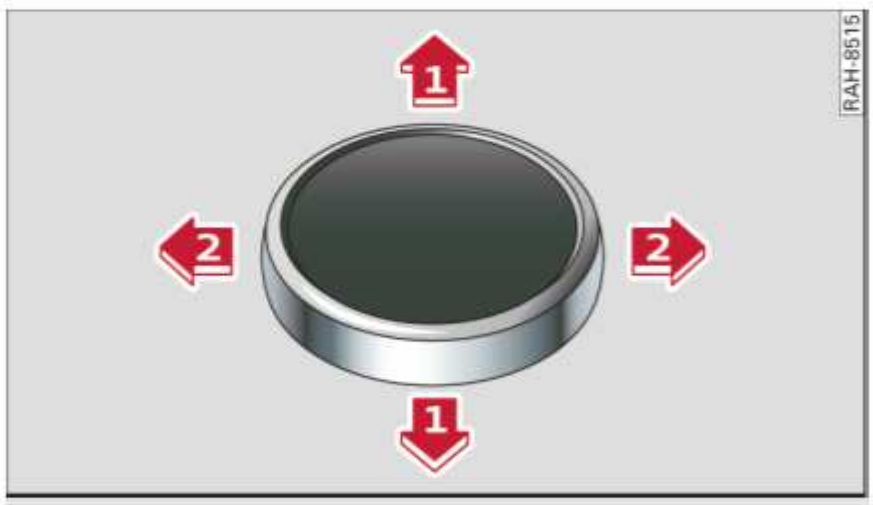



**Fig. 164** Operating concept for the control knob with joystick function

You can push the control knob up or down ① ⇨ *fig. 164* or to the right or left ②.

## Opening the entertainment sliding menu

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

**Opening the entertainment sliding menu**: push the control knob down to open the entertainment sliding menu ③ ⇨ *page 163, fig. 168*. Then you can select and confirm a function.

**Closing the entertainment sliding menu**: push the control knob up to close the entertainment sliding menu. **Or**: press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154*.

## Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function

### Displaying the input field/switching to speller input

Push the control knob up ⇨ *page 159, fig. 164* to reach the beginning of a list in the central area or the input field. If the input field is already open, switch directly to the speller in the input field by pushing the control knob up again ⇨ *page 161*.

### On the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 210*.

– **Displaying the input field**: push the control knob up.
– **Displaying route guidance**: when route guidance is active, you can also display the route guidance by pushing the control knob up ⇨ *page 205, fig. 184*.
– **Zooming in/out on the map (zoom)**: turn the control knob to the right/left to zoom in/out on the map.
– **Additional options on the map**: see ⇨ *page 211*

Applies to: vehicles without MMI touch with joystick function

– **Showing/hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob. The crosshairs are shown on the map. Press the BACK button to hide the crosshairs.
– **Moving the crosshairs**: when the crosshairs are visible, turn the control knob in the direction the crosshairs should move. Press the control knob and hold it until the crosshairs are in the desired point on the map.

### Adjusting the sound focus

Applies to: vehicles without MMI touch with joystick function

Requirement: the balance/fader function must be selected ⇨ *page 247*. ▶

– **Moving the sound focus using the crosshairs**: the crosshairs can be moved horizontally. Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. Press the control knob to move the crosshairs vertically. Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. Press the control knob again to save the setting.

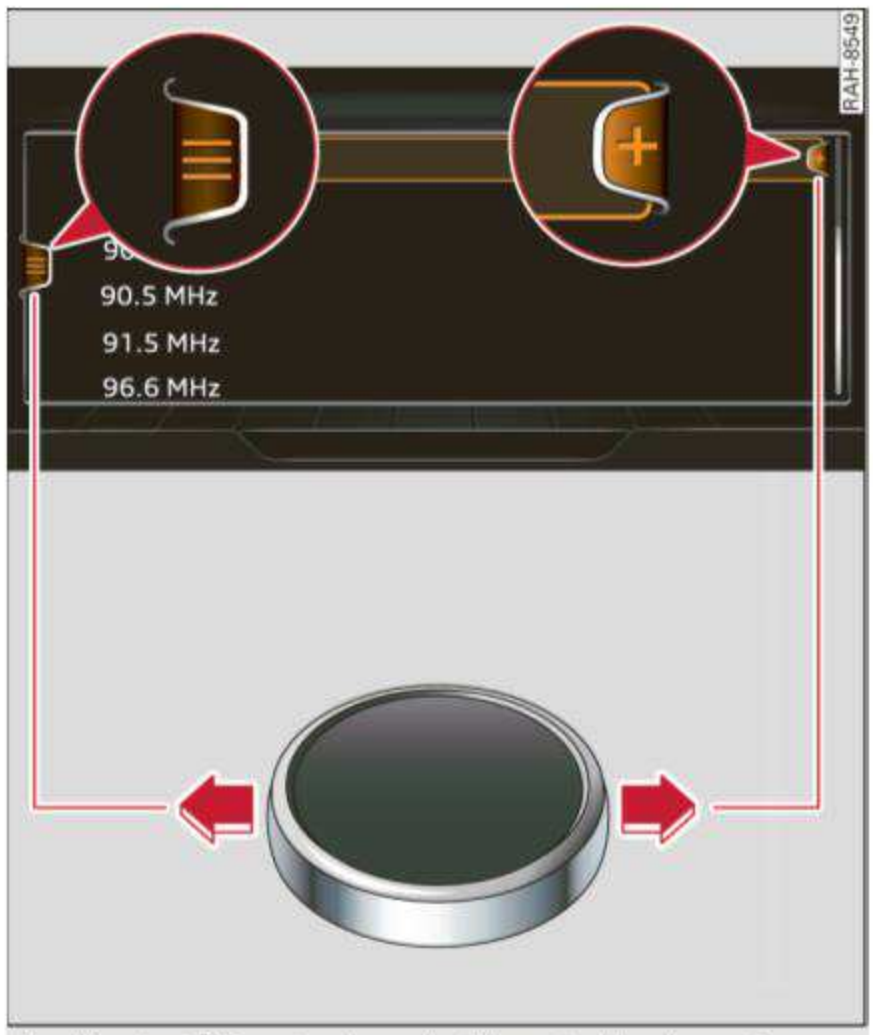
### Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 232*.

– **Selecting a menu item**: move the control knob with joystick function up or down or to the left or right.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

## Opening the selection/options menu with the control knob

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function




Applies to: MMI control panel with control knob and joystick function

**Fig. 165** Opening the selection/options menu with the control knob

Requirement: the selection menu symbol must be displayed in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 165*.

**Opening/closing the selection menu**: push the control knob to the left ⇨ *fig. 165* to open the selection menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154* to return to the function one level up.

**Opening/closing the options menu**: push the control knob to the right ⇨ *fig. 165* to open the options menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 154, fig. 154* to return to the function one level up.

# Letter/number speller

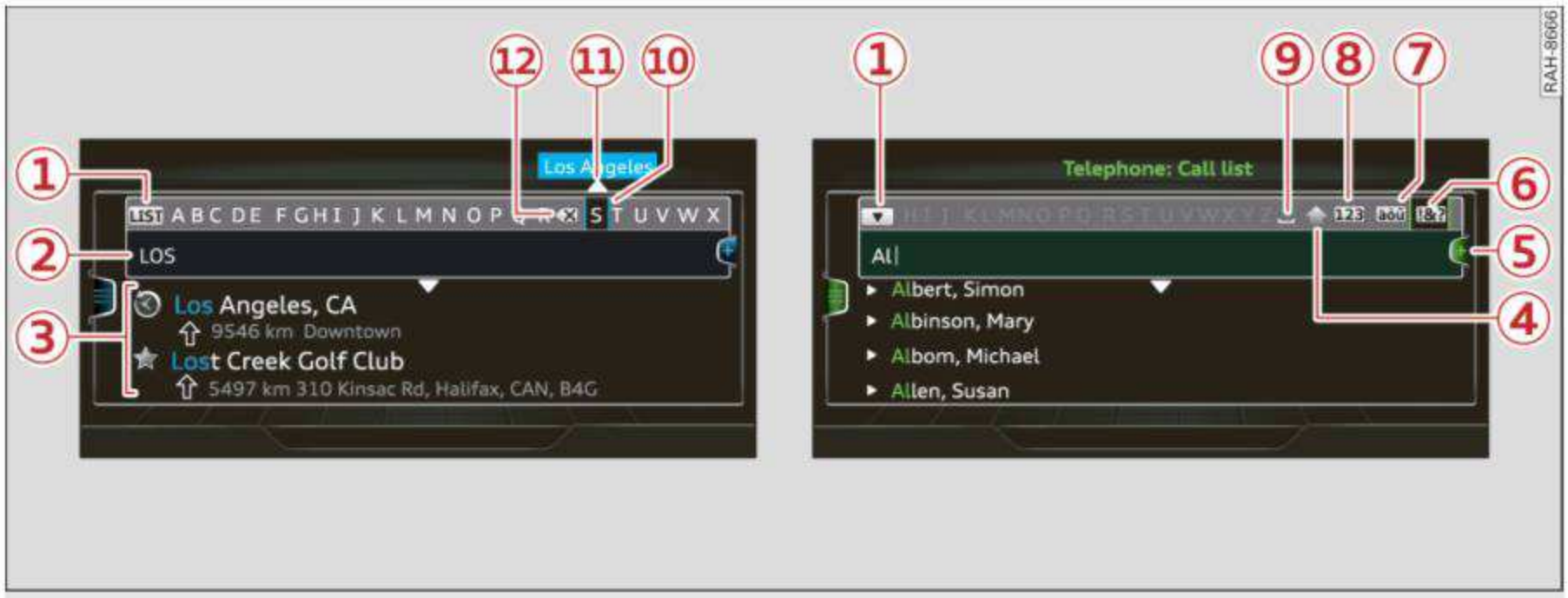



**Fig. 166** Diagram: letter/number speller

You can enter letters, numbers and symbols in the MMI using the letter/number speller. This option is available when the input field (2) is active ⇨ *fig. 166*.

– **Opening/closing the letter/number speller**: move the control knob up/down when the input field is active. **Or**: select the right control button > **Open speller/Close speller**.
– **Entering characters**: turn the control knob with the character selection (10) ⇨ *fig. 166* to the desired symbol. Press the control knob to confirm the character. Your input is displayed in the input field (2). Once you have entered all of the characters, select and confirm the button (1) to go to the results list. **Or**: push the control knob down.
– **Entering accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö)***: turn the control knob with the character selection (10) ⇨ *fig. 166* to a character. To open the selected accented characters, press and hold the control knob. Turn the control knob with the character selection (10) ⇨ *fig. 166* to an accented character. Press the control knob to insert the accented character. To close the accented characters without selecting a character, press and hold the control knob again. **Or**: select and confirm äöü (7) ⇨ *fig. 166*. Select and confirm an accented character.
– **Deleting characters**: select and confirm ⌫ (12) ⇨ *fig. 166* and press the control button. To delete all characters in the input field, press and hold the control knob on ⌫ until all characters in the input field are deleted.
– **Entering special characters**: select and confirm !&? (6) ⇨ *fig. 166*, äöü (7) or 123 (8). Select and confirm the desired special character (for example, a hyphen or period) with the number speller.
– **Input assistance**: in some cases such as in navigation*, there is a word suggestion* (11) ⇨ *fig. 166* based on available entries while you are entering data. You can select this suggestion by pushing the control knob upward.
– **Results list**: in some cases, such as in the directory, the system switches automatically to the results list based on available entries (3) ⇨ *fig. 166*. Select and confirm a suggestion from the list.

Requirement: the input field (2) ⇨ *fig. 166* must be active.

– **Switching between speller and MMI touch***: the handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad* is activated automatically. Simply start writing.

## Overview of symbols in the speller

The symbols in the letter/number speller are explained in the following table: ▶

| | Symbol/Description | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ① | LIST or ▾ | Switches to the results list. |
| ② | Input field | Displays the current input. |
| ③ | Results list | Displays a list with suggestions based on the letters already entered. |
| ④ | ⬆ | Switches from lower case to upper case letters or from upper case to lower case letters. |
| ⑤ | ⊂+ | Opens additional speller options, for example **Close speller** and **Clear input field** |
| ⑥ | !&? | Character sets and special characters |
| ⑦ | äöü | Displays accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö). |
| ⑧ | 123/ABC | Switches from letter to number input or from number to letter input. |
| ⑨ | ⎵ | Adds a space in the input field. |
| ⑩ | Character selection | Highlights the selected character. |
| ⑪ | ▲ | Inserts the suggested word* when you push the control knob up. |
| ⑫ | ⌫ | Deletes the character to the left of the cursor. |

**Tips**

Accented characters are not available for every letter.

# Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search

*Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field.*

**Fig. 167** Example: free text search on telephone

Free text search is available in the **Vehicle***, **Radio***, **Media***, **Telephone***, **Navigation*** and **Audi connect*** menus.

## Opening free text search

- Select: MENU button > *desired menu item* (such as **Telephone**).
- Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① ⇨ *fig. 167* appears. **Or**: push the control knob up to open the input field ①.

The handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad* is automatically activated. Simply start writing.

## Free text search for an entry

- Enter one or more search terms in any order into the input field. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces when entering.

An input suggestion to complete the entry* ③ ⇨ *fig. 167* is shown depending on the input. Additional entries that contain the entered search term are listed In the results list ②.

If the desired term is still not displayed, enter additional letters until it is displayed. ▶

It is often enough just to enter the first letters of the search term in order for it to display in the results list. For example, in the **Telephone*** menu, write the initials of the contact being searched, separated by a space.

### Selecting the input suggestion to complete the entry

Requirement: an input suggestion to complete the entry* (3) ⇨ *fig. 167* must be displayed.

▸ **MMI touch input***: press the control knob.

### Selecting an entry from the results list

Requirement: at least one entry must be displayed in the results list (2) ⇨ *fig. 167*.

▸ **MMI touch input***: turn the control knob to the right. Select and confirm an entry from the list.

▸ **Speller input**: select and confirm LIST (1) ⇨ *page 161, fig. 166*. **Or**: push the control knob down. Select and confirm an entry from the list.

## Menus and Symbols

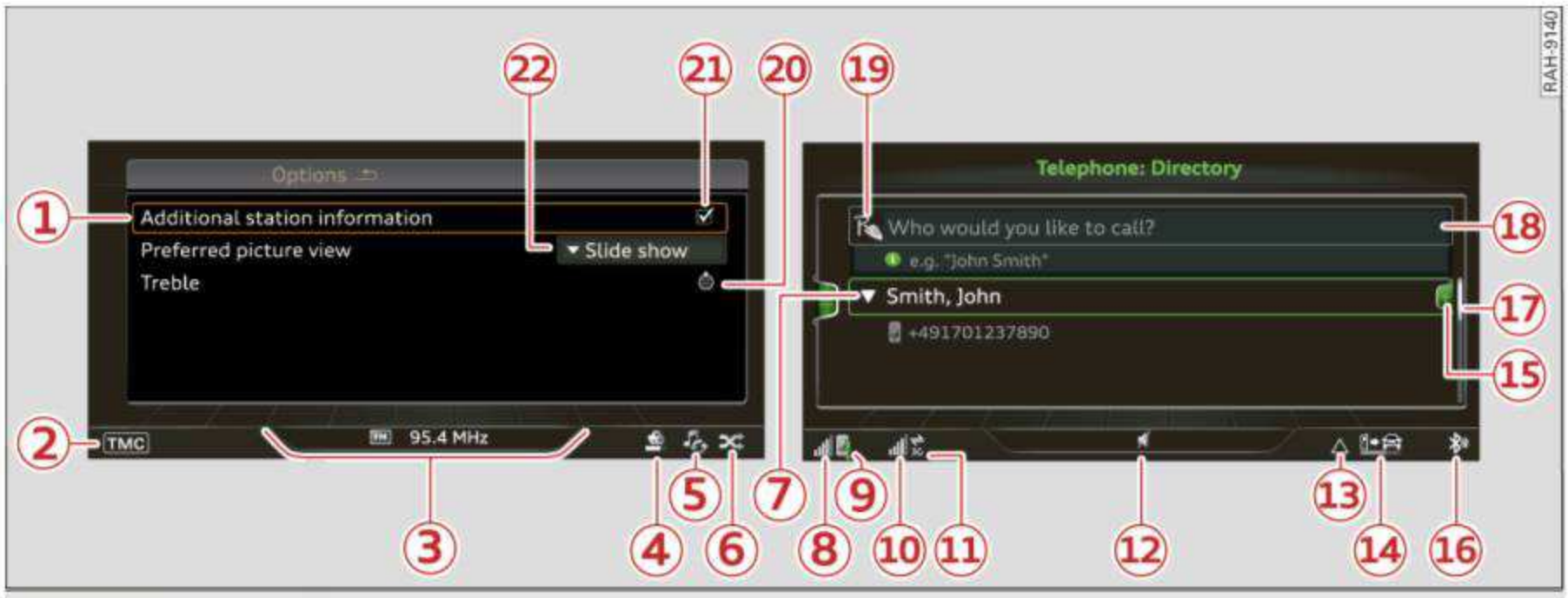



**Fig. 168** Diagram: menus and symbols

| | Symbol/Description | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ① | Selected text | Selected function |
| ② | TMC | TMC/online traffic information reception ⇨ *page 215* |
| ③ | Entertainment sliding menu | Displays information about the media source that is currently selected or a situation (such as an incoming call). Depending on vehicle equipment, operation might also be possible using the open entertainment sliding menu (such as selecting a radio station or accepting a call) ⇨ *page 159*. |
| ④ | Jukebox* importing process | Copy audio/video files to the Jukebox ⇨ *page 225* |
| ⑤ | Repeat track | The track currently playing is repeated. ⇨ *page 235* |
| ⑥ | Shuffle | All files on the playlist are played in random order ⇨ *page 235*, **Shuffle** |
| ⑦ | Arrow | Access information by pressing the control knob when the selected text is active |
| ⑧ | Telephone signal strength bars | Telephone signal strength |

| | Symbol/Description | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ⑨ | Exclamation point on the telephone | Indicates missed calls |
| ⑩ | Data connection signal strength bars* | Signal strength for the active data connection, or<br>**PIN**: enter the PIN (SIM)<br>**PUK**: enter the PUK |
| ⑪ | 2G/3G/LTE* | Network coverage for the active data connection ⇨ *page 196*<br>**2G**: GSM network<br>**3G**: UMTS network<br>**LTE***: LTE network |
| ⑫ | Mute | The audio source is muted ⇨ *page 247* |
| ⑬ | Roaming | Outside the mobile network for the connected cell phone or the inserted SIM card |
| ⑭ | Importing process | Import/update the contacts in the directory or the call lists |
| ⑮ | Options menu* | Select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item |
| ⑯ | Bluetooth* | Bluetooth device connected ⇨ *page 226* or ⇨ *page 177* |
| ⑰ | Scroll bars | Indicates a long list.<br>Move within lists by turning the control knob. |
| ⑱ | Input field | Information that can be changed using the letter/number speller ⇨ *page 161* or the MMI touch* ⇨ *page 157*. |
| ⑲ | MMI touch* | Operation using the MMI touch control pad is possible |
| ⑳ | Knob | Setting for the selected function by turning the control knob |
| ㉑ | Check boxes | You can switch certain functions on ☑ or off ☐ by pressing the control knob. |
| ㉒ | Selection list | Settings for the selected function that are accessed by pressing the control knob |

# Multifunction steering wheel

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel

In the driver information system display, you can control numerous Infotainment functions using the multifunction steering wheel plus* ⇨ *page 13* or the multifunction steering wheel* ⇨ *page 16*.

You can control additional Infotainment functions using the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 154* in the Infotainment system display.

**WARNING**

Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

## Radio

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and radio

Requirement: radio mode must be started ⇨ *page 218* and the radio/media tab must be displayed.

▸ Press either the ☰ button or the left control button ⇨ *page 14*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available in the driver information system.

– **Selecting the frequency band**: select and confirm a frequency band.
– **Selecting a station from the presets list***: select: **Presets** > *the desired radio station*.
– **Selecting a station from the station list***: select and confirm a radio station.
– **Selecting a station from the presets list**: select: **Presets** > *the desired radio station*.
– **Opening a media source**: select and confirm **Switch to media**.

### Additional settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– Select: right control button > *desired entry*.

Depending on the function selected, the following additional settings may be possible:

– **Show "Now Playing" screen**: see ⇨ *page 222*.

## Media

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and media

Requirement: a media drive must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 224* and the radio/media tab must be displayed.

▸ Press either the ☰ button or the left control button ⇨ *page 14*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available in the driver information system.

– **Selecting a media source**: select and confirm a source such as the “SD card”.
– **Playing an audio/video file**: select and confirm a track/file.
– **Pausing/resuming playback**: press the right thumbwheel (3) ⇨ *page 15, fig. 11*. To resume playback, press the right thumbwheel again.

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

– **Switching to radio**: select and confirm a frequency band (such as **FM**).

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– **Switching to the radio**: select and confirm **Switch to radio**.
– **Opening additional track information**: select: right control button > **Show "Now Playing" screen**. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 235*.

**Tips**

– The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and that are identified with the symbol 🔒.
– Please note that within a media source in the driver information system, only playlists that were selected through the MMI control panel can be played ⇨ *page 233*.

– Always pay attention to the Infotainment system display. Additional operation through the MMI control panel may be necessary, depending on the selected function.

# Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 177* and the telephone tab must be displayed.

▸ Press either the button or the left control button ⇨ *page 14*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available in the driver information system.

– **Accessing a contact**: select and confirm **Call list** / **Favorites** / **Directory**. Select and confirm a contact.
– **Directory contacts**: the driver information system only displays directory contacts that have a phone number stored. If several phone numbers are stored with a contact, the list of stored numbers is displayed first when the entry is selected. For more information about the displayed symbols, refer to ⇨ *page 186*.
– **Recent calls**: the recent calls list contains all incoming, outgoing and missed calls.
– **Caller information***: the *name*, *phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the driver information system display depending on whether the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted.

**Functions during an incoming call**

– **Accepting a call**: press the left thumbwheel when there is an incoming call.
– **Declining a call**: select and confirm **Decline** when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a phone call**: select and confirm **End call**.

**Functions during a phone call**

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

– **Making an additional phone call**: select **Hold** > button > **Directory** or **Call list** > *an entry in the list*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select and confirm **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– **Making an additional phone call**: select: **Hold call** > left control button > **Directory** or **Call list** > *an entry*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select and confirm **Answer**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.

Additional functions include:

**Mute**: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You can hear the other person.

**Holding/resuming a call**: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again.

**Swap call**: you can alternate between two phone calls at the same time. One of the calls will be on hold. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A call that was placed on hold stays on hold and can be taken off hold with **Resume**.

**Conference call**: a call on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the cell phone service provider) can be added to a conference call. To make an additional call, put all participants in the current conference call on hold using **Hold call**. By pressing the left control button, you can make additional calls from the directory or the call list. **Resume** takes all parties off hold.

**Tips**

– The telephone functions can only be controlled with the multifunction steering wheel if the telephone equipment was installed *at the factory*.
– The telephone functions depend on the cell phone and whether they are supported by your cell phone service provider or not.
– The **Call waiting** function must be activated in your cell phone and in the MMI in order to ▶

be alerted when there is an incoming call during an active call. The call options depend on the cell phone and service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

# Navigation

## Operation in the driver information system

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and navigation system

Requirement: the navigation tab must be displayed.

If you have not started route guidance, a compass will display in the driver information system. The map is displayed in the Audi virtual cockpit*.

► Press either the ☰ button or the left control button ⇨ *page 14*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available in the driver information system.

– **Accessing last destinations**: select and confirm **Last destinations** > *the desired destination*.
– **Accessing favorites***: select and confirm **Favorites** > *the desired destination*.

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

– **Showing navigation when route guidance is active**: select and confirm **Route guidance**.
– **Showing the compass when route guidance is inactive**: select and confirm **Compass**.
– **Starting route guidance to the stored home address**: if necessary, first select and confirm **Stop route guidance** and then **Favorites** > **Home address**.
– **Canceling active route guidance**: select and confirm **Cancel route guidance**.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– **Starting route guidance to the stored home address**: if necessary, first select and confirm **Cancel route guidance** and then **Favorites** > **Home address**.
– **Canceling active route guidance**: select: right control button > **Cancel route guidance**.

### Additional settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– Select: right control button > *desired entry*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the function selected, the following additional settings may be possible:

– **Map display** ⇨ *page 212*.
– **Map colors** ⇨ *page 212*.
– **Map orientation** ⇨ *page 212*.
– **Automatic zoom** ⇨ *page 213*.

## Navigation view with route guidance started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit

**Fig. 169** Diagram: standard map when route guidance is active (Audi virtual cockpit)

Requirement: a destination must be entered ⇨ *page 201*, route guidance must be started and the navigation tab must be displayed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected view ⇨ *page 14*, the following information will be displayed in the driver information system:

① Map content (such as points of interest or traffic information)

② Current vehicle position (⇧)

③ A bar graph appears when there is an upcoming turn. The fewer bars are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn. If there is not an upcoming turn, the distance to the destination/stopover and the calculated arrival time is displayed in the right speedometer.

④ Name of the street where you are currently driving

## Street view with route guidance started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and analog instrument cluster

**Fig. 170** Example: lane change in the instrument cluster

**Fig. 171** Example: turning maneuver in the instrument cluster

Requirement: a destination must be entered ⇨ *page 201*, route guidance must be started and the navigation tab must be displayed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following information may be shown in the driver information system.

① Distance to the next maneuver
② Distance to the destination or stopover
③ Calculated arrival time
④ Name of the current expressway, highway or street. If the ○ symbol is displayed in front of the street name, you should turn onto the street shown.
⑤ Direction arrow for the upcoming maneuver
⑥ Lane recommendation
⑦ A bar graph appears when a direction arrow is displayed. The fewer bars are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.

The following functions are also available when route guidance is active:

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the NAV button.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down during voice guidance.

**WARNING**

The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

**Tips**

– Also see the chapter ⇨ *page 8, Controls at a glance*.
– An exclamation point "**!**" in front of the street name indicates that the information about this street or this section of the route is not complete in the navigation data contained in the MMI. Obey traffic laws in one-way streets and pedestrian zones.

## GLOBAL COMMANDS

- Telephone
- Audi connect
- Navigation
- Directory
- Radio
- Media
- Sound
- Help
- Help Speech dialog system
- Help Telephone
- Help Audi connect
- Help Navigation
- Help Map
- Help Radio
- Help Media
- Favorites
- Call (XY)
- Enter number
- Redial
- Read new text message
- Navigate to (XY)
- Enter address/destination
- Online destinations
- Cancel route guidance
- Map
- Line (XY)
- Next page / previous page
- Cancel
- No, I meant (XY)
- Correction

## TELEPHONE

- Enter number
  - Delete number / correction
- Directory
- Call (XY)
  - business / private / land line / mobile
- Call list
- Redial
- Call mailbox
- Enter PIN / delete PIN
- Telephone favorites

## NAVIGATION

- Navigate to (XY)
- Start / cancel route guidance
- Directory
- Last destinations
- Navigation favorites
- Drive home
- Enter address
- Enter country / town / street / state
- Exclude route / Exclude route for (XY) km / m
- Block route for (XY) miles / Block the next section
- Route list
- Calculate alternative routes
- Online destinations
- Special destination

## MAP

- Map
- Day map / Night map
- 2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map

## AUDI CONNECT

- Audi connect
- Travel information / Parking information
- Fuel prices
- Weather
- Flight information
- City events
- Online news
- Twitter

## RADIO

- Radio presets
- FM
- FM / AM / SIRIUS XM
- Station (XY) / Frequency (XY)
- Traffic announcement on / off

## MEDIA

- Jukebox
- CD / DVD
- SD card 1 / SD card 2
- Audi music interface / iPod / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Medium (XY)
- Media favorites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos
- Folder up
- Random playback on / off

**Fig. 172** Command overview

8V2012721BF

# Voice recognition system

## Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

*You can operate many Infotainment functions conveniently by speaking.*

Requirements: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on ⇨ *page 154*, there must not be any phone call in progress and the parking system must not be active.

- **Switching on**: press the button ② ⇨ *page 15, fig. 11* or ③ ⇨ *page 16, fig. 13* briefly on the multifunction steering wheel and say the desired command after the **Beep**.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: press the button.
- **Pausing**: say the command **Pause**. To resume, press the button.
- **Correcting**: say the command **Correction**.

### Input assistance

The system guides you through the input with visual and audio feedback.

– **Visual input assistance**: after switching on voice recognition, a display with a selection of possible commands appears. This command display can be switched on or off. Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialog system**.
– **Audio input assistance**: to have the possible commands read, turn the voice recognition system on and say **Help**.

### For the system to understand you:

Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.

Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.

Close the doors, the windows and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.

Do not direct the vents toward the hands-free microphone, which is in the roof headliner near the front interior lights.

Only use the system from the driver's seat because the hands-free microphone is directed toward that seat.

### Additional settings

See ⇨ *page 248*.

**WARNING**

– Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
– Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

**Tips**

– The dialog pauses when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog ends if you answer the call.
– There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.
– You can select an item in the list using either the voice recognition system or the control knob.

## Command overview information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

The following overviews describe the commands that can be used to operate the MMI using the voice recognition system.

Alternative commands are separated using a "**/**", for example say: **Telephone** / (or) **Navigation** / (or) **Radio**.

Sequences of commands used to perform an action are identified with a "**>**", for example say: **Enter address** > (then) **Enter country/state**. ▶

The majority shown are main commands. This system also recognizes synonyms in certain cases. For a **Business address**, you can also say **business**, **work**, **office** or **at the office**.

# Commands

## Global commands

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can always use the global commands, regardless of the menu selected.

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Opening a menu | **Telephone** / **Directory** / **Navigation** / **Radio** / **Media** / **Audi connect*** / **Car** / **Tone** |
| Having the possible commands read aloud | **Help** / **Help speech dialog system** / **Help Telephone** / **Help Navigation** / **Help Map** / **Help Radio** / **Help Media** / **Help Audi connect*** |
| Telephone functions | **Call (XY)**, for example, **Call "John Smith"** / **Enter number** / **Redial** / **Directory** / **Read out new text message** / **Read out new e-mail** |
| Navigation functions* | **Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Navigate to John Smith** / **Enter address** / **Cancel route guidance** / **Map** / **Online destinations*** / **Online destination (XY)*** |
| Accessing favorites | **Favorites** > *follow the system prompts* |
| Selecting an entry from a list | **Line (XY)** |
| Scrolling through a list | **Next page** / **Previous page** |
| Correcting the command given | **Correction** |
| Switching the voice recognition system off | **Cancel** |

## Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 177* and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 171*.

You can say the following commands depending on the selected menu item:

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Calling a contact from the directory | **Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"** |
| Selecting a specific contact number | **Call (XY) business** / **private** / **landline** / **cell phone**, for example, **Call "John Smith" private** |
| Selecting a phone number with an address card open | **Call** / **Call work** / **Call private** / **Call landline** / **Call cell phone work** |
| Calling a contact from your favorites list | **Telephone favorites** > *after being prompted, say the desired contact* > **Dial** |
| Displaying the call list | **Call list** |

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Calling the last number dialed | **Redial** |
| Dialing a phone number | **Enter number** > *when prompted, say the telephone number in groups of individual numbers*, for example. **888 555 1212** > **Dial** |
| Correcting the phone number that was entered | **Correction** / **Delete number** |
| Showing contact information | **Directory** > *say the desired contact when prompted*, for example **John Smith** |
| Listening to messages | **Call voicemail** |
| Entering the PIN (SIM) | **Enter PIN** > *when prompted, say the PIN in individual numbers* > **Save** |
| Correcting the PIN entry | **Correction** / **Delete PIN** |
| Correcting data input | **No I meant (XY)** |
| Closing the full-screen command list | **Close** |

**Tips**

– Contacts in the directory can selected using the full name (“first name last name” and “last name, first name”) as well as with only the first or last name. This applies to cell phones that transmit names separated into first and last names.

– Please note that commands can only be given for the primary phone* ⇨ *page 177*.

– For more information on supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## Audi connect (Infotainment)

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect (Infotainment) must be met ⇨ *page 190*.

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Accessing Audi connect Infotainment services | **Audi connect** > *follow the system prompts* |
| Audi connect Infotainment services | **Weather** / **Online news** / **Fuel prices** / **Parking information** / **Travel information** / **Twitter** / **Online traffic information** / **City events** / **Flight information** |
| Search areas for Audi connect Infotainment services | **Near destination** / **Nearby** / **In a new city** |
| Correcting data input | **No I meant (XY)** |

**Tips**

Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.

## Messages (Audi connect (Infotainment))

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

**Requirement**: a cell phone with an active MAP (Message Access Profile) must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 183*.

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Text editing commands | **Read out** / **Add** / **Delete** / **Record everything again** / **Replace with (XY)** / **Add recipient** / **Send** |
| Reading out a new message | **Read out new text message** / **Read out new e-mail** |
| Reading a message | **Read out text message** / **Read out e-mail** |
| Replying to the open text message | **Reply** |
| Forwarding the open text message | **Forward** > **Add recipient** / **Insert template** / **Send** |
| Correcting data input | **No I meant (XY)** |

**Tips**

– For more information on supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.

## Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and navigation system

Requirement: the **Navigation** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 171*.

You can say the following commands for entering a destination depending on the selected menu item:

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Opening the list of previous navigation destinations | **Last destinations** |
| Accessing favorites | **Navigation favorites** |
| Selecting the home address | **Home address** or **Drive home** |
| Entering an address with guidance from the system | **Enter address** > *follow the system prompts* |
| Individual commands for entering a destination | **Enter country/state** / **Enter city** / **Enter ZIP code** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number** |
| Making a correction while entering a destination | **Correction** |
| Navigating to a contact | **Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to contact**, for example **Drive me to "John Smith"** |
| Navigating to a specific address for a contact | **Navigate to contact (XY) business** / **private**, for example “Navigate to John Smith private” |
| Navigating to favorites | **Navigation favorites** > **Line (XY)** / *Line contents* > *Start route guidance when prompted* |

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Starting route guidance with an address card open | **Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address** |
| Entering a new destination/stopover when route guidance is active | **Enter address** > *enter the desired address when prompted* > *confirm the new destination/stopover if prompted* |
| Starting route guidance after entering a destination | **Start route guidance** |
| Canceling current route guidance | **Cancel route guidance** |
| Calculating alternative routes | **Calculate alternative routes** |
| Entering a point of interest by selecting a search area with guidance from the system | **Point of interest** > **Change search area** > *category or subcategory when prompted*, for example “restaurant” |
| Destination input categories | **Audi Service** / **Train station** / **Airport** / **Hotel** / **Hospital** / **Parking** / **Rest area** / **Restaurant** / **Gas station** *etc.* |
| Search areas for entering points of interest | **Nearby** / **Along the route** / **Near destination** / **Near stopover** / **In new city** / **In a new state/country** |
| Entering an online destination* | **Online destination (XY)**, for example “**Online destination "Lakeview Hotel"**” |
| Correcting data input | **No I meant (XY)** |
| Closing the full-screen command list | **Close** |

Requirement: you must be in the **Navigation** or **Map** menu. You can say the following commands for more settings in Navigation:

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| General map options | **Map** / **Day map** / **Night map** / **Automatically change map color** |
| Map type | **2D heading up map** / **2D north up map** / **3D map** / **Destination map** / **Overview map** / **Standard map*** / **Google Earth map***[a)b)] |
| Showing the route list | **Route list** |
| Showing the remaining distance/ time when route guidance is active | **Destination information** |
| Speed limit prompt | **How fast can I drive here?** |
| Setting voice guidance for active route guidance | **Voice guidance on** \| **Voice guidance off** \| **Voice guidance shortened** \| **Voice guidance complete** \| **Voice guidance traffic** |
| Blocking a certain section on the route | **Block route for (XY) meters/kilometers/yards/miles** / **Block next route** / **Avoid next section of route** |

a) Provider at time of printing.

b) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

**Tips**

– Destinations may have to be spelled when entered, depending on which region you are in and which menu language you have selected. ▶

– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.

## Radio

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the **Radio** must already be open.

You can say the following commands depending on the selected frequency band:

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Selecting the frequency band | **FM*** / **SiriusXM*** / **FM** / **AM** |
| Selecting a station from the station list | **Channel (XY)** / **Frequency (XY)** |
| Selecting a station from favorites/ presets | **Radio presets** > **Line (XY)** |
| Setting the frequency | **Frequency (XY)** / **Frequency (XY) HD 1** |
| Correcting data input | **No I meant (XY)** |
| Closing the full-screen command list | **Close** |

## Media

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: you must be in the **Media** menu.

You can say the following commands depending on the active media:

| Function | Say: |
|---|---|
| Selecting a source directly | **Jukebox*** / **CD** / **DVD** / **SD card 1** / **SD card 2** / **Audi music interface*** / **iPhone*** / **USB*** / **Bluetooth*** / **Wi-Fi*** / **Medium (XY)**, for example “John's player” |
| Selecting audio/video* files in the Jukebox* | **Media favorites** / **Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Videos** |
| Selecting audio files on an iPod (source: Audi music interface*) | **Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Composers** / **Podcasts** / **Audio books** |
| Navigating within a folder structure/list | **Folder up** / **Line (XY)** |
| Selecting shuffle | **Shuffle on** / **Shuffle off** |
| Correcting data input | **No I meant (XY)** |
| Closing the full-screen command list | **Close** |

# External voice operation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and external voice operation

Requirement:

The ignition and the MMI must be switched on.

No phone call is in progress.

The parking aid as well as the Audi voice recognition system must not be active. ▶

A cell phone must be connected to the MMI with the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 177*.

The cell phone being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally.

- **Switching on**: press and *hold* the button on the multifunction steering wheel* and say the desired command after the external speech dialog begins.
- **Continuing/resuming the dialog**: the system remains ready to use for a short time after ending the dialog. You can start a new external dialog during this time. Press the button if needed, and say a new command. **Or**: select and confirm **Resume** on the MMI control panel.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: select and confirm **Cancel** on the MMI control panel.

### Tips

– There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.
– This function depends on the cell phone used. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide.
– AUDI AG simply provides access to control your cell phone with voice operation and does not take any responsibility for the contents and commands within the external voice control.

# Telephone

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

*To make phone calls in your vehicle using the MMI, connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth.*

### Handsfree

After you have connected your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth, you can use the handsfree system and operate telephone functions through your MMI. You can make calls using the antenna on your cell phone.

**WARNING**

- Medical experts warn that cell phones can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of about 8 inches (20 cm) between the cell phone antenna and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the cell phone in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the cell phone off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use the voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 170* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. It may take longer to dial the number or the system may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- Switch your cell phone off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 154, Traffic safety information*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

**Tips**

- The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It can also be affected by local conditions and interference with other devices.
- To learn which Bluetooth connections and which of the functions in your cell phone are supported, check with your cell phone service provider or the database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.

## Setup

### Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

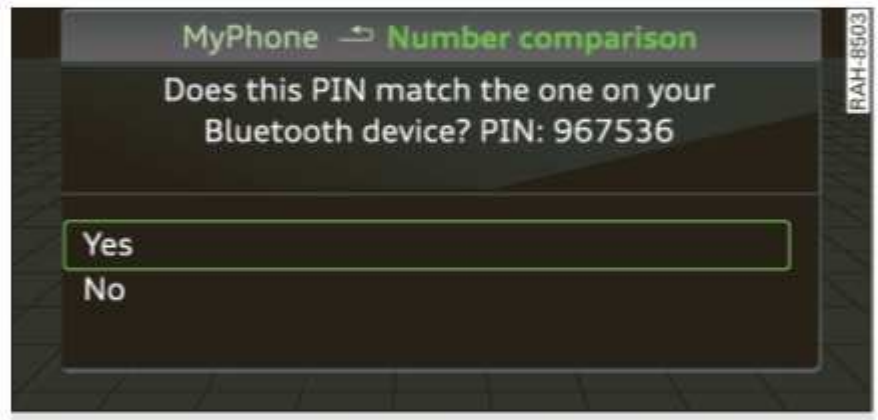



**Fig. 173** Displaying the PIN for entering in the cell phone

#### Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth settings must be open on your cell phone during the connection setup.

The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 246* and cell phone must be switched on.

The cell phone to be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must not be connected to a cell phone.

#### Connecting a cell phone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect mobile device** > **Find new devices** > **Next**. The available Bluetooth devices are shown in the Infotainment system display. **Or** select: MENU ▶

button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 244*.

- ▸ Select and confirm the desired cell phone from the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.
- ▸ The MMI generates a PIN for the connection setup ⇨ *fig. 173*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Yes**.
- ▸ Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone. **Or**: when the PIN is displayed on your cell phone, confirm the PIN on your cell phone and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may have to confirm downloading the directory separately.

### After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, information about the connected profiles will appear. You can also change the profiles later. Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 244*.

In addition, the cell phone contacts are automatically loaded in the MMI directory. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

You can also make your connected cell phone the default phone by selecting **Set as default telephone** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 246*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

**Tips**

- Making phone calls through the MMI is only possible using the **Handsfree** Bluetooth profile.
- You can apply additional settings to connected mobile devices using the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 244*.
- You can also search for the MMI in your cell phone using the Bluetooth device search.
- You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when the Bluetooth function is switched on, they are within range and the ignition is switched on. The last connected cell phone is given first priority.
- Authorizing the MMI connection in your cell phone will make automatic connection possible.
- Pay attention to any system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may also need to download the directory and confirm access to your text messages separately.
- When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the cell phone will automatically disconnect. Depending on your cell phone, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your cell phone and you can continue the call on your phone.
- You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide. For information on using the telephone, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Applies to: vehicles without secondary phone: Several cell phones can be paired to the MMI, but only one cell phone can be actively connected to the MMI.
- Applies to: vehicles without secondary phone: If a Bluetooth device is already connected to the MMI, it will be disconnected when another device connects to the MMI.

## Operating two telephones through the MMI

*You can connect two cell phones to the MMI, for example your business cell phone as the primary phone and your private cell phone as the secondary phone. You can be reached in your vehicle through both cell phones.*

The first connected cell phone is displayed as the primary phone in the MMI. The second cell phone is connected as the secondary phone.

The directory from the connected primary phone will always be displayed. If you would like to use the directory from the secondary phone, you must switch the primary and secondary phone ⇨ *page 179*.

### Connecting a cell phone as the primary phone

Connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth. The first connected cell phone is displayed as the **Primary phone** in the MMI.

See ⇨ *page 177, Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth*.

### Connecting a cell phone as the secondary phone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI as the primary phone.

Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Connect secondary telephone**.

See ⇨ *page 177, Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth*.

Example: you have connected your business cell phone to the MMI as the primary phone and your private cell phone as the secondary phone. To be able to call contacts from your private cell phone directory, you must switch the primary and secondary phone, since the directory from the primary phone is always displayed.

### Switching the primary and secondary phone

Requirement: a primary phone and a secondary phone must be connected.

**Switch primary and second. phone**: select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Switch primary and second. phone**.

#### Tips

- Please note that only the directory from the primary phone is always displayed.
- To view if your cell phone is connected as the primary or secondary phone, go to the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 244*. **Or**: the device name of the connected primary phone is shown in the **Telephone** menu (such as myPhone).
- If the primary phone does not connect automatically to the MMI when the ignition is switched on, for example because it is out of the vehicle range or the Bluetooth function is switched off, then a previously paired secondary phone is automatically connected as the primary phone.
- You can send and receive messages on your primary phone as well as on your secondary phone ⇨ *page 180, fig. 174*. You do not need to switch your primary phone and secondary phone for this.
- You can also make your connected cell phone the default phone by selecting **Set as default telephone** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 246*.

# Using the telephone

## Opening the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

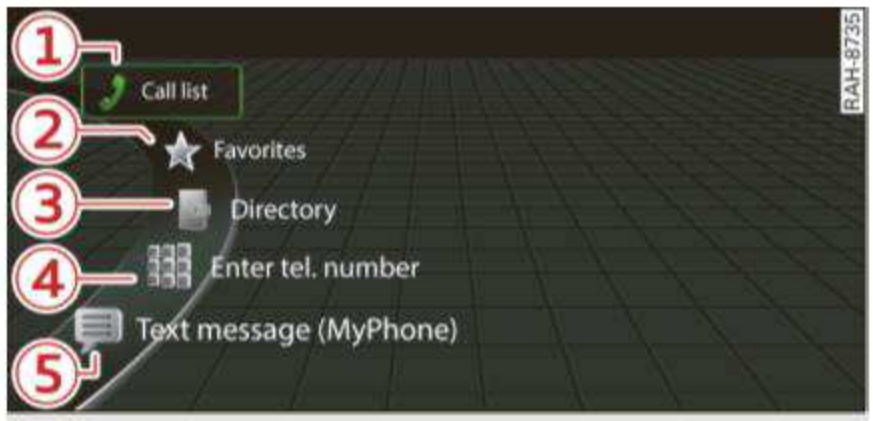



**Fig. 174** Example: telephone functions in selection menu

**Fig. 175** Example: additional telephone functions in selection menu

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 177*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

The following phone functions are available ⇨ *fig. 174*/⇨ *fig. 175*:

① Call list ..... 180
② Favorites ..... 182
③ Directory ..... 186
④ Enter number ..... 180
⑤ Text message (myPhone)*/Text message (secondary phone)* .... 183
⑥ E-mail (myPhone)*/E-mail (secondary phone)* ..... 184

The device name for your cell phone is displayed in the **Telephone** menu, for example text message (myPhone) ⇨ *fig. 175*.

## Dialing a phone number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

**Fig. 176** Number speller

**Fig. 177** Dialing a phone number from the call list

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

### Call list

Requirement: the call list must contain a phone number.

Turn the control knob to display the call list.

Select and confirm the desired telephone number from the recent calls list.

Call list symbols ⇨ *fig. 177*:

① Missed calls
② Dialed numbers
③ Accepted calls

Select: *a contact from the list* > right control button.

– **Call**: call the selected contact.
– **Connect secondary telephone*/Switch primary and second. phone***: see ⇨ *page 179*.
– **Edit phone number before calling**: edit a phone number before dialing it. Select and confirm **OK** to edit. **Or**: press the left control button to return without editing.
– **Send text message**: write a text message to the selected contact. ▸

– **Delete call list**: select and confirm if you would like to **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.
– **Store as favorite**: store the selected contact as a favorite.
– **Show contact details**: see ⇨ *page 186*.
– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 244*.
– **Bluetooth settings**: see ⇨ *page 246*.
– **Online settings**: see ⇨ *page 246*.
– **Wi-Fi settings**: see ⇨ *page 195, Wi-Fi hotspot*.
– **Telephone settings**: see ⇨ *page 187*.

### Favorites

Requirement: a phone number or contact must be stored as a favorite ⇨ *page 182*.

Select and confirm a favorite in the favorites list.

### Directory

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

Select and confirm a phone number from the directory ⇨ *page 186*.

### Enter number

– **Entering a phone number as a sequence of numbers**: enter the number using the number speller ⇨ *fig. 176*.
– **Entering the phone number as a sequence of letters**: select and confirm ABC above the number speller. Enter a sequence of letters using the letter speller, for example *AUDISERVICE*.
– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm ✆. **Or**: push the control knob down. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Deleting individual characters**: select and confirm ⌫.
– **Deleting all characters entered at once**: turn the control knob with the character selection to ⌫ and press and hold the control knob. **Or**: select the right control button > **Clear input field**.

## Accepting/ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

– **Accepting a call**: select and confirm **Answer**.
– **Declining a call**: select and confirm **Decline**.
– **Muting the active call**: select and confirm **Mute**.
– **Ending a phone call/cancel dialing**: select and confirm **End call**.

**Caller information**: the *name*, *phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the Infotainment system display depending on if the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted. A picture may also be displayed, depending on whether you have assigned a picture to a contact in your directory and if it was transferred to your MMI. You can find out if your cell phone supports this function from your cell phone network provider, your cell phone owner's manual or at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.

**Tips**

– The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.
– Missed calls are displayed with a symbol in the status line of the Infotainment system display ⑨ ⇨ *page 163, fig. 168*.

## During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

▸ **End call**: you can end a phone call.
▸ **Send tone sequence**: you can enter tone sequences (**DTMF**) directly using the number speller and send to the other person on the call.
▸ **Other call options**: press the right control button.

The following options are possible during a call depending on the cell phone being used and the type of connection:

– Answering an additional call: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Answer** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call. If you select **Decline**, the incoming call will be declined.
– Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold: select **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call. ▶

– Muting the incoming call: select and confirm **Mute**.
– **Additional call**: select: **Find contact** > **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > *an entry from the list*.

**Mute**: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You can hear the other person. To turn the microphone back on, select and confirm **Unmute**.

**Hold call/Resume held call**: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again. To resume the call, select and confirm the call you would like to resume.

**Transfer call to mobile device***: select and confirm **Transfer call to mobile device** to transfer the existing call from the MMI to your cell phone.

**Switch to hands-free mode***: Requirement: you must have a phone call in progress on your cell phone. Select and confirm **Switch to hands-free mode** to transfer the call from your cell phone back to the MMI.

**Swap call**: alternate between two phone calls while one of the calls is on hold. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A phone call on hold can be resumed using the right control button > **Resume**.

**Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 244*.

**Telephone settings**: see ⇨ *page 187*.

**Tips**

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the *call waiting* function in your cell phone must be switched on when using the **Handsfree** profile.
– You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide.
– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the cell phone will automatically disconnect. Depending on your cell phone, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your cell phone and you can continue the call on your phone.
– The display of an incoming phone call in the Infotainment system display may still be visible for a few seconds after a call is answered/ignored depending on the cell phone in use.

## Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Enter number** > Enter emergency call number (for example, 911) > **OK**.

**WARNING**

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

**Tips**

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

# Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

*Up to 50 contacts, in addition to the voicemail number, can be stored in any order in the favorites list.*

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

### Storing an existing phone number as a favorite:

– Select and confirm **Call list/Directory**.
– Select a contact or phone number from the list.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.
– Enter a name for the favorite or select a suggestion.
– Select and confirm **Save**.

### Renaming stored favorites

– Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*. ▶

– Select the right control button > **Rename favorite**.

### Moving stored favorites

– Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
– Select the right control button > **Move favorite**.
– Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.

### Deleting a stored favorite

– Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
– Select the right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

# Messages

## Text messages

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

*Depending on the cell phone being used and the cell phone network contract, you can receive and send text messages using the MMI.*

### Requirement

A cell phone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth MAP (Message Access Profile) ⇨ *page 177*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)***.

### Write new text message

Select and confirm **Write new text message**.

– **Using a template**: select and confirm the desired template from the list.
– **Writing your own text***: select and confirm **Do not use template**. Enter text using the MMI touch control pad* or the letter speller.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

### Inbox

Displays all received text messages.

### Sent

Displays all sent text messages.

### Outbox

Displays all text messages to be sent.

### Drafts

Displays all text messages that have not yet been sent and stored text messages.

**Tips**

– Please note that you may have to activate the receiving and sending of text messages in your cell phone depending on the SIM card being used (for example, when using a Multi-SIM). You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider or from your cell phone user guide.
– For more information on supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– You need a cell phone with Message Access Profile that also supports the sending function to be able to send text messages through the MMI.

## Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

### Storing a text message as a template

Ten text message templates are stored in the MMI. You can save up to ten additional templates.

– Create a text message.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

### Resume last text message

The last edited text message can be resumed.

### Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected message in the **Inbox**. ▶

### Forward

The selected text message can be forwarded to a different recipient.

### Send again*

The selected text message can be resent.

### Delete this text message*

The selected text message can be deleted.

### Read out[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open text message.

### Text messaging settings*

To display when a new text message is received, enable the **Text message notifications**. New text messages are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

### Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 244*.

### Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 195*.

### Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 187*.

**Tips**

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also deleted in the cell phone automatically.

## E-mail*

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

*Depending on the type of cell phone being used, you can receive and send e-mails through the MMI.*

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth MAP (Message Access Profile) ⇨ *page 177*. You can find out in your cell phone owner's manual if your cell phone supports this function.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **e-mail (myPhone)/e-mail (secondary phone)***.

### Write new e-mail

Select and confirm **Write new e-mail**.

– **Using a template**: select and confirm the *desired template from the list*.
– **Writing your own text***: select and confirm **Do not use template**. Enter text using the MMI touch control pad* or the letter speller.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

### Inbox

All received e-mails are displayed.

### Sent

All sent e-mails are displayed.

### Outbox

All e-mails that will be sent are displayed.

### Drafts

All saved e-mails that have not been sent yet are displayed.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

**Tips**

– For more information on supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– To ensure that your sent e-mails are received, connect your cell phone to the Wi-Fi hotspot* in the vehicle so that the e-mail app on your cell phone continues to have Internet access. If you are still not receiving e-mails even though you have a successful connection, then contact your e-mail service provider or your cell phone service provider.

1) Not available in all languages.

## Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **e-mail (myPhone)/e-mail (secondary phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

### Store as template

Ten e-mail templates are stored in the MMI. You can save up to ten additional templates.

– Create an e-mail.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

### Resume last edited e-mail

The last e-mail in progress can be resumed.

### Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox**.

### Reply to all*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox** and it will be sent to all of the entered recipients.

### Forward

The selected e-mail can be forwarded to a different recipient.

### Delete this message*

The selected e-mail can be deleted.

### Read out[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open e-mail.

### E-mail settings*

To display when a new e-mail is received, activate the **E-mail notifications**. New e-mails are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

### Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 244*.

### Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 195*.

### Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 187*.

**Tips**

– Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also automatically deleted in the connected cell phone.
– You cannot read any messages while driving.

# Listening to voicemail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > **Voicemail**.

– **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Dialing the voicemail number**: select and confirm **Voicemail**.

**Tips**

– This service must be set up and activated in advance by the cell phone service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– The voicemail number depends on the cell phone service provider.

1) Not available in all languages.

# Directory

## Opening the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

*After connecting the cell phone, the contacts in it are automatically imported into the MMI.*

**Fig. 178** Directory

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.

– **Calling a contact**: select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for the selected contact are displayed. To make the call, select and confirm a phone number.
– **Free text search for a contact**: see ⇨ *page 162*.

Contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and can be sorted by first or last name ⇨ *page 188*, **Sort order**.

The directory can be opened through the **Telephone** menu as well as through the **Navigation*** menu.

### Tips

– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 162*.
– Check for a possible request to synchronize on your cell phone. Requests to synchronize the directory must be confirmed so that your cell phone contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
– The contact display in the MMI depends on the cell phone used. For more information on supported cell phones, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Please note that only the directory from the primary phone* is always displayed.
– The contacts from the cell phone may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.

## Free text search for a contact

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- To limit the search, enter the initials of the contact being searched with each initial separated by a space in the input field. Enter additional letters if necessary.
- Select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for the selected contact are displayed.
- To make the call, select and confirm a phone number.

### Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.
– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 162*.

## Showing contact details*

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

*You can show contact details depending on the vehicle equipment.*

**Fig. 179** Showing contact details

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.
▸ Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

– **Calling**: select and confirm the desired telephone number.
– **Navigating**: to start navigation, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Press the right control button to open additional options for the contact details.

### Add destination

To start navigation, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

### Store as favorite

See ⇨ *page 182, Favorites*.

### Send text message*

You can send a text message ⇨ *page 183* to the selected contact.

### Delete contact

The selected contact can be deleted.

**Tips**

– Contacts edited in the MMI directory cannot be automatically updated in the connected cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone contacts directly in the cell phone.
– Only the contacts in the local MMI memory can be edited or deleted.

## Importing and exporting contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

*Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory or exported.*

Requirement: an SD card must be inserted in one of the SD card readers* ⇨ *page 224* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 229* or the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment services* must be met ⇨ *page 190*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ Select: right control button > **Directory settings**.

– **Importing contacts from a storage device**: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
– **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
– **Selecting all contacts at once to import/export**: select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > **All** > **Start import/Start export**.

**Tips**

– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.
– For additional information on the myAudi account, visit www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory.
– A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be imported. You can check the directory memory capacity at any time ⇨ *page 188*.
– Never save important data on memory cards or USB storage devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.
– Contacts that were downloaded from a cell phone cannot be exported.
– There should be no other files or folders on the storage medium containing the contacts to be imported.

# Additional settings

## Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Telephone settings**. ▶

### Call options*

**Call forwarding**: you can switch the forwarding of incoming calls to your voicemail or to another phone number on and off. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Check status**.

**Call waiting**: you are alerted to an incoming call during a phone call when the function is switched on ☑. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Check status**.

**Send own telephone number**: sending your phone number with an outgoing call can be activated and deactivated. With the **Network-dependent** setting, the setting listed in the contract with the cell phone service provider is used. The settings only apply to the **Telephone** menu in the MMI. Please note that the settings on your cell phone will apply after disconnecting the Bluetooth connection. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Check status**.

### Ringtone and volume settings[1)]

Using the **Mute telephone** function, you can switch the ringtone playback through the MMI speaker on and off. You can play the ringtones using the **Ringtone** function. Select and confirm an entry from the list. For the **Ringtone volume**/**Message volume** settings, see ⇨ *page 248*. The **Microphone input level** can be adjusted during a phone call using the control knob.

**Tips**

– Several cell phones can be paired to the MMI, but only two* cell phones can be actively connected.
– To delete all paired Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 244*.

## Additional options

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button.

### Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 244*.

### Bluetooth settings*

See ⇨ *page 246*.

### Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 246*.

### Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 195, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

## Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory** > right control button > **Directory settings**.

### Memory capacity

Shows the **Memory capacity** for the directory.

You can manage up to 17,000 contacts with the directory. You can load up to 4,000 contacts from your cell phone into each directory. You can also import up to 1,000 contacts from a storage device.

### Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to **Last name** or **First name**.

### Import contacts/Export contacts

See ⇨ *page 187*.

### Download directory

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your cell phone contacts. Depending on the cell phone, the Bluetooth connection may need to be disconnected and reconnected to update the contacts.

### Hide contacts without phone number

When this function is switched on, grayed-out contacts that have no phone numbers stored for them will be hidden in the directory.

1) Depends on the connected cell phone.

# Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Pairing** the cell phone to the MMI failed. | Check if the requirements for pairing a cell phone have been met ⇨ *page 177*.<br>**Or:** check if you accidentally declined the pairing setup PIN on your cell phone. If necessary, repeat the pairing process ⇨ *page 177*. |
| After pairing, **not all contacts/no contacts** are loaded in the MMI. | Avoid using special characters in names.<br>Avoid using contact groups on your cell phone. |
| Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available. | The telephone functions depend on the cell phone service provider and the cell phone you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider, in your cell phone user guide or in the database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth. |
| Some **telephone functions** are switched off or not available, even though the cell phone is supported. | On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible or the cell phone Bluetooth function may be deactivated. You can obtain more information from your system administrator. |

# Audi connect (Infotainment)

## Introduction

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

With Audi connect Infotainment services, online information is transmitted directly to the vehicle and then integrated.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect Infotainment services when road and traffic conditions permit. Always read and follow the notes in ⇨ *page 154, Traffic safety information*.

## Setup

### Requirements for Audi connect (Infotainment)

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

The data connection for Audi connect Infotainment services is made through an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) that is equipped in the vehicle.

The following requirements must be met to use the embedded SIM card:

– You have already registered at www.audiusa.com/myaudi and assigned a vehicle.
– You have also already logged in to your myAudi account under **Audi connect plan** for the embedded SIM card and accepted the terms of use given there. For additional information, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Then your Audi connect Infotainment services are activated and can be used in your vehicle.

**Tips**

– After the free subscription has ended or the data volume has been used up, data packets can be purchased for the use of Audi connect Infotainment services. You can find additional information about fees and purchasing at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– Read this chapter before operating ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.

## Configuration through myAudi

### Audi connect (Infotainment) configuration

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time.

– If you do not have a personal myAudi account yet, you can register online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
– Activate/configure the Audi connect (Infotainment) services you would like for your vehicle in your myAudi account.
– For some Audi connect Infotainment services, you may also have to enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN when accessing services in the MMI to connect your vehicle to myAudi.

For detailed information on configuration, visit www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

### Logging into myAudi in the vehicle

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

*To use some Audi connect Infotainment services (such as Twitter*), you must first connect your vehicle to myAudi to transfer your personal settings from your myAudi account.*

**Fig. 180** Logging into myAudi

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Log in**. ▶

- ▸ Enter your myAudi user data. **Or**: enter your eight-digit myAudi PIN.
- ▸ Confirm your entry with **OK**.

Then you can open your personal settings from your myAudi account in your vehicle.

**Tips**

You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account. For additional information, see www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

# Opening Audi connect (Infotainment)

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

**Fig. 181** Audi connect (Infotainment) home page

- ▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect**.
- ▸ If necessary, confirm the note displayed with **Accept**.

A list of all of the available Audi connect Infotainment services is shown in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 181*.

You can also filter the Audi connect Infotainment services by category:

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > left control button > for example, **Navigation** for the Audi connect Infotainment services in the navigation menu ⇨ *page 193*.

# Audi connect Infotainment services

## Basic functions

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

If available, functions specific to certain services are in the selection menu of that particular Audi connect Infotainment service ⇨ *page 156*. The basic functions are in the corresponding options menu:

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > *desired Audi connect Infotainment service* > right control button.

Depending on the Audi connect Infotainment service selected, the following basic functions are available:

### Save as preview*

You can also see a preview of the selected Audi connect Infotainment services on the Audi connect Infotainment home page (1) ⇨ *page 191, fig. 181*.

### Show on map

You can show selected contents on the map and use them for route guidance.

### Log in

See ⇨ *page 190, Logging into myAudi in the vehicle*.

### Read out[1)]

You can allow the MMI to read out the selected contents.

### Call*

If a phone number was assigned to an entry, you can call the number, for example to reserve tickets.

### Start route guidance

If a city was added to an entry, such as for **City Events**, you can use it as a navigation destination. Route guidance starts immediately.

### Change search area

The set search area can be changed at any time. Additional information on search areas can be found under ⇨ *page 204*. ▸

1) Not available in all languages.

### Closing Audi connect Infotainment services

Regardless of the function selected, you can close an Audi connect Infotainment service at any time and return to the home screen ⇨ *page 191, fig. 181*.

## Parking information

Applies to: vehicles with parking information

Information on parking locations and fees in the selected search area (for example **Nearby**).

▸ Select and confirm **Parking information**.

You can use the right control button to sort the parking locations **By distance** or **By availability**.

## Travel information

Applies to: vehicles with travel information

Information on attractions in the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Travel information**.
▸ Select and confirm an attraction to display the details.

## Fuel prices

Applies to: vehicles with fuel prices

Information on gas stations with the lowest fuel prices for your vehicle in the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Fuel prices**.

You can use the right control button to sort the fuel prices **By price** or **By distance**.

## Weather

Applies to: vehicles with weather information

Information on current weather conditions as well as weather forecasts for the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

You can also display the current weather conditions on the map, for example.
▸ Select: left control button > *an entry*.

## Flight information

Applies to: vehicles with flight information

Information on flights and current arrival/departure times in the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Flight information**.

## City events

Applies to: vehicles with City events

Information on events in various categories in the desired search area.

▸ Select **City Events** > left control button > *category*.

## Online news

Applies to: vehicles with online news

You can check the current headlines of your favorite publications in the MMI.

Requirement: your myAudi account must be subscribed to newsfeeds and your vehicle must be connected to myAudi ⇨ *page 190*.

▸ Select: **Online news** > *desired newsfeed* > *a headline*. The entire news article will be displayed.

### Tips

If you have not subscribed to any personal newsfeeds in your myAudi account, pre-configured newsfeeds will be displayed.

## Twitter

Applies to: vehicles with Twitter

*You can access the most important functions in your Twitter account through your MMI.*

Requirement:

You must have connected your myAudi account with Twitter. You can find additional information for this online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

You must have connected your vehicle with myAudi ⇨ *page 190*.

▸ Select **Twitter** > left control button > *desired function* (for example, **Trends**). ▶

The following categories can be selected in the **Twitter** menu:

– **My tweets**: News Feed and the Tweets you have posted are listed.
– **Home**: the Tweets for everyone you follow are displayed.
– **Trends**: topics on Twitter that are currently popular within a country.

Different functions are available depending on the Twitter category you have selected:

– **New tweet**: you can post a new tweet using pre-made templates or using myAudi templates that you have created yourself.
– **Refresh**: the selected Twitter function is refreshed.
– **Favorite**: mark a Tweet as favorite to show you liked it.
– **Retweet**: you can quote a Tweet to share it with others.

**Tips**

– Other settings such as account, language, Tweet security and location settings *cannot* be changed in the MMI. These changes must be made on the Twitter website.
– You can only connect *one* Twitter account with your myAudi account.
– Audi connect (Infotainment) makes it possible to access Twitter. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on Twitter.

## Travel (travel guide)

Applies to: vehicles with Travel (travel guide)

*You can use the Audi MMI connect app to store points of interest on your mobile device (such as a smartphone) and then use them for route guidance in the MMI.*

Requirement:

The **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.

You must be logged into your myAudi account in the **Audi MMI connect** app and you must have selected your vehicle.

The Wi-Fi function on your mobile device and on the MMI must be switched on.

The MMI must be connected to the network.

▸ Press: MENU button > **Audi connect** > left control button > **Information** *category* > **Travel**.

After opening the travel guide, travel tips in your area will be displayed including current ratings as well as the corresponding category.

▸ Press the left control button to change the category (such as bars nearby).

**WARNING**

– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 273, Front airbags*.

**Tips**

– Units of measurement, language settings and time are shown in the Infotainment system display based on how they were set in the MMI system settings ⇨ *page 243*.

## Audi connect (Infotainment) in navigation

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > left control button > **Navigation**.

The following Audi connect Infotainment services are currently available: ▶

– Navigation with **satellite map**[1] ⇨ *page 213*.
– **Point of Interest (POI) online search with voice recognition** (such as restaurants): plan route guidance using the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 204* and the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 170*.
– Set up destinations in your MMI using your **myAudi account** or the **satellite map view** [1] ⇨ *page 213*.
– **Online traffic information**: receive up-to-the-minute traffic information about accidents, road construction and other incidents ⇨ *page 216*.
– **Map update**: import navigation map updates directly to your vehicle using an SD card or as an online update ⇨ *page 214*.

**Tips**

– For the **map update** Audi connect Infotainment service via SD card, check the current software version in your vehicle and then check www.audiusa.com/myaudi to see if a newer version is available. You can also have the new navigation data installed by an Audi dealer, which can be done for an additional charge.
– You can find additional information about the **map update** online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

## Audi connect (Infotainment) in Media menu

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Entertainment**.

– **Online media and Internet radio**: offers access to different online media services as well as Internet radio and operation through the MMI using the **Audi MMI connect** app.

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player

– **Wi-Fi audio player**: you can access the media center through a Wi-Fi connected media player (such as a smartphone) ⇨ *page 227*.

**WARNING**

It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

**Tips**

– Also see the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.
– For more information on the Wi-Fi audio player and supported devices, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## Additional options

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

The following options are available in the Audi connect Infotainment services overview:

### About Audi connect

Here you will find legal information for Audi connect (Infotainment) usage.

### Log in*

See ⇨ *page 190, Logging into myAudi in the vehicle*.

### Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 244*.

### License subscription

The validity and expiration date of your licenses are displayed. When the function is switched on ▶

[1] AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

☑, the message **Warning before subscription expires** will display to warn you that your license is about to expire.

### Refresh

The content of the selected Audi connect Infotainment service or the entire Audi connect (Infotainment) list is updated.

### Data privacy

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Location and personal data are transmitted when using Audi connect Infotainment services. If you do not want this information to be transmitted, activate data privacy.

- **Activate privacy**: the data connection is switched off. Some Audi connect Infotainment services are not available.
- **Deactivate data privacy**: if the data connection is switched off, you can switch on the data connection for the use of all Audi connect Infotainment services. Select and confirm **Activate data connection**.
- **Off**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated. An Internet connection for Wi-Fi devices is not possible.

**WARNING**

- To reduce the risk of an accident, use the Audi connect Infotainment services with a Wi-Fi hotspot only in the rear seat when the vehicle is in motion, or only when the vehicle is stationary.
- It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 273, Front airbags*.
- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.

## Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

*You can use the MMI as a Wi-Fi hotspot to connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices to the Internet. While driving, restricted use of unsecured, light, small wireless devices is only possible from the rear of the vehicle.*

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

The following settings can be selected:

### Wi-Fi

The MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is deactivated at the factory. Switch the Wi-Fi hotspot to **Hotspot** before establishing a connection between your vehicle and your Wi-Fi device.

- **On**: the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is active and visible to other devices. You can connect your Wi-Fi device to the MMI and use the Internet connection if necessary.

**Note**

- Under some conditions, certain mobile devices and operating systems may automatically switch from your vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot to the device's mobile data connection. In that event, standard text and data usage rates would apply while the device's mobile data connection is in use. Please refer to documentation provided by your mobile device's manufacture and your data carrier for details, related terms and privacy statement.
- You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

**Tips**

- In vehicles without Audi connect (Infotainment)*, the use of the Wi-Fi hotspot is only possible for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data ▶

connection to the Internet cannot be established.
– For additional information about the Audi connect Infotainment services, visit www.audiusa.com/myaudi.

# Configuring the data connection

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

*The data connection for Audi connect Infotainment services is pre-configured at the factory. However, if a configuration should be necessary, you can adjust the following settings.*

- Select: MENU button > right control button > **Connection manager**.
- Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

Using the **Data connection settings** menu, you can set when an Internet connection should be made. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect Infotainment service no longer requires any data.

The following settings can be selected:

### Audi connect (MMI)

With the **Audi connect (MMI)** function, you can **Allow** or **Deny** the use of Audi connect Infotainment services if the connection is set to **No request** or **With request**.

### Wi-Fi devices*

Using the **Wi-Fi devices** function, you can **Allow** or **Deny** a connection to the Internet.

**WARNING**

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 273, Front airbags*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

# Audi connect (Infotainment) general information

## Audi connect Infotainment services

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

**Tips**

– You can only use services supported by Audi connect (Infotainment) if you have the optional MMI Navigation plus equipment with MMI touch* and Audi connect (Infotainment).
– Use of the LTE* mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your cell phone service provider for additional information.
– Usage of Audi connect Infotainment services depends on the availability of services through third party providers.
– Audi connect Infotainment services are only available within the cell phone network coverage from your cell phone service provider.
– Audi connect Infotainment services are available in the USA. Audi connect Infotainment services are currently not available in Canada or in Mexico.
– Also read the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 177, Telephone*.
– Availability, scope, providers, screen display and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates. For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.
– An initial registration/activation on the myAudi platform at www.audiusa.com/ ▶

myaudi is required to use individual services. You can contact an authorized Audi dealer or Audi connect (Infotainment) customer service at (877) 505-AUDI (2834) to receive information on options for expanding your usage and any costs that may result.

– The Audi connect Infotainment services are a Wi-Fi/Internet-based system. If the system does not function correctly even though all of the requirements are met, please try again later or contact Audi connect (Infotainment) customer service at (877) 505-AUDI (2834).
– For detailed information on Audi connect (Infotainment) and the Terms of Use, refer to www.audiusa.com.

## Data protection

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

### Tips

– Your privacy is important to us.
– AUDI AG collects, processes, shares and transmits your personal information in accordance with legal regulations in order to ensure proper function and availability of the individual Audi connect Infotainment services. You can view the complete, current and valid Audi connect (Infotainment) data protection policy in your MMI. The myAudi platform is available for to you to activate additional Audi connect Infotainment services and to transfer data to your vehicle, among other services. A one-time registration is required to establish a connection to your vehicle. For this purpose, AUDI AG collects, processes, transmits and uses your required personal information as required for you to use the services provided by AUDI AG. Your information is not distributed to third parties. Using your cell phone with your myAudi platform allows you to transmit data for your Audi connect Infotainment services functions to your vehicle and you can allow specific vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.
– By activating special information services that are part of your Audi connect (Infotainment) portfolio, you can use these functions directly in your vehicle by entering data to confirm your identity (to use social networks, for example). To do this, the identification information you provided is forwarded with the request to the respective service provider. Then you can access your personal content using a secure connection. This content is displayed in the vehicle for your use. Your personal content is not stored within Audi AG. The necessary connection information is processed and used for providing services and the proper function of the services in accordance with applicable legal guidelines.
– You can find additional information in your MMI in the options menu for the selected Audi connect Infotainment service and also online at www.audiusa.com.
– By providing Audi connect Infotainment services, Audi of America is authorized to collect, process, transmit and transfer information about you and your vehicle. Additional information can also be found in your MMI in the options menu for the selected Audi connect Infotainment service.
– Information on our data protection measures in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect (Infotainment) application can be found in the application's privacy policy. For additional information about the www.audiusa.com/myaudi website or other applications, websites or online services connected to Audi, visit www.audiusa.com/privacy.

# Troubleshooting

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Audi connect Infotainment services**: individual Audi connect Infotainment services are grayed out or not available. | Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated/configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi. |
| **Wi-Fi hotspot**: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi. | Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it. |

# Audi connect e-tron services

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect e-tron services

With Audi connect e-tron services [1], you can access various information or control individual functions remotely using mobile devices (such as a smartphone) or a web portal.

– Trip data ⇨ *page 199*.
– Doors and lights ⇨ *page 199*.
– Vehicle status report ⇨ *page 200*.
– Car Finder ⇨ *page 200*.
– Charging ⇨ *page 200*.
– Climate control ⇨ *page 200*.

**WARNING**

Also read and follow the instructions regarding traffic safety ⇨ *page 154*.

## Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect e-tron services

To use Audi connect e-tron services [1], please note the following:

### Requirements

– An authorized Audi dealer must complete a one-time activation of Audi connect e-tron services for your vehicle before you can register online.
– Then register at etron.audiusa.com. You can use and manage the Audi connect e-tron services there.
– If you require assistance with your Audi connect e-tron services, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Your mobile devices must be compatible.

## Trip data

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect e-tron services

The Driver Information System collects data under certain conditions and sends it to a server.

When data is stored, you can access values such as these using the service:

– driving duration,
– average speed driven,
– distance driven,
– average electric consumption.

## Doors and lights

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect e-tron services

You can access and display the current status of the following vehicle data on your mobile devices without having to be inside the vehicle.

– If the vehicle doors and lids are open/closed,
– Parking lights are on/off.

For additional information on opening and closing the doors or for the vehicle lighting, refer to ⇨ *page 31, Opening and closing* or to ⇨ *page 49, Exterior lighting*.

**Tips**

– If the high-voltage battery is not charged, the amount of access requests is limited to 15 after switching off the ignition. This helps conserve the 12 volt vehicle battery. You cannot control functions or access information if the charge level of the 12 volt vehicle battery is too low.
– If at least two minutes have passed after the last time the ignition was switched off, you can reset the access counter back to "0" as needed after switching the ignition on/off again.

[1] The mobile network service is offered by a service provider. You can obtain more information about your mobile network provider at an authorized Audi dealer. Connected devices are not always 4G-compatible. The availability of a high-speed network may be reduced during peak usage or by your location, the reception, and other factors. Network coverage cannot be guaranteed everywhere. For more information on mobile coverage, see the Audi connect overview from your mobile network provider.

8V2012721BF

# Vehicle status report

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect e-tron services

You can access various vehicle statuses using the services, such as:

– high-voltage battery charge level,
– electric range,
– mileage,
– next inspection.

For additional information, see ⇨ *page 95, Power meter overview* and ⇨ *page 97, Range display*.

**WARNING**

Do not ignore messages and warning or indicator lights that turn on in the vehicle because of the information in the status report. This could lead to break downs in on the road, accidents and serious injuries.

# Car Finder

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect e-tron services

The vehicle collects data under certain conditions and sends it to a server.

When data is stored, you can access values such as these using the service:

– Vehicle location display,
– Display of one's own location,
– Route to your vehicle.

If your mobile device also has a navigation function, you can navigate to your last known parking location.

**Tips**

– The new parking location cannot be determined with this service if the vehicle is moved after shutting the vehicle off and without switching the ignition on and off again, for example when being towed or if the vehicle is stolen.
– If the vehicle is moved and shut off again using the second key, for example, the new parking location is transmitted to the server after switching the ignition off.

# Charging

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect e-tron services

You can control and access the high-voltage battery charging process remotely using these services. You have the following options:

– check the battery charge level,
– start/end the charging process,
– program the charging timer with/without climate control,
– deactivate/activate the charging timer.

For additional information, see ⇨ *page 106, Charging the battery with the Audi e-tron charging system*.

**WARNING**

Only perform charging functions on the high-voltage battery if the vehicle is shut off correctly, is connected to a suitable socket and if the ignition is switched off.

# Temperature control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect e-tron services

You can control the climate control in your vehicle remotely using these services:

– start/end climate control,
– program the timer,
– deactivate/activate the timer.

For additional information, see ⇨ *page 116, Climate control*.

**WARNING**

Only perform the climate control functions if your vehicle was shut off correctly and the ignition is switched off.

# Navigation

## Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents and on alternative routes, if desired.*

**Fig. 182** Diagram: Enter destination menu

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button.

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed after opening navigation. The following information can be displayed in the Infotainment system display:

① Input field for free text search . . . 201
② Home address . . . . . 203
③ Last destinations . . . . . 202
④ Stored favorites . . . . . 203

If you have connected a cell phone to the MMI, your directory contacts will also be listed if they have navigation data assigned to them.

The **Favorites** ④ ⇨ *fig. 182* menu item as well as the directory contacts are only shown in the **Enter destination** menu if you have entered one or more characters using the input field.

**Switching between destination entry and the map**:

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed. **Or**: select the left control button > **Switch to map**.

**WARNING**

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 249, Driving safety*.
– Obey all traffic laws when driving.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

**Note**

– If the driving directions conflict with traffic laws, obey the traffic laws.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the navigation system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

**Tips**

– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or interference caused by trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.

## Entering a destination

### Free text search for destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*With the free text search, you can enter the navigation destination data all at once in any order using the MMI touch control pad* or the letter/number speller (for example, 20 Main St., Los Angeles). Likewise, you can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations or favorites to navigate to the desired address.*

Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

▸ Push the control knob up. The input field is displayed ① ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

– Enter one or more search terms into the input field. ▶

– If available, confirm the input suggestion* to complete the entry or a word suggestion*. See ⇨ *page 161, Letter/number speller*.
– Turn the control knob to the right to change the results list.
– Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

The route displays as an overview in the map. Route guidance is already active.

### Narrowing the search area

All countries/states are selected at the factory for the free text search.

– Select the right control button > **Country/state selection** in the input field ① ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
– Select the country or state (●) that should be searched for in the free text search in order to narrow the number of results and increase the search speed. The selected entry in the country/state selection is stored. **Or**: select **All countries/states**.

**Tips**

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– Up to 50 entries can be stored in the last destinations list.
– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 162*.

## Loading previous destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*Your last destinations are automatically stored and can be loaded directly as a destination.*

Requirement: a destination was already navigated to.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

Your last destination is listed directly in the **Enter destination** menu under the home address and identified with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

– Select and confirm one of the last destinations from the list.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

### Deleting previous destinations

– Select one of the last destinations from the list.
– Select: right control button > **Delete destination** > **Delete this last destination** or **Delete all last destinations**.

The selected destination or all last destinations is/are deleted and no longer displayed in the **Enter destination** menu.

## Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*As an alternative to free text search, you can also enter an address in stages.*

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**.

– **Entering a destination using a country/state**: select and confirm **Country**. Select and confirm a country/state directly from the list. **Or**: search for a country/state using the input field.
– **Entering a destination using the City/ZIP code**: select and confirm **City/ZIP code**. Enter a city or a ZIP code. **Or**: select and confirm a city from the list.
– Select and confirm additional details about the destination such as **Street**, **House number** or **Downtown**.
– **Destination entry using a street intersection***: Requirement: you must enter a street. Select and confirm **Intersection**. Select and confirm a street directly from the list. **Or**: search for a street using the input field.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

## Setting a home address/favorite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*You can quickly and easily start route guidance to your home address using the home address function. Favorites allow easier access to frequently used destinations.*

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

### Setting a home address as the destination

Requirement: a home address must be stored ⇨ *page 207*.

Your **Home address** is shown directly in the **Enter destination** menu ② ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

– Select: *Home address* > **Start route guidance**.

### Setting a favorite as the destination

Requirement: a favorite must be stored as a destination ⇨ *page 208*.

– Enter at least the first three letters of the desired favorite in the free text search input field. The favorites found are shown in the Infotainment system display ④ ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
– Select and confirm the desired entry.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

**Tips**

– Additional settings for the home address can be found under ⇨ *page 207*.
– Additional settings for the favorites can be found under ⇨ *page 208*.

## Transferring a destination from the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*You can navigate directly to destinations in the directory.*

**Fig. 183** Possible directory/contacts

Requirement: an address with navigation data or a navigation destination must already be assigned to a contact ⇨ *page 208, Directory contacts*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

The directory/contacts are shown in alphabetical order and are marked with symbols to indicate the storage location:

① Business address
② Private address
③ Business destination
④ Private destination

– Select and confirm an address or a destination. When you have selected a destination, the route guidance can be started directly.
– Check the address input again when selecting an address.
– Then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Additional directory functions in the navigation system can be found under ⇨ *page 208*.

**Tips**

– Addresses that have been imported from your cell phone into the MMI can also be used as a destination. ▸

– If a contact is grayed out in the directory, this contact has neither a destination nor an address assigned to them.

## Point of interest search

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Points of interest**.

– **Changing the search area**: select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.

The following search categories are available:

**Nearby**: points of interest can be selected from different categories. The points of interest are listed starting from the immediate vicinity of the vehicle up to a radius of approximately 124 miles (200 km).

**Along the route**: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest are located directly along or in the immediate vicinity of the calculated route. The points of interest can likewise be selected from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

**Near destination/Near stopover**: points of interest near a destination or a stopover can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest can likewise be selected from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

**In new city**: select a country/state or search in a new city. Enter the name of the desired city. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function allows you to search for points of interest in any city regardless of the active route guidance or the vehicle position.

– **Search for a point of interest name in the selected search area**: enter the name of the point of interest.
– **Searching for a point of interest in a specific category**: select **Select category**. Select and confirm a category such as **Restaurants**.

### Tips

– Distances to points of interest are displayed as a straight-line distance from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of found points of interest is not resorted when this happens.
– There may be entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely due to their length. Select the corresponding entry from the list. Select: right control button > Show destination details. Detailed information for the selected entry in the list is then displayed.

## Online point of interest search (online search)

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

*You can search for points of interest on the Internet.*

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect (Infotainment) must be met ⇨ *page 190*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area last set is displayed in the input field.

– **Changing the search area**: select: right control button > **Select search area**.
– **Searching for online destinations in the selected search area**: enter a new city/state if necessary. Enter the search term, such as hotel. Press the control knob. Select and confirm an online destination from the list.
– **Searching for online destinations in a specific category**: select and confirm **Select category**. Select and confirm a category such as **Restaurants**.

Find which search areas are available under ⇨ *page 204, Point of interest search*.

You can search for online destinations using the voice recognition system ⇨ *table on page 173*. ▶

**Tips**

Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.

## Accessing destinations from myAudi account

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

*Import individual destinations from your myAudi account into the MMI.*

Requirement:

The requirements for Audi connect (Infotainment) must be met ⇨ *page 190*.

You must have a registered myAudi account at www.audiusa.com/myaudi. You must have a vehicle assigned to your myAudi account and you must have stored one or more destinations.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
- ▸ If necessary, enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN ⇨ *page 190*. The contacts stored in myAudi are displayed.

– Select and confirm a contact.
– Select and confirm a private or business destination.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

**Tips**

– You only need to enter the myAudi user data one time.
– You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account.
– For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.

## Entering a destination using geo coordinates

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Geographical coordinates**.

– Select **Latitude/Longitude**.
– Press the control knob to set the individual values.
– Turn the control knob to the left/right to change the selected value.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

## Adding a stopover

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*You can enter an additional destination when route guidance is active.*

**Fig. 184** Example: active route guidance with stopover

Requirement: route guidance must already be active.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

### Entering a destination as a stopover

– Enter a destination in the input line ⇨ *page 201*.
– Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
– Select and confirm **Add as stopover**.

### Deleting a stopover

– Push the control knob up. Free text search and active route guidance are displayed. **Or**: turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown.
– Select and confirm **Delete stopover** ② ⇨ *fig. 184*.
– The stopover is deleted.

## Cancel route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown ⇨ *page 205, fig. 184*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Cancel route guidance** ① ⇨ *page 205, fig. 184*. The destination is deleted. **Or**: select the right control button > **Cancel route guidance**.

## Additional options when entering a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the selected function, the following options may be available when entering a destination:

**Cancel route guidance**: Requirement: route guidance must be active. Route guidance is canceled. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 206*.

**Country information**: you can display the applicable urban and rural speed limits for any country/state. If this function is activated, the information will be automatically shown to you in the route information ⑦ ⇨ *page 210, fig. 189* when the speed limit is exceeded ⇨ *page 212*.

**Country/state selection**: see ⇨ *page 202, Narrowing the search area*.

**Route criteria**: see ⇨ *page 209, Route criteria*.

**Show location on map**: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered is displayed on the map.

**Parking at this location***: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. All parking options near the selected location are displayed in the Infotainment system.

**Delete**: the selected entry is deleted. You can delete individual entries or all entries (for example, favorites or last destinations).

**Audi connect at this location***: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. Allows you to search for items in the vicinity of the selected location, such as **Travel information**.

**Online traffic data***: the online traffic information ⇨ *page 216* can be switched on or off.

**Add destination to contact**: see ⇨ *page 208*.

**Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 208*.

**Voice guidance**: see ⇨ *page 210*.

**Navigation settings**: see ⇨ *page 209*.

**Tips**

Information on online traffic data* can also be found online at www.audiusa.com.

# Personal route assistance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and personal route assistance

*Your MMI can learn the routes that you drive frequently and, depending on the current vehicle position, suggest route guidance (for example, your daily commute to work and back).*

**Fig. 185** Example: personal route display

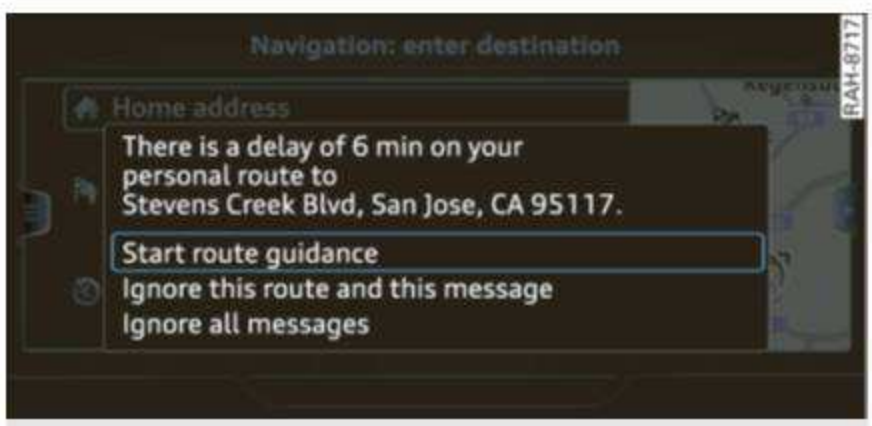



**Fig. 186** Information on personal route ▶

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Personal route assistance**.

When the function is switched on ☑, the MMI records the frequently-driven routes regardless of whether a destination was entered and reached or not.

As long as route guidance is not active, your personal routes are listed in the **Enter destination** menu under the home address and indicated with the symbol 🏁 ① ⇨ *fig. 185*. When personal route assistance is switched on, this symbol is displayed in the Navigation menu and in the Infotainment system display status line at the same time.

The distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time are also displayed for your personal routes. Without starting route guidance, your MMI monitors the traffic conditions for your personal routes and shows possible traffic incidents for the possible routes to be driven in the Infotainment system display ② ⇨ *fig. 185*.

A message will be displayed if there is a large traffic incident (more than 12 minute delay) regardless of which menu is selected ⇨ *fig. 186*. Select and confirm one of the following options:

– **Start route guidance**: the MMI starts the route guidance for the personal route displayed and searches for a faster route if available.
– **Ignore this route and this message**: the displayed destination with all applicable personal routes is no longer factored into the current trip. No more messages are shown for the displayed destination. The displayed destination with all applicable personal routes will be factored into the trip again only after stopping the vehicle and switching the ignition on again.
– **Ignore all messages**: all personal routes are no longer factored into the current trip. No more messages are displayed. Messages for personal routes when there is increased traffic will appear again after the vehicle is stopped and the ignition is switched on again.

As soon as you switch off personal route assistance, the symbol in the status line turns off and your trips are no longer recorded. Trips that were already stored remain stored.

**Deleting personal routes**:

– Select the desired personal route in the **Enter destination** menu ① ⇨ *fig. 185*.
– Select: right control button > **Delete destination**.

**Deleting all personal routes**:

– Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Factory settings**.
– Select: **Navigation and online memory** > **Restore factory settings** ⇨ *page 244*.

**Tips**

– Personal routes are learned based on the vehicle position. The route is prioritized according to how frequently you drive to a destination.
– A maximum of three personal routes are displayed in the **Enter destination** menu. Based on the current vehicle position, the traffic situation for the route that is most likely to be driven out of the three routes will always be monitored.
– Please note that personal routes that have already been stored will remain stored after the ignition is switched off and they must be deleted manually.

# Home address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

### Storing a home address

– Select and confirm **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*. After opening the home address for the first time, you will be asked to create a home address.
– Select and confirm **Create now**.
– Enter a destination or select a destination from the list. **Or**: ▸

– Select: *a destination* > right control button > **Store as home address**.

### Editing the home address

– Select the **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
– Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
– Select and confirm a new destination as the home address.

The selected destination is stored as the new home address.

## Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

– **Storing a destination as a favorite**: search for the desired destination using the input field. **Or**: select and confirm a destination from the list. Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.
– **Renaming a favorite**: select the left control button > **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Rename favorite**.
– **Move favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.
– **Deleting a favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

## Directory contacts

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*Two addresses (private/business) can be assigned as destinations for each contact in the directory.*

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

### Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 177*.

– Select: *a destination* > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
– Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.
– Enter a name. **Or**: select and confirm a directory contact from the list.
– Select and confirm **Save business card**.

## Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

**Fig. 187** Diagram: display of alternative routes in the overview map

Requirement: a destination must be entered and the route guidance must be started.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings** > **Show alternative routes**.

Three routes will be displayed in the overview map after you enter a destination ⇨ *fig. 187*.

▸ Select and confirm the desired route that you would like to use for route guidance.

Up to three route suggestions and their properties are displayed on the overview map when the function is switched on ☑ ⇨ *fig. 187*.

If available, the following information will appear on the route suggestions:

– Route type (fast ①, fast alternative ②, economic route ③)
– Distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time ▶

– Traffic congestion along the route including time delays

The route that was calculated according to the route criteria you selected is shown on the overview map . The special properties of the route are also displayed ④ ⇨ *fig. 187* and given as a spoken message.

Using the control knob, you can select the possible routing for the alternative routes and show them on map Select and confirm the desired route that you would like to use for route guidance.

# Additional settings

## Navigation settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

### Show alternative routes

Up to three suggested routes are shown on the map when this function is switched on ☑ ⇨ *page 208, Alternative routes*.

### Low fuel warning

A message is displayed if the fuel gauge goes below the reserve marking when this function is switched on ☑. Confirming this message displays a list of gas stations in the area. When a gas station is selected, route guidance from the current vehicle position is calculated.

### Trailer mode*

Trailer mode is switched off at the factory.

When the function is switched on ☑, the maximum permitted speed for vehicles with trailers is incorporated into the route guidance and the calculated arrival time is adjusted accordingly. Trailer mode is displayed using symbols in the side menu on the map.

### Personal route assistance*

Personal route assistance is switched off at the factory.

Your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI when this function is switched on ☑ ⇨ *page 206*.

### Notification when nearby*

The notification when nearby is switched off at the factory.

The MMI notifies you when you are approaching selected points of interest when this function is switched on ☑. You can also have a **Notification tone**.

### Presentation mode

The **Presentation mode** helps you to effectively plan a trip and follow the planned route without moving the vehicle. You can use **Select starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position, for example. Start **Presentation mode** to simulate route guidance.

## Route criteria

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

**Fig. 188** Possible route criteria

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Route criteria**. ▶

① **HOV/carpool lanes** [1]: with the **Avoid** function, HOV lanes are excluded when calculating routes. When **Allow** is selected, the MMI will route you through HOV lanes and show them on the map.

②**Highways** / ③**Toll roads**/ ④**Ferries**: if the navigation system should not include highways, toll roads or ferries - if possible - when calculating routes, you can select the **Avoid** function.

## Voice guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

**Voice guidance**: voice guidance can be **Complete** or **Shortened**. With the **Traffic** function, voice guidance prompts are only given when there are traffic incidents on your route. When **Off** is selected, no voice guidance is given.

**Voice guidance during phone call**: voice guidance during a phone call can be switched on or off.

**Entertainment fader**: see ⇨ *page 248*.

**Voice guidance volume**: you can adjust the volume during voice guidance using the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 154* You can also find additional information under ⇨ *page 248*.

# Map

## Map operation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

**Fig. 189** Example: 3D position map with the crosshairs switched off

**Fig. 190** Example: standard map with the crosshairs switched on

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *fig. 189*.

### Zooming in/out on the map

– Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. You can also zoom in and out on the map using the MMI touch control pad* ⇨ *page 158*. **Or**: turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇨ *page 13*.

### Turning the crosshairs on/off

– **Switching the crosshairs on**: press the control knob in the map view ⇨ *fig. 189*.
– **Switching the crosshairs off**: press the BACK button.

**When the crosshairs are switched off** ⇨ *fig. 189*:

① Orientation: the map is either displayed as a **2D north up map** or as a **2D heading up map**.

② Distance to the destination ▶

[1] High occupancy vehicle

③ When the **trailer mode** function is switched on ☑, the corresponding symbol is displayed next to the arrival time.

④ Scale: turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale. When the **Automatic zoom** function is switched on ☑, an "A" for "Automatic" is displayed in the magnifying glass.

⑤ Altitude

⑥ Vehicle position

⑦ Route information: various information will be displayed during active route guidance (for example, the upcoming maneuver including calculated distance and street names). The display also provides traffic information or points of interest on the current route.

⑧ Street being driven on: displayed here as "offroad" when the vehicle is stationary.

**When the crosshairs are switched on** ⇨ *fig. 190*:

⑨ Crosshairs: move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch control pad* or the control knob and set a point on the map as the destination or have information about the focal point displayed.

⑩ Speed limit display[1)]: display of the maximum permitted speed on the expressways and highways.

⑪ Entertainment sliding menu*: see ⇨ *page 159*.

⑫ Additional information on the crosshairs position: if you move the crosshairs to a location on the map, available information for the current crosshairs position is displayed. Press the control knob to open destination details or to start route guidance. When the crosshairs are turned off, the road being currently driven on is shown.

⑬ Map contents (points of interest, favorites). When there are multiple points of interest in the immediate vicinity, the symbols are shown stacked on the map.

⑭ Better route: if a better route is available for the current route guidance, it will be indicated on the map including the time that would be saved. More information can be found under ⇨ *page 215*.

## Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 210, fig. 189*.
- ▸ Press the left control button.

The following map functions can be selected:

### Switch to destination input

The free text search in the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.

### Traffic messages

Current traffic information is displayed in the Infotainment system display. You can also find additional information under ⇨ *page 215*.

### Route list

The route list can only be displayed when route guidance is active and contains information regarding the route, the names of the streets and the length of the route sections. When traveling on highways, possible parking lots and rest areas are shown, which you can select as a stopover.

### POIs along the route

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

Searching for points of interest along your current route For additional information, see ⇨ *page 204*.

## Additional options on the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 210, fig. 189*.
- ▸ Press the right control button. ▶

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

Depending on the function selected, the following options can also be selected under the **Map** menu:

**Cancel route guidance**: see ⇨ *page 206*.

**Adjust position**: you can manually move the vehicle position on the map to change the route.

**Map settings**: see ⇨ *page 212*.

**Route criteria**: see ⇨ *page 209*.

**Voice guidance**: see ⇨ *page 210*.

**Navigation settings**: see ⇨ *page 209*.

**Show alternative routes**: see ⇨ *page 208*.

**Parking along the route***: parking options near the vehicle are displayed.

**Save current position***: you can save your current vehicle position as a favorite ⇨ *page 208* or save it as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 208*.

**Audi connect at this location***: allows you to search for **Travel information** at the entered location (events, weather at the destination, etc.).

**Online traffic data***: you can switch the online traffic data on or off ☑.

**Country information**: see ⇨ *page 206*.

**Avoid route***: when route guidance is active, the calculated route will avoid the area you have specified (maximum: 12 mi (20 km)), if possible. The navigation system calculates an alternative route. The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be set again, if needed. The areas you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

**Move route***: move your finger over the MMI touch control pad* or use the control knob to adjust the route on the overview map.

## Map settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

### Map colors

**Day/Night**: the map is displayed with a light/dark background.

**Automatic**: the map display adapts to the lighting conditions (for example, changing from **Day** to **Night** when driving through a tunnel).

### Map display

**Standard**: see ⇨ *page 210, fig. 190*.

**Satellite map**[1)]: see ⇨ *page 213*.

**Electric range**: see ⇨ *page 217*.

### Map orientation

**Destination**: the map indicates the destination and is oriented to the north.

**2D heading up map/2D north up map**: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.

**3D position map***: the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and is aligned to the direction of travel. At a scale of 62 mi (100 km) and larger, the map orientation is to the north.

**Overview map**: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale depends on the length of the route and adapts automatically. The map is oriented to the north.

### Route information

The display of route information, such as the current street being driven on or points of interest along the current route, can be switched on/off ▶

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

or can be minimized on the display of upcoming maneuvers.

### Automatic zoom

**On**: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. The scale is also automatically adapted when there are upcoming maneuvers to provide a better detailed view.

**Intersection**: when route guidance is active, the map temporarily zooms in to a detailed scale when there are upcoming maneuvers so that you can see the street or turn better.

**Off**: the map scale you have chosen is maintained.

### Map content

Map content such as weather, traffic information or favorites can be displayed or hidden.

The weather forecast* is displayed on a 3 mi (5 km) scale on the map ⇨ *page 208, fig. 187*.

## Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

*You can display the navigation map with satellite images.*

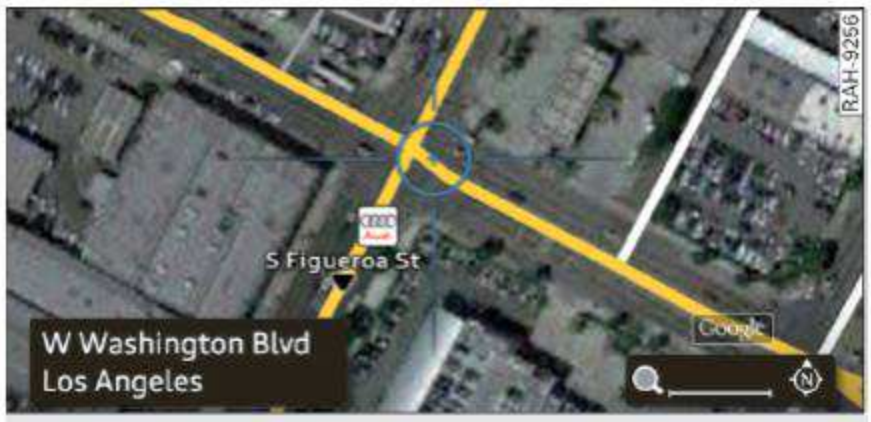



**Fig. 191** Example: satellite map

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect (Infotainment) must be met ⇨ *page 190*.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Google Earth**[1)2)].

The map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the **Standard** map view. There are two gigabytes of memory space in the MMI memory that can be used to temporarily store the map or navigation data that was received. This is roughly the amount required for the map/navigation data for a 2,485 mile (4,000 km) route. As long as the satellite images loaded for route guidance are stored, you can use them without having an active data connection.

**Tips**

- The stored satellite map[2)] data can be deleted in **Factory settings** > **Navigation and online memory** ⇨ *page 244*.
- The satellite map[2)] is updated regularly whenever the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
- When the satellite map display[2)] is switched on with the 3D position map, the map display automatically switches to the 2D map type when driving through tunnels.
- Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.
- For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.

## Map update

### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

There are multiple options available for updating your map material:

- Map updates through the **online map update*** ⇨ *page 214*. ▶

1) Provider at time of printing.

2) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

– Import map updates from the **SD card*** to your MMI. You can find additional information online at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– Map update at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. This can result in additional costs.

## Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

*Using the online map update, you can update the map material in your navigation system directly from your vehicle.*

**Fig. 192** Example: display of a new online map update

**Fig. 193** Example: selection of a country package

Requirement:

The requirements for Audi connect Infotainment services must be met ⇨ *page 190*.

You must have a myAudi account and have assigned your vehicle to it.

Using your vehicle position, the MMI identifies regions which you are frequently in. Based on this, the MMI suggests update packages for these regions, if they are available.

▸ Select ① **Start download** ⇨ *fig. 192* if the message for a new map update appears in the Infotainment system display. **Or**:

▸ Select MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **System update** > **Online update**.

A selection with the available update packages appears in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 193*.

### Selecting the online map update

– Select an update package from the list (☑) ② ⇨ *fig. 193*.
– Confirm your selection with the BACK button and go back to the selection.
– The number and amount of data for the selected update package are now displayed in the Infotainment system.

### Starting the download

– Select and confirm **Start download**.
– Confirm the security prompt by selecting **Start download** again.

The update packages begin to download and the status of the download progress is shown in the Infotainment system display.

### Installation of online map updates

The downloaded map material installs after you stop your vehicle. The new update packages install only after you switch off the ignition. After restarting the MMI, the Infotainment system display indicates if the updates installed successfully.

– Confirm the successful update with **OK**.

The new map material can now be used for navigation.

**Tips**

– The amount of available online map updates in the vehicle is limited. To update more regions, use the map update via SD card at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.

# Accessing traffic information

## Traffic information (TMC)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

An overview of all the traffic messages is displayed in the Infotainment system. Traffic incidents on your route are shown in the upper section of the list, sorted according to distance.

– **Displaying all traffic messages for a street/highway**: select and confirm the symbol. A list of all the traffic messages for the selected street/highway is displayed.
– **Opening a detailed view of traffic information**: select and confirm the traffic information from the list.
– **Displaying the selected traffic information on the map**: select the right control button > **Show on map**. The shaded line shows the street and the length of the traffic jam.
– **Displaying the next traffic message on the map**: press the control knob.

### Traffic information display

**Colored warning symbols**: traffic incidents on your route are shown in the upper section of the list and are sorted according to distance.

**Warning symbols with** ⮌: avoided traffic incidents.

**Grayed out warning symbols**: traffic incidents that are not on your route. They are sorted according to road type (expressway, highway, other road), country and name.

**Tips**

– Critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed. To hide the traffic information, press the BACK button or the control knob.
– TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. For more information, please contact Sirius Canada.

## Better route

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

*By receiving traffic information through TMC, your MMI calculates a better route - if available - and the possible time saved for the current route guidance. You can decide yourself which route you would like to use.*

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

If your MMI has calculated a better route than the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** appears for several seconds along with the time that may be saved. A better route is indicated in the map view by the symbol ⇨ *page 210, fig. 190*.

### Apply better route

– Press the right control button.
– Select and confirm the better route. **Or**: select and confirm **Details** to display details about the optimized route. You can zoom in or out on the map using the MMI touch control pad. Requirement: there must be more than one optimized route calculated. Press the control knob to switch to the next route in the detailed view. **Closing the detailed view**: press the BACK button.
– The better route is used for the remaining route guidance and the route is recalculated.

## Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect (Infotainment)

*The MMI can receive real-time online traffic information about congestion, accidents, road construction and other incidents.*

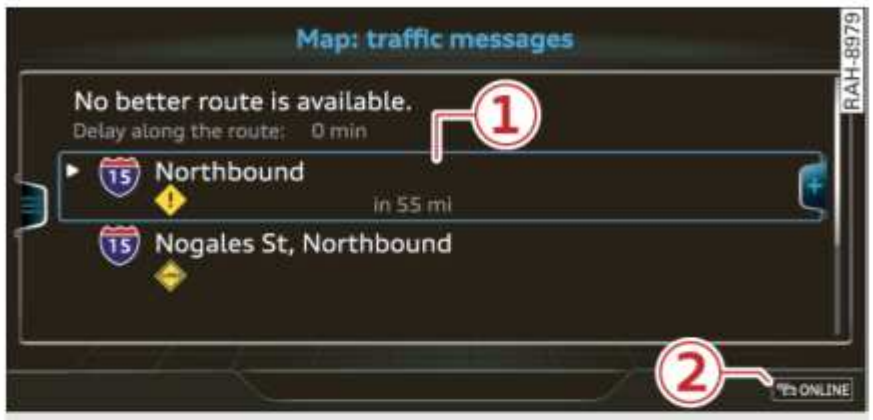



**Fig. 194** Online traffic information display* without better route

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect (Infotainment) must be met ⇨ *page 190*.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

An overview of all the traffic messages is displayed in the Infotainment system ⇨ *fig. 194*. Traffic incidents on your route are shown in the upper section of the list, sorted according to distance ① ⇨ *fig. 194*. Colored markings indicate the flow of traffic ⇨ *page 216*.

– **Switching online traffic information on**: press the right control button and switch **Online traffic data** on (☑). The ONLINE symbol is shown in the Infotainment system display ② ⇨ *fig. 194*.

You can also display the **online traffic information** on the satellite map[1)] ⇨ *page 213*.

### Traffic information display

Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow:

Green: traffic is flowing freely.

Orange: stop-and-go traffic

Red: congestion.

Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion.

**Colored warning symbols**: there is a traffic incident immediately ahead on the route.

**Grayed out warning symbols**: traffic incidents that are not on your route.

**Red warning symbols**: all warning symbols will be red when route guidance is not active.

The display of colored markings, warning symbols, etc. can be set in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 213*.

Traffic information is switched on at the factory. You can switch off the reception of online traffic information at any time ⇨ *page 216*.

### Tips

– Online traffic information is not available in Canada.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.
– Having the **Online traffic data** function switched on provides the most accurate reports of traffic situations as well as traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. If you do not want to use this, you can switch off the **online traffic information** function at any time.
– The **online traffic information** network is currently not available in all countries, and the coverage is not nationwide. For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

# e-tron navigation functions

## Electric range

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

*The electric range shows the maximum distance that can be driven using electric power. Information such as the type of road, speeds, and altitude will be taken into account.*

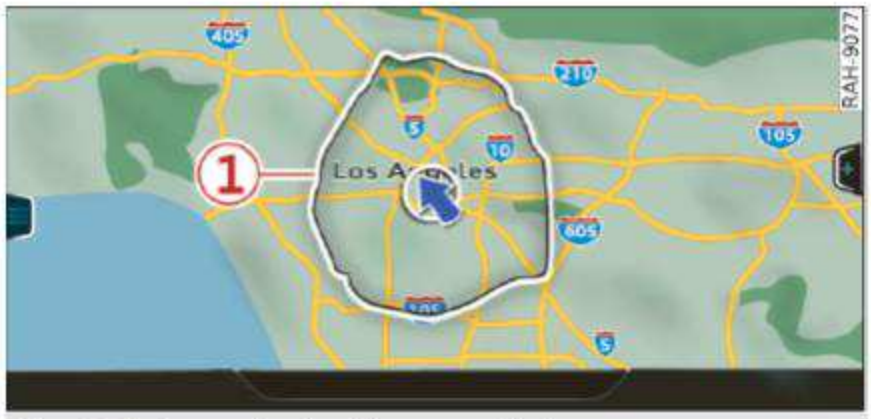



**Fig. 195** Example: electric range display

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 210, fig. 190*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Electric range**.
- ▸ Press the BACK button to return to the map view.

You can read the electric range of your vehicle based on the border ① ⇨ *fig. 195*.

The map scale will automatically adjust to the range.

## Finding the nearest charging station

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You can display charging stations at any time using the point of interest search ⇨ *page 204*.

You can also display the charging stations along the current route.

Requirement: route guidance must be active and the map must be displayed.

If available, all charging stations in the selected search area are displayed with the following additional information:

① Connector types
② Symbol for charging stations that are always open.
③ Available destination details

The hours of operation for the charging stations are displayed in the destination details.

**Displaying destination details**: select the right control button > **Show destination details**.

**Apply charging station as the destination**: press the control knob. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

You can find additional information about charging your vehicle in ⇨ *page 104, Charging*.

# Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Free text search**: the desired destination cannot be found. | The destination might not be entered in the navigation database. **Or**: check the spelling of the term that was searched. Check if the desired country/state was selected for the free text search using the **Country/state selection** ⇨ *page 202* or the option **All countries/states**. |

# Radio

## Opening the radio

*The radio supports the FM, AM and SiriusXM* (satellite radio) bands. Using the HD Radio receiver also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM bands in digital format.*

**Fig. 196** FM station list (HD Radio technology FM)

**Fig. 197** SiriusXM station list

▸ Press the RADIO button.

After opening the radio, the last opened station list is displayed.

**Selecting a station**: select and confirm a station from the station list. FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD Radio technology symbol HD ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 196*. If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability. Digital HD Radio stations* may contain multiple additional stations*. The available additional stations* are listed under the radio station. If you lose reception, the additional stations* are muted since they can no longer be received.

**Setting the frequency band**: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set.

① **Presets**

The station is stored as a preset. The symbol shows the stored location in the presets list (for example, 21).

② **Radio text (shortened display)**

If available, program information about the set station is displayed in all of the station lists.

③ **Frequency**

④ **Station name**

⑤ Station with **HD Radio technology** available HD

⑥ **Channel number** ⇨ *fig. 197*

If there is a loss of radio signal (SiriusXM*), the following system information is displayed in the station list:

**NoSignal**: the tuner is currently not receiving a satellite signal ⑦ ⇨ *fig. 197*.

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

### Tips

- Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
- Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
- Satellite radio is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
- iTunes tagging* is not supported by all radio stations.
- When the Apple CarPlay connection is active, **Tag this song for iTunes*** is not available.

# Radio functions

## Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search

*Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field. Search in all frequency bands for a station name or program type, such as* **News**.

**Fig. 198** Input field and results list for free text search

– **Opening the free text search**: when in a station list, keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field is displayed.
– **Using the free text search**: see ⇨ *page 162, Free text search*.

You can also search for frequencies.

Stations from the presets ③ are displayed in the results list ① ⇨ *fig. 198*. The symbol ② indicates which station list you switched to based on the station selection.

## Additional options

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button.

The following options are available depending on the frequency band:

– **Sound settings**: see ⇨ *page 247*.
– **Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 221, Presets*.
– **Tag this song for iTunes***: connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface* on your MMI. Select and confirm **Tag this song for iTunes**. The track that is currently playing is stored on your Apple device. Synchronize your Apple device with iTunes. The tagged track will display the next time you open your iTunes media center. If there is no Apple device connected, the tagged tracks are stored temporarily in the MMI (maximum of 50 tracks). Once you connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface, the tags are stored on the device.
– **Manage SiriusXM alerts**: see ⇨ *page 220, SiriusXM alerts*.
– **Store artist as favorite/Store track as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 220, SiriusXM alerts*.
– **Manual tuning**: the frequency bars are displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.
– **Seek**: the radio tunes to the previous or next receivable station.
– **Scan**: all stations are played for several seconds each.
– **Radio settings**: see ⇨ *page 221*.

## Radio text

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > a frequency band (such as **FM**) > a station.
▸ Select: right control button > **Radio text**.

Information that accompanies the program (such as artist, composer, track) is displayed.

**Browsing through radio text entries**: turn the control knob to the left or right.

Requirement: a radio text entry must be displayed and the station must be broadcasting a phone number, a navigation destination or a text message number as Radio Text Plus information.

If a location, a phone number or a text message number is included with a radio text entry, the radio text will be shown with a colored border. You have the following options:

**Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message***:
– Select a radio text entry with Radio Text Plus information and press the control knob.
– Select and confirm **Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message***. **Or**: press the BACK button to cancel.

### Tips

The availability of radio text and Radio Text Plus depends on the radio station.

## SiriusXM alerts

Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM

*You can display an overview of your favorite artists or tracks that are currently being played on a SiriusXM channel.*

**Fig. 199** SiriusXM alert notification

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > **SiriusXM**.

After you have stored a SiriusXM alert for your favorite tracks or artists, you can display an overview of your favorite tracks or artists currently being received in the **SiriusXM alerts** menu and play them immediately. You can also receive a *SiriusXM alert notification* (1) for these tracks or artists in the entertainment sliding menu ⇨ *fig. 199*.

### Storing a SiriusXM alert

Requirement: your favorite track or artist must be playing on a SiriusXM channel.

– Select: right control button > **Store track as favorite** or **Store artist as favorite**.

### Switching SiriusXM alert notifications on and off

– Select: right control button > **SiriusXM alert notifications**.

When the function is switched on ☑, a *SiriusXM Alert notification* (1) ⇨ *fig. 199* is displayed for several seconds in the entertainment sliding menu for the **Radio** and **Navigation** menus.

### Playing tracks/artists from Sirius XM alerts

Requirement: a SiriusXM alert must be stored for a track/artist and it must be currently playing on a SiriusXM channel.

– Select: left control button > **SiriusXM alerts** > *an entry from the list*. The selected track/artist is played.

### Playing tracks/artists from the entertainment sliding menu

Requirement: the **SiriusXM alert notifications** function must be switched on. You must be in the **Radio** and **Navigation** menu. A *SiriusXM alert notification* is displayed in the entertainment sliding menu (1) ⇨ *fig. 199*.

– Push the control knob down.

– Select and confirm the desired track/artist.

### Managing SiriusXM alerts

– Select: right control button > **Manage SiriusXM alerts**.

– **Switching SiriusXM alerts on/off**: when the function is switched on ☑, you are notified when this track or artist is being played on a SiriusXM channel.

– **Deleting Sirius XM alerts**: select *an entry from the list* > right control button > **Delete from alerts** > **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.

## View: additional station information

**Fig. 200** Radio view: additional station information

Requirement: you must be tuned to a radio station. The **Show "Now Playing" screen** option must be switched on ⇨ *page 222*.

Symbols in the "Now Playing" screen ⇨ *fig. 200*:

(1) **Radio text availability** ▸

**Radio text** is available for the selected station. See ⇨ *page 219*.

### ② iTunes tagging

The **Tag this song for iTunes** option is available for the set station. See ⇨ *page 219, Additional options*.

### ③ FM HD Radio technology

The station is received through FM HD Radio technology.

### ④ Screen view

Display **Cover art** or **Station logo**. See ⇨ *page 222,* **Preferred picture view***.

### Displaying the station list:

Turn the control knob. **Or**: press the BACK button.

## Radio menu

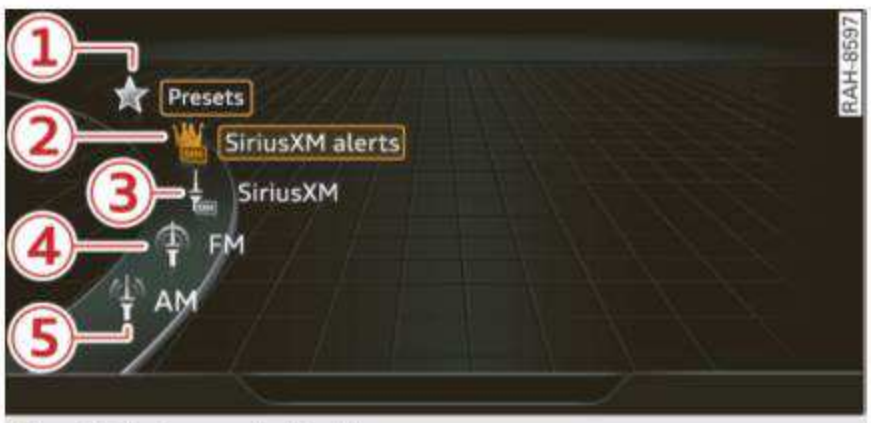



**Fig. 201** Example: Radio menu

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button.

**Setting the frequency band**: select and confirm the desired frequency band in the radio menu ⇨ *fig. 201*. **Or**: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set. The station list is displayed.

### ① Presets

The presets list is displayed ⇨ *page 221, Presets*.

### ② SiriusXM alerts

Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM alerts

After you have stored a SiriusXM alert for your favorite tracks or artists ⇨ *page 220*, an overview of your favorite tracks or artists currently being received on SiriusXM is displayed.

### ③ SiriusXM

Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM alerts

The **SiriusXM*** station list is displayed.

### Additional frequency bands

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may also be able to select additional frequency bands ④/⑤ ⇨ *fig. 201* in the selection menu.

## Presets

*You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the presets list.*

▸ Select: the RADIO button > left control button > **Presets**.

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

– **Storing presets**: select and confirm *a free preset space*. Follow the system instructions.
– Select and confirm *a station from the list* if necessary.

Requirement: a station list must be displayed.

– **Storing presets**: select: *an entry from the list* > right control button > **Store as preset**. **Or**: press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

– **Displaying the presets list**: select: RADIO button > **Presets**.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

– **Listening to presets**: select and confirm *a preset from the list*.
– **Move favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**. **Or**: press and hold the control knob for several seconds. Select and confirm the location of the selected preset.
– **Deleting presets**: select *a preset from the list* > right control button > **Delete preset** > **Delete this preset** or **Delete all presets**.

## Additional settings

### Radio settings

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**. ▶

The following settings can be selected, depending on the band that is selected:

### Station names (FM)

**Variable**: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is shown in the Infotainment system display.

**Fixed**: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the Infotainment system display. Only the current section of the scrolling text is displayed.

### FM/AM HD Radio*

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

### Channel sorting (SiriusXM*)

You can set the station sorting for SiriusXM station lists* by:

– **Channel number**: the channels are sorted in ascending order according to their channel number.
– **Channel name**: the channels are listed in alphabetical order.
– **First category, then channel number**: the channels are sorted by their category and then by their channel numbers.
– **First category, then channel name**: the stations are sorted by their category and then by their channel names.

### Category filter (SiriusXM*)

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. Select the **All categories** option to deactivate all filter options and display all available stations in the satellite station list.

### Show "Now Playing" screen

When the function is switched on ☑ and the stations or presets list is open, the display will switch to the **Show "Now Playing" screen** view after approximately five seconds ⇨ *page 220*. Depending on availability, information about the set station (such as station name, artist and station logo) may be displayed in this view.

### Preferred picture view*

You can set your preferred screen view for the **Show "Now Playing" screen** ⇨ *page 220*.

– **Station logo**: the station logo is displayed, depending on availability.
– **Cover art**: the album cover is displayed if available.

### Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. The **Cover art** option must be selected ⇨ *page 222,* **Preferred picture view***.

When the function is switched on ☑, the album cover or genre cover for the song that is playing is loaded from the Gracenote online database, depending on availability.

### Subscription status (SiriusXM)*

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date for your license is displayed.

**Call to SiriusXM***: the contact information for your satellite radio provider is displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call to SiriusXM***.

## Troubleshooting

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| A station with poor reception is no longer displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station. | Store the station as a preset in advance. Access the presets using the presets list ⇨ *page 221*. |

# Media

## Introduction

There are various media drives and connections available in the MMI. For example, you can play audio/video* files from the Jukebox* or connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface* and operate it through the MMI.

## Notes

### General

**Media and format restrictions**: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection*) was tested with a variety of products and media on the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video files* may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions, or may not play at all.

**Digital Rights Management**: please note that the audio/video* files are subject to copyright protection.

The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and that are identified with the symbol.

**Data security**: never store important data on SD cards, the Jukebox*, CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. Audi AG is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

**Loading times**: the more files/folders/playlists that are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load the audio/video* files. Audi recommends using storage media that only contain audio/video files*. To decrease the time it takes to load audio/video files*, create subfolders (for example, for the artist or album). The loading time will also increase when importing files.

**Additional information**: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check the Gracenote metadata database. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

**Restricted functionality**: reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 244*.

If functionality is restricted, reset the **Jukebox*** to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 244*.

For information about the properties of supported media and file formats, see ⇨ *page 237*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

### CD/DVD operation

**CD/DVD and format restrictions**: the functionality of individual storage media may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession is not supported for DVDs.

**Using CDs/DVDs, the CD drive or the DVD drive**: to ensure correct, high-quality playback and to prevent damage to the drive or disc reading errors, always store CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do *not* use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
– Single CDs/DVDs with 3 in (8 cm) diameter
– CD/DVDs that are not round
– CDs/DVDs with labels
– Protective rings
– Cleaning CDs

**Thermal protection switch**: CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold. A thermal protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser.

**Laser devices**: laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 ▶

(CO) 6/VDE 0837. The optical readers that are installed conform to safety class 1. Lasers in this class are very weak and well shielded, so there is no danger if used correctly.

# Media drives

## SD card reader

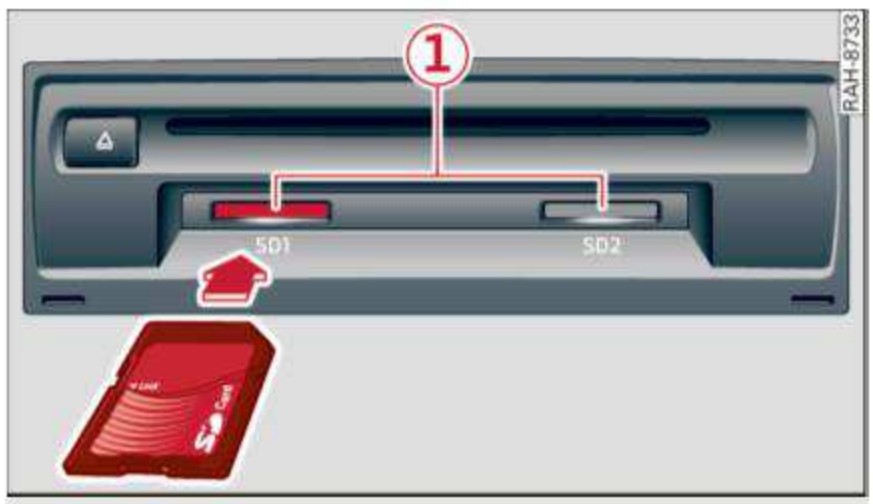



**Fig. 202** Glove compartment: SD card reader

– **Inserting the SD card**: the angled corner of the SD card must face toward the right front. Slide the SD card into the card reader slot (1) ⇨ *fig. 202* until the SD card clicks into place.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted SD card contains supported audio/video files* ⇨ *page 237*.
– **Removing the SD card**: press briefly on the SD card.

The SD card reader is accessed and operated through the MMI (3) ⇨ *page 232, fig. 208*.

**Note**

Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.

**Tips**

The SIM card reader then does not function.

## DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a DVD drive

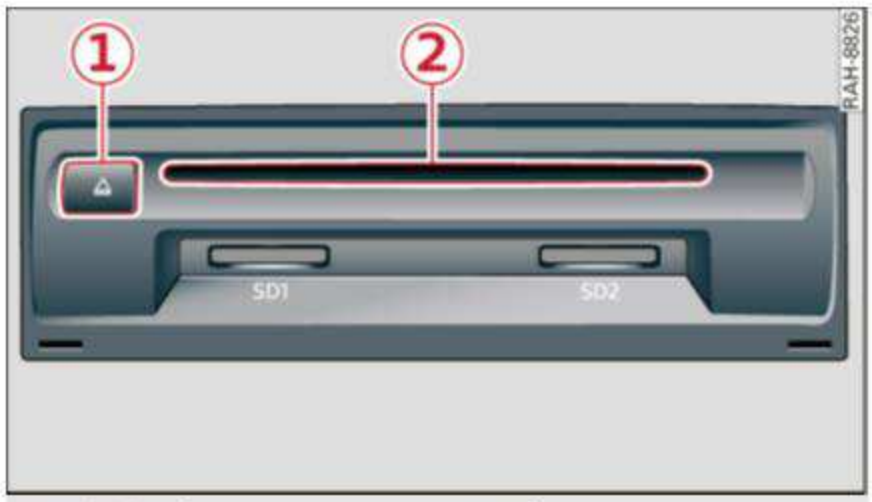



**Fig. 203** Glove compartment: DVD drive

– **Loading a CD/DVD**: the CD/DVD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot (2) with the label facing up ⇨ *fig. 203*.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD/DVD contains supported audio/video* files ⇨ *page 237*.
– **Ejecting a CD/DVD**: press the button (1) ⇨ *fig. 203*.

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI (2) ⇨ *page 232, fig. 208*.

**Note**

– Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

**Tips**

– The CD/DVD playback is not ensured with audio files that have a high data rate.
– The SIM card reader then does not function.

## CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

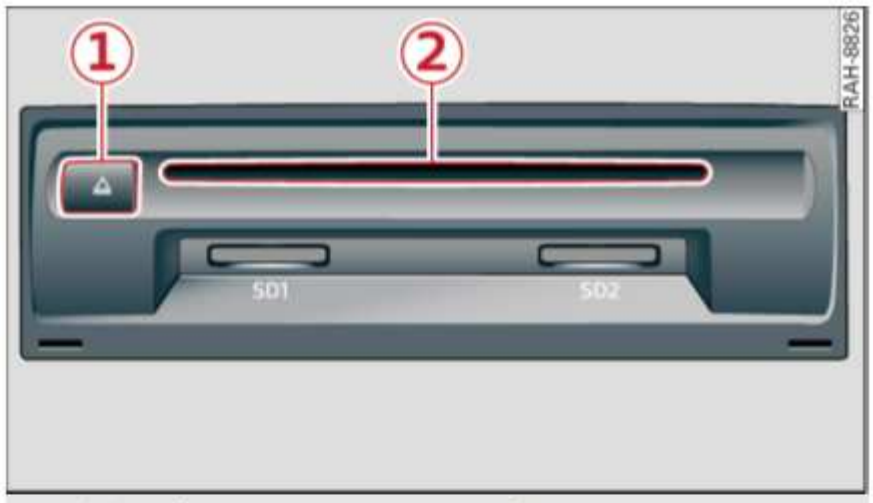



**Fig. 204** Glove compartment: CD drive

– **Loading a CD**: the CD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD straight into the CD slot (2) ⇨ *fig. 204* with the label facing up.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD contains supported audio files ⇨ *page 238, CD drive*.
– **Ejecting a CD**: press the button (1) ⇨ *fig. 204*.

The CD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the slot within ten seconds of ejecting it.

The CD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 232, Playing media*.

**Note**

– Never force a CD into the drive. The CD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD and damage the drive.

**Tips**

CD playback cannot be guaranteed with audio files that have a high data rate.

## Jukebox

Applies to: vehicles with Jukebox

*After you have filled the Jukebox with music and/or videos, for example from your SD card, you can play these files directly from the Jukebox. The Jukebox memory capacity is approximately 10 GB.*

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 232* is displayed. Select and confirm **Jukebox**.

### Adding files to the Jukebox

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 232* is displayed. Select one of the following sources to copy to the Jukebox: SD card*, CD-ROM*, DVD-ROM*, USB storage device*.

Requirement: the media center (for example, tracks, albums) must be open.

– **Selecting an entry**: select an entry from the media center. Select: right control button > **Copy to Jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

Requirement: the playlist must be open. See ⇨ *page 234*.

– **Selecting a track**: select the track that is currently playing. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This track** or **Entire album** or **This artist**.

Requirement: a video file must be playing.

– Select: right control button > **Copy to Jukebox**.

The copying process begins. The status of the copying process is shown in the MMI.

– **Hiding the importing process**: select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The importing process is hidden.
– **Canceling the importing process**: select and confirm **Cancel copying**: **Or**: remove the source that is being imported. Files already copied remain.

Requirement: the copying process must be active in the background.

– **Showing the copying process**: select: right control button > **Copying in progress**. ▶

When importing, the audio files are automatically sorted into the media center categories based on the stored additional information ⇨ *page 233*. The copied video files are stored in the media center under the **Videos** category.

### Playing the Jukebox

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 225, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

The Jukebox is accessed and operated through the MMI ① ⇨ *page 232, fig. 208*.

### Displaying Jukebox memory capacity

Select: right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information about the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks is displayed.

### Deleting tracks from the Jukebox[1)]

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files.

– **Deleting an entry**: select an entry from the Jukebox media center. Select: right control button > **Delete from jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.
– The status of the deleting process is shown in the MMI. Jukebox playback stops during the deleting process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

**Note**

Do not import audio/video files when the engine is turned off because this will drain the vehicle battery.

**Tips**

– Tracks from audio CDs cannot be imported to the Jukebox for legal reasons.
– Files that have already been imported are automatically recognized and cannot be copied to the Jukebox again.
– It is not possible to play audio/video* files in the CD/DVD* drive while importing them.
– The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.
– Files or tracks without additional stored information are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends adding additional information (such as ID3 tags) to audio files.
– Reset the **Jukebox** to the factory default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 244*.

## Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

*With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly from your Bluetooth-capable device (such as a cell phone) through the MMI.*

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 246* and mobile device must be switched on. The **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 246* must be switched on in the MMI.

– **Connecting** a **Bluetooth player**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed. Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** ⑥ ⇨ *page 232, fig. 209*.
– If necessary, select and confirm **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The Bluetooth device search starts. Follow the instructions in the MMI.
– Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI generates a PIN for the connection.
– Select and confirm **Yes**.
– Enter the PIN for connecting on your Bluetooth device. **Or**: if the PIN is already displayed on your Bluetooth device, confirm it in the Bluetooth device and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds. ▶

1) Not in the **Playback** view.

The media is started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used.

**Tips**

- Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device.
- Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one mobile device can be active.
- Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3/1.4) and A2DP are supported.
- Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
- The supported media functions (such as shuffle) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
- For more information on the supported devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## Wi-Fi audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player

*Using the Wi-Fi audio player media source on the MMI, you can connect and operate your Wi-Fi-capable media player (such as a smartphone) to wirelessly play music from your media player library. The media player is connected through the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot. A UPnP Server app or an integrated UPnP/DLNA server on your media player is required to access your media player library.*

Requirement: the Wi-Fi function on your media player must be switched on. The **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app must be installed on your media player. **Or**: you must be using a media player with an integrated UPnP/DLNA server.

- **Connecting a media player**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 232* is displayed. Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** (7) ⇨ *page 232, fig. 209*.
- If necessary, select and confirm **Wi-Fi turned off** > **Turn on Wi-Fi** to activate Wi-Fi in the MMI. Select **Wi-Fi settings**, if necessary. Select the same settings on the wireless media player that are used for the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- **Starting** the **Wi-Fi audio player**: start the **Audi MMI connect** app or a UPnP server app, or set media permissions on your media player.

**Operating the media player**: the media player is operated through the MMI.

- Press the left control button repeatedly until the **Folders** menu item appears. Select and confirm **Folders**.
- **Playing music from the media player**: select and confirm **Media center**.

**Web radio**: see ⇨ *page 228*.

**WARNING**

- As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
- It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
- Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 273, Front airbags*.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ (!) *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

**Tips**

- Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.
- Please note that a Wi-Fi connection does not automatically make it possible to use the Internet. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 190*. ▶

– To avoid interruptions during playback, deactivate the power saving function on the media player or connect it to a charger.
– The loading times for the audio data depend on the media player used and the number of files that it contains.
– A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are displayed in the MMI.
– Songs downloaded for offline use using music streaming services are stored on your mobile device (such as a smartphone) and may be DRM protected. The Wi-Fi audio player will not play DRM protected files.
– Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information on the Wi-Fi audio player.

# Online media and Internet radio

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

*You can playback and operate various online media services and Internet radio using the MMI.*

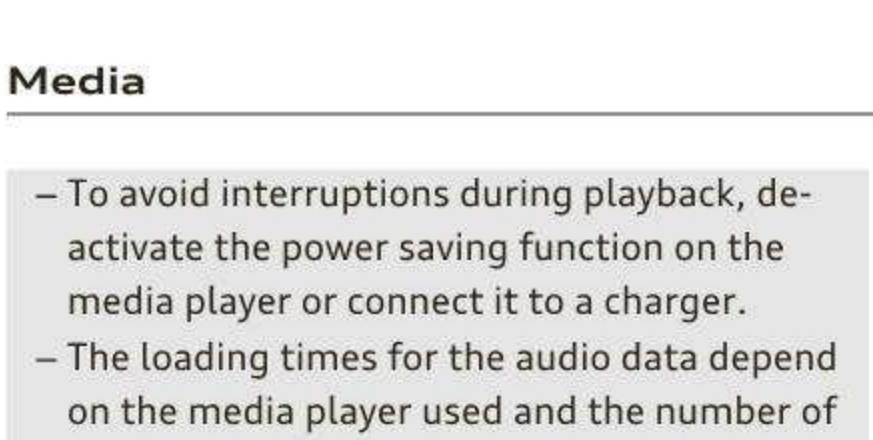



**Fig. 205** Online media

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *fig. 205* is displayed.

Applies to: using online media and Internet radio

Requirement:
– The **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.
– You must be logged into your myAudi account in the **Audi MMI connect** app and you must have selected your vehicle.
– The Wi-Fi function on the mobile device and on the MMI must be switched on.
– If necessary, check in the connection manager ⇨ *page 244* if the mobile device you connected is selected under the **MMI connect app** (☑).
– The MMI must be connected to the network.
– The symbol for the **Online media** source ① ⇨ *fig. 205* is shown in the MMI.

Applies to: using online media

Additional requirement:
– A supported online media service must be available in your country.
– You must have an account with a supported online media service.
– Depending on the online media service, you must install and open an app on your mobile device.

### Starting Online media

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 232* is displayed.
– Select and confirm an online media service.

### Starting Internet radio

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 232* is displayed.
– Select and confirm **Internet radio**. The Internet radio browser or the last station that was playing is shown.
– **Selecting the station**: if necessary, select and confirm a category in the Internet radio **Browser** > *a station*.

### Online media and Internet radio: additional options

– Press the right control button.

The following options may be available, depending on the information shown (such as the station/track that is currently playing):
– **Sound settings**: see ⇨ *page 247*.
– **Wi-Fi settings**: see ⇨ *page 195, Wi-Fi hotspot*.
– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 244*.
– Additional options may be available, depending on the active online media service or Internet radio.

**⚠ WARNING**

– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around ▸

the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.

– Do not use any wireless devices on the front seats within range of the airbags while driving. Also read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 273, Front airbags*.

**Note**

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.
– Please note that there generally are additional costs when using an online media service account, especially when it is used internationally.

**Tips**

– Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, a connection loss can occur during playback of online media services.
– **Online media** and **Internet radio** usage depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– Audi AG simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI and does not take any responsibility for the contents of the online media services.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 196, Audi connect (Infotainment) general information*.
– Depending on the mobile device used, there may be interruptions during media playback and when using the **Audi MMI connect** app. To avoid interruptions when using a mobile device, do not lock the screen on your mobile device and keep the **Audi MMI connect** app in the foreground.
– Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information about online media.

# Multimedia connections

## USB adapter for Audi music interface

*You can connect your mobile devices (such as a smartphone or MP3 player) to the Audi music interface and charge them using a special USB adapter.*

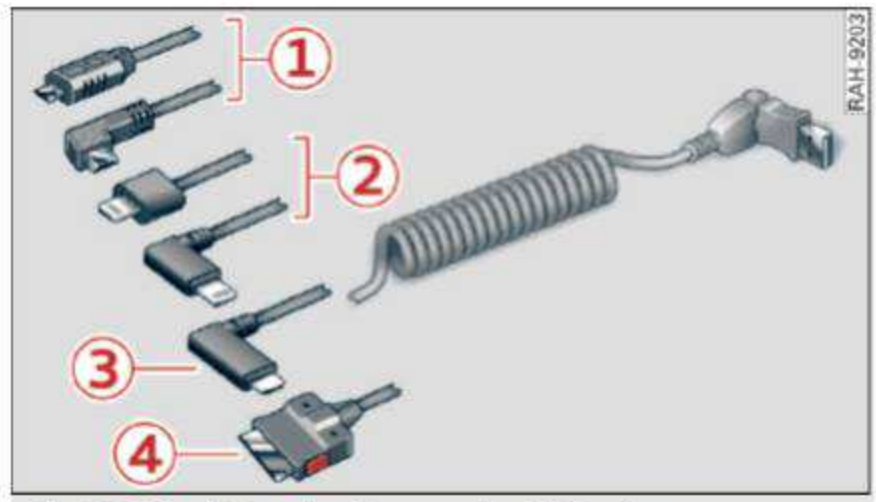



**Fig. 206** Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapter

You can purchase the USB adapter ⇨ *fig. 206* from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores:

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection

② USB adapter for devices with an Apple Lightning connection

③ USB adapter for devices with USB type C connection

④ USB adapter for devices with an Apple Dock connector

You can connect your mobile devices through the Audi music interface to the MMI using the USB adapter and charge the battery at the same time.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

– **Audi music interface**: see ⇨ *page 230*.

Applies to: vehicles with USB charging ports in the rear

– **USB charging ports in the rear***: see ⇨ *page 231*.

**Note**

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

## Audi music interface

*Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface in order to operate them through the MMI and charge the battery.*

**Fig. 207** Storage compartment under the center armrest and at the front of the center console: Audi music interface

### USB Input

- **Connecting a mobile device using a USB adapter**: connect the applicable USB adapter ② ⇨ *fig. 207* to the port on the Audi music interface ③ ⇨ *fig. 207* and then connect the adapter to the mobile device ① (such as an iPhone).
- **Charging a mobile device using a USB adapter**: when you connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface ③ ⇨ *fig. 207* using the applicable USB adapter ② ⇨ *fig. 207*, the battery will automatically charge.
- **Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface**: remove the USB adapter ② ⇨ *fig. 207* from the Audi music interface.
- **Disconnecting mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector**: remove the Apple Dock connector from the Apple device with the release tabs pressed in ④ ⇨ *page 229, fig. 206*.

The media are started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used ⇨ *page 232*.

**Connecting multiple mobile devices**: if a mobile device (such as a smartphone) is connected at the respective USB port on the Audi music interface, then all devices can be used as a playback source.

### AUX Input

- **Connecting a mobile device to the AUX input**: connect the cable ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 207* to the AUX input ④ on the Audi music interface and then to the mobile device ⑥ (such as an MP3 player or smartphone).
- **Disconnecting a mobile device from the AUX input**: remove the cable ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 207* from the AUX input ④ ⇨ *fig. 207*.
- **Operation**: select and confirm the **External audio player** source ⑤ ⇨ *page 232, fig. 208*. Media is started and operated through the mobile device ⑥ ⇨ *fig. 207*.

**WARNING**

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

- Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to prevent damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
- Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

**Tips**

- Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 62*.
- When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
- Do not use an additional adapter or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter (⇨ *page 229*). They may impair the functionality.
- You can purchase the AUX connector cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.
- Audi recommends setting the volume of a mobile device connected to the AUX input to ▶

approximately 70% of the maximum volume.
- Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Some versions of the iPod such as the iPod shuffle cannot be connected to the USB adapter for devices with Apple Dock connector. Connect these devices using a AUX connector cable.
- Changed content on a mobile device [1] that is connected to the Audi music interface may not be displayed in the media center. In this case, reset the **Media settings** back to **Factory settings** ⇨ *page 244*.
- Video playback through the Audi music interface is only supported if the connected device is recognized as a USB storage device (for example a USB stick). Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.
- iPod/iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your iPod/iPhone if this happens.
- For important information on operating your iPod/iPhone, refer to the user guide for the device. Audi recommends updating the iPod/iPhone software to the latest version.
- For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, check the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/mp3 or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

## USB charging ports in the rear

Applies to: vehicles with USB charging ports in the rear

*You can charge the battery on your mobile device through a USB charging port.*

Two USB charging ports* are located at the back of the center console.
- **USB adapter**: refer to ⇨ *page 229, USB adapter for Audi music interface*.
- **Charging a mobile device using the USB adapter**: connect your mobile device to a USB charging port using a suitable USB adapter.
- **Disconnecting a mobile device from the charging port**: remove the USB adapter from the USB charging port.
- **Disconnecting mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector**: remove the Apple Dock connector from the Apple device with the release tabs pressed in.

**WARNING**

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate your mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

**Tips**

- Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 62*.
- When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
- Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters to connect mobile devices to the USB charging port that have already ▶

[1] Applies only to MTP devices. Does not apply to Apple devices and USB mass storage devices.

been connected by a USB adapter. They may impair the functionality.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Refer to the manufacturer's operating manual for important information regarding the operation of your mobile device.
– Correct function of all mobile devices cannot be guaranteed.
– The vehicle battery drains when mobile devices are turned on but the engine is off.

# Playing media

## Accessing media

*You can start and operate various media through the MMI control panel.*

**Fig. 208** Diagram: possible sources in the Media menu

**Fig. 209** Diagram: possible sources in the Media menu

Requirement: a media source must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 224*.

- Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed.
- Select and confirm the desired source. **Or**: press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sources may be displayed in the **Media** menu:


① **Jukebox*** . . . . . 225
② **DVD/CD drive*** . . . . . 224, 225
③ **SD card reader** . . . . . 224
④ **Audi music interface*** . . . . . 230
such as an iPhone, USB stick
⑤ **External audio player** . . . . . 230
such as an MP3 player connected to the AUX input
⑥ **Bluetooth audio player*** . . . . . 226
⑦ **Wi-Fi audio player*** . . . . . 227
⑧ **Online media*** and **Internet radio*** . . 228


– **Playing audio/video files**: select a source in the **Media** menu > *category* (such as artists > *album* > *track*).
– **Moving one level up in the folder structure**: press the BACK button. **Or**: select and confirm **Folder up**.
– **Selecting the previous or next track/chapter*** [1]: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly to the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
– **Fast-forwarding and rewinding audio/video* files**: press and hold the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel to the left ⏮ or right ⏭ for a longer time.
– **Pausing or resuming playback**: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly.

### Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.
– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.

[1] Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

## Media center

*Various categories for selecting audio/video* files are available in the media center.*

**Fig. 210** Example: USB stick categories

**Fig. 211** Example: USB stick categories

► Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed. Select and confirm the desired source.

### ① Active source

The active source is highlighted. The active source symbol ① may change depending on the connected device, the online media service* or Internet radio*. The device name may be displayed (for example: myPhone). As an example, a USB stick is shown ⇨ *fig. 210* connected to the Audi music interface*.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video files* from the following categories and add them to the playlist:

### ② Favorites

The **Favorites** category appears if at least one entry is stored in the favorites list. See ⇨ *page 234, Favorites*.

### ③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

### ④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

### ⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (such as **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a song.

### ⑥ Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

### ⑦ Folders

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed. Select a folder, if necessary. Select and confirm a track.

### ⑧ Playlists

All available playlists from the source and the smart playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

**Smart playlists**:

- **Last played tracks**: the last tracks played in the selected source are displayed.
- **Most played**: the most played tracks in the selected source are displayed.
- **5 stars** to **1 star**: tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
- **Unrated**: all files from the selected source without rating information (for example, in the ID3 tag) are displayed.

### ⑨ Videos*

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

**Tips**

- Only the categories supported by the medium are available. For example, CD/DVD-ROM tracks cannot be selected with categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. With an iPod/iPhone (source: Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 229*), the **Podcasts**, **Audio books** and **Composers** categories are also available. ►

– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– When synchronizing a portable device with "Cloud" services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.

## Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search

*You can search in the active source by tracks and video files*, for example*

**Fig. 212** Input field and results list for free text search

You can open the **free text search** depending on the selected source.

Requirement: the playlist ⇨ *page 234* or media center ⇨ *page 233* must be displayed.

### Opening free text search

▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① ⇨ *fig. 212* appears. **Or**: push the control knob up.

**Using the free text search**: see ⇨ *page 162, Free text search*.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 212*. You can search for artists ② ⇨ *fig. 212*, albums ③ or tracks ④ as well as genres and videos.

**Tips**

– It will then search through the files in the active source.
– If you open free text search in the **Folders** category ⑦ ⇨ *page 233, fig. 211* or the **Composers**, **Podcasts** and **Audio books** categories, it will only search through the files in that folder.

## Playlist

**Fig. 213** Example: playlist

The track, artist, album and album cover, if applicable, will appear in the playlist ⇨ *fig. 213*.

### Options menu

See ⇨ *page 235, Additional settings*.

## Favorites

*Up to 50 entries for every media source can be stored in any order in the favorites list.*

Requirement: the playlist or media center must be open.
– Select the desired entry from the playlist or media center.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**. **Or**: press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

When you store a track as a favorite, the associated album will appear in the favorites list as an entry.

Requirement: at least one entry must be stored in the favorites list.

**Displaying the favorites list**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 232* is displayed. Select the source that contains the *categories* ⇨ *page 233* (for example, SD card). Select the **Favorites** *category*.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.
– **Listening to a favorite**: select and confirm *a favorite from the list*. ▸

– **Move favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.
– **Deleting a favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

# Additional settings

## Options menu

Context-specific functions and settings are available depending on the selected source.

▸ Press the right control button.

### Sound settings

See ⇨ *page 247*.

### Input level

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the AUX connection cable or to a USB adapter ⇨ *page 229, Multimedia connections*.

The volume of the mobile device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume on the mobile device to 70% of the maximum volume output.

### Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 246*.

### Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 195, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

### Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 244*.

### Additional track information

With the function switched on ☑ and a playlist open, various information about the current track (such as artist, album and album cover*) as well as the playing time and the remaining playing time are displayed.

### Jukebox memory capacity*

Information on the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks in the Jukebox is displayed.

### Rewind/Fast forward

Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. **Or**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad* from left to right.

### Shuffle[1)]

With the function switched on ☑, all files in the playlist are played and shown in random order.

### Repeat track[1)]

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track repeats.

### Back to 'Playback'

The options menu is closed. The track currently playing appears in the playlist.

### Play similar music*

The track currently playing is quickly analyzed (such as artists, genres, mood, beat) and a smart playlist with similar tracks is shown.

### Play more...

A smart playlist is shown based on the track currently playing. You can select between a playlist with more tracks **by this artist**, **from this album** or **of this genre**.

### Copy to jukebox*

See ⇨ *page 225, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

### Set as ringtone*[2)]

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI. The track currently playing must be in the Jukebox* ⇨ *page 225*.

The selected track will be used as the ringtone for incoming calls. ▶

1) The function automatically switches off when the source is changed.
2) This function is not available for all cell phones.

### Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

Depending on availability, various information will load about the track currently playing when this function is switched on ☑.

### Favorites

See ⇨ *page 234*.

### Additional options

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and a video file* or a DVD* must be playing.

### Child safety lock*

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted using parental control.

Enter the password for parental control. Password set at the factory: **1234**. You have the following options:

– **Protection level**: select and confirm the protection level (for example, Level 5). Eight different protection levels can be set for parental control. If you set the parental control level at Level 5, all DVDs from level 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play. Select **Unrestricted** to remove all of the restrictions.
– **Change password**: edit the current password.

### Switch to full screen

The video image is displayed. Turn the control knob to display the playlist. **Or**: press the BACK button.

### Replay video[1)]

When this function is switched on ☑, the current video will replay.

### Show DVD menu

The DVD main menu opens in the Infotainment system display.

– **Selecting a menu item**: select and confirm a menu item. **Or**: move your finger on the MMI touch control pad* and press the control knob.

### Audio track[2)]

You can manually set the audio track (language and audio format). The language and audio format options depend on the video DVD.

### Subtitles[2)]

You can set subtitles for playback manually. The languages available depend on the DVD.

### Aspect

Audi recommends the **Automatic** setting for the picture format. You can set the picture format depending on the active file or source (for example video file*, DVD*).

| Picture format | Description |
|---|---|
| **Automatic** | The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimum ratio. Black bars may appear on the sides of the display, depending on the source format and the Infotainment system display that is installed. |
| **Zoom** | The image is enlarged to fill the entire Infotainment system display. Switch the function off if the image is distorted. |
| **Cinemascope** | Use this setting for films in cinema format 21:9. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display. |
| **Original** | The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off when **Auto** is selected. |

1) The function automatically switches off when the source is changed.

2) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

| Picture format | Description |
|---|---|
| **4:3** | The image is fixed in the 4:3 picture format. Black bars are shown on the sides of the Infotainment system display. |
| **16:9** | The image is fixed in the 16:9 picture format. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display. |

**Tips**

– Not all video DVDs have parental control.

– The protection levels for the **Parental control** are based on the US standards from the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Note that the age levels for video DVDs in European countries may differ.

– Password entry for **Parental control** will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row. The password can only be reset by an authorized Audi dealer.

# Supported media and file formats

## Overview

*The following audio/video file properties are supported by the DVD drive*, the Jukebox*, the SD card reader and the USB storage device* connection:*

| | Audio files | | | | Video files* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Supported media** | **SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity of up to 128 GB<br>**DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, song)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player;<br>**Audi music interface***: mobile devices (such as an iPod ⇨ *page 229*, MTP player, USB storage device in "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" that conforms to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play-capable), external USB flash drives and hard drives | | | | | | |
| **File system** | **Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS<br>**USB storage device**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS<br>**USB storage device partitions (primary/logical***: 2 per USB-connection<br>**CD/DVD file system:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF | | | | | | |
| **Metadata** | **Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote* is displayed, depending on availability. | | | | | | |
| **Format** | MPEG 1/2 Layer 3 | Windows Media Audio 9 and 10 | MPEG 2/4 | FLAC | MPEG 1/2 | MPEG4 AVC (H.264) | Windows Media Video 9 |
| **File extension** | .mp3 | .wma | .m4a;<br>.m4b;<br>.aac | .flac | .mpg;<br>.mpeg | .mp4;<br>.m4v;<br>.mov;<br>.avi | .wmv;<br>.asf |
| **Playlists** | .M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX | | | | | | |

8V2012721BF

| | Audio files | | Video files* |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Characteristics** | up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies | 48 kHz sampling frequency | up to maximum 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at maximum 25 fps |
| **Number of files** | **DVD drive***: max. 1,000 files per medium<br>**Jukebox***: approximately 10 GB memory capacity; max. 3,000 files can be imported<br>**USB storage device and memory cards**: max. 10,000 files per medium; max. 1,000 files per playlist/directory | | |

**Tips**

- The media drives do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
- For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.
- Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the system language and cannot always be guaranteed.
- The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its "USB Device Subclass".
- Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

## CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

*The following audio file properties are supported by the CD drive:*

| | Audio files | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Supported media** | Audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB | | | |
| **File system** | **CD file system**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF | | | |
| **Metadata** | **Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium may be displayed, depending on availability. | | | |
| **Format** | MPEG 1/2 Layer 3 | Windows Media Audio 9 and 10 | MPEG 2/4 | FLAC |
| **File extension** | .mp3 | .wma | .m4a;<br>.m4b;<br>.aac | .flac |
| **Playlists** | .M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX | | | |
| **Characteristics** | up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies | | | 48 kHz sampling frequency |
| **Number of files** | Maximum 1,000 files per medium | | | |

**Tips**

- For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.

▶

– Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) display differently depending on the system language and cannot always be guaranteed.

# Troubleshooting

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Audi music interface**/**Bluetooth audio player***: mobile device is not supported. | Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 229, Multimedia connections*/⇨ *page 226, Bluetooth audio player*. You can learn about supported mobile devices in the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth. |
| **Audi music interface**: the volume is too high/too low when starting playback through the AUX input. | Adjust the volume of the mobile device to approximately 70% of the maximum output ⇨ *page 235,* **Input level**. |
| **Audi music interface**: the portable device is not recognized as a source. | For many cell phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% of its capacity). The mobile device will only be recognized as a source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge is sufficient. |
| **Audi music interface**: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone. | The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 246* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**. |
| **Audi music interface**: contents that are changed on a mobile device connected to the Audi music interface [a)] are not displayed in the media center. | Reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 244*. |
| **AUX input**: there is static when connecting and disconnecting the AUX connection cable. | When connecting and disconnecting, the **External audio player** source is already selected. Before connecting or disconnecting the mobile device, either mute the device (see ⇨ *page 247*) or switch to a different audio source (for example ⇨ *page 218, Opening the radio*). |
| **Bluetooth audio player***/**Wi-Fi audio player***: audio playback interference. | Only *one* interface should be actively used at a time to ensure problem-free playback. |
| **Wi-Fi audio player***: audio playback interference. | Audio playback interference can occur on some cell phones if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established through the SIM card reader on the MMI control panel and the **mobile data** option on the cell phone is switched on. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your cell phone. |
| **Jukebox***: tracks on the imported playlist are grayed out. | When importing playlists, all of the files themselves must be imported. |
| **Jukebox***: imported tracks cannot be played or found. | If you cannot find imported tracks in the media center, they may not be supported. Only copy supported files ⇨ *page 237* to the Jukebox. |

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Wi-Fi audio player***: multiple devices are connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (such as a smartphone) appears as the source and cannot be changed. | Close the **Audi MMI connect** app on the connected devices (for example, smartphones) that are not being used as the Wi-Fi audio player*. Likewise, close the UPnP server apps or the media permissions on the integrated UPnP/DLNA server. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player* ⇨ *page 227*. |
| **Online media***: connection failed between the MMI and the **Audi MMI connect** app. | To establish a connection to the MMI, the MMI connection switch must be switched on in the **Audi MMI connect** app status screen. |
| **Bluetooth audio player***: interference with track display and audio playback. | Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. Audi recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone). |
| **Wi-Fi hotspot***: your Wi-Fi device is disconnected from the Wi-Fi hotspot. | Make sure the network optimization functions are switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or in the network settings for your Wi-Fi device. For additional information refer to the user guide for your Wi-Fi device. |
| **Audi music interface**: audio playback through the connected mobile device is not possible. | Make sure the USB mode *MTP* is selected in the settings on your mobile device. |

a) Applies only to MTP devices. Does not apply to Apple devices and USB mass storage devices.

# Audi smartphone interface

## Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

*You can connect your smartphone to the MMI using the Audi smartphone interface. Certain content on your smartphone is adapted to the Infotainment system display while driving and can be operated through the MMI control panel.*

**Requirement**

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

iPhone generation 5 or higher with Lightning connector and iOS 7.1.2 operating system or higher. **Or**:

Smartphone with Android Auto app and Android 5.0 Lollipop operating system or higher.

- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 230* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 229, fig. 206*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Activate Apple CarPlay** or **Activate Android Auto now**.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts on your smartphone if applicable.

If you chose not to use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto when connecting your smartphone for the first time, you can start the Audi smartphone interface later on using the **Connection manager**.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi smartphone interface** > **Change to connection manager**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 229, fig. 206*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Audi smartphone** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 244*. You can select your smartphone in the list of devices that are already paired ⇨ *page 245*.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

**Tips**

- The functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:
  - the brand of your smartphone
  - the version of the operating system in your smartphone
  - the software version of the app used
  - the USB adapter cable and correct connection
  - your cell phone service provider
  - the customized settings on your smartphone
- One of the factors above or a combination of any of them could cause your smartphone to be incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. For more information and assistance, refer to the user guide and the manufacturer of your smartphone.
- If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice recognition system ⇨ *page 175*.
- The menu language shown in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- The time displayed in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- Several MMI functions are not available when Apple CarPlay or Android Auto is active.
- You cannot connect any mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Apple CarPlay connection is active.
- When the Apple CarPlay connection is active, **Tag this song for iTunes*** is not available ⇨ *page 219*.

## Operating

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

**Opening a menu**

**Apple CarPlay**: you can go back to the Apple CarPlay main menu regardless of the selected menu item by pressing and holding the BACK button.

**Android Auto**: to go back to the Android Auto menu bar, push the control knob down. ▶

### Opening a menu item

Select and confirm a menu item using the MMI control panel.

# Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Audi smartphone interface** cannot be opened. | Check the charge level of your smartphone battery.<br>Check the USB cable and use a different one if necessary.<br>Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country. |
| | **Android Auto**: check if the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone. |
| **Connecting** the smartphone to the MMI failed. | Check if you are using the correct USB adapter and if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 229*. |
| | **Apple CarPlay**: check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone. |
| | **Android Auto**: check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles. |
| The smartphone is not automatically detected. | Check if you are using the correct USB adapter and if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 229*.<br>Check if the requirements needed to connect a smartphone have been met. |

# System settings

## Setting the date and time

*You can set the clock time manually or using the GPS*.*

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**.
- **Or**: select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Date & time**.

### Automatic setting

When this function is switched on ☑, the time and date are automatically set.

### Time

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Time** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

### Date

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Date** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

### Time zone

When selecting the appropriate time zone, a sampling of countries in this zone will be listed.

### Automatic time zone*

When this function is switched on ☑, the time will automatically adjust to the corresponding time zone.

### Automatic daylight saving time*

When this function is switched on ☑, the time will automatically switch to daylight saving time.

### Time format

If you select **24h**, the clock will display, for example, **13:00**. If you select **AM/PM**, the clock will display, for example, **1:00 PM**.

### Date format

If you select **DD.MM.YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **31.08.2017**. If you select **MM/DD/YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **08/31/2017**. If you select **YYYY-MM-DD**, the date display will show, for example, **2017-08-31**.

## MMI settings

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

### Language

You can change the display language as well as the language for the voice guidance* and voice recognition system*.

The number of languages available depends on the market.

### Measurement units

The following measurement units can be set depending on availability: **Speed**, **Distance**, **Temperature**, **Fuel consumption**, **Volume**, **Pressure**.

### Tool tips

When this function is switched on ☑, your MMI shows you tips for input. The frequency of how often it displays decreases with time.

### Speech dialog system

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

**Command display**: when this function is switched on ☑, the MMI will show you the possible commands for voice input in the respective menu.

**Short dialog**: when this function is switched on ☑, a shorter form of the prompts is used.

**Command during voice output***: this function is switched on at the factory. When this function is switched on ☑, you can say new commands during announcements. You do not need to wait for the signal tone (beep) during an announcement. When the function is switched off ☐, you need to ▶

wait for the signal tone (beep) to say a new command.

**Volume**: you can adjust the volume of the prompts by turning the control knob.

**Individual speech training** (only when the vehicle is stationary): you can adapt the voice recognition system to your voice or pronunciation in order to improve the system's ability to recognize your speech. Individual speech training is comprised of 20 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers. You can delete the programmed voice training with the **Reset individual speech training** function.

### Display brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the Infotainment system display by turning the control knob.

### Factory settings

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following functions can be reset to factory settings:

– **Sound settings**
– **Radio**
– **Media settings**
– **Jukebox***
– **Directory**
– **Telephone**
– **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi***
– **Navigation settings***
– **Navigation and online memory***
– **Speech dialog system***
– **Message settings***
– **Apps***
– **Tool tips**
– **Audi connect***
– **Audi smartphone interface***

You can select the desired functions individually or all at once with the option **Select all entries**. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

**Tips**

– Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if applicable.
– Please note that the voice recognition system* is not available in Cabriolets.

# Connection manager

## Introduction

*The connection manager gives you an overview of your connected devices and their network status.*

**Fig. 214** Connection manager

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.
▸ Select and confirm a menu item.

If a mobile device was already connected and you select and confirm the corresponding menu item, the device name and connection mode are displayed under the menu item ⇨ *fig. 214*.

You can individually **Connect** (☑) or **Disconnect** (☐) a paired device.

Requirement:

– The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.
– The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup.
– The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 246* and mobile device must be switched on.
– The mobile device to be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

## Primary phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
– **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

## Secondary phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
– **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

## Data connection

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

– The data connection is made using the embedded SIM card [1] ⇨ *page 190*. You do not need to adjust any additional settings.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

## MMI connect app

Applies to vehicles with Audi connect (Infotainment)

Requirement: the **Audi MMI connect** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
– **List of devices already paired**: select your mobile device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

## Audio player

Applies to vehicles with Bluetooth or Wi-Fi audio player

### Bluetooth player*

Requirement: the Bluetooth function and visibility must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 246* and on the Bluetooth audio player.

– **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Select **Bluetooth audio player**. Search for and connect a mobile device.
– **List of devices already paired**: select a Bluetooth device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

### Wi-Fi audio player*

Requirement: the Wi-Fi hotspot* on the MMI ⇨ *page 195* and on your Wi-Fi audio player must be switched on.

– **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi capable device.
– **Disconnect Wi-Fi audio player**: deactivate the Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi capable device. The device will be automatically removed from the list.

**Note**

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in Wi-Fi hotspot on page 195*.

## Directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

*Display contacts from a cell phone (or an additional cell phone).*

Requirement: no cell phones can be connected to the MMI using the **Handsfree** profile.

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a new cell phone.
– **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the cell phones that are already paired.

## Audi smartphone

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

– Connect your cell phone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 230* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 229, fig. 206*.
– Select your cell phone from the list of cell phones that have already been connected.

## Additional options

Depending on the selected function, you can use the right control button to access the available additional options in the connection manager. ▶

[1] SIM card installed in the vehicle at the factory.

### Delete Bluetooth device*

The selected cell phone/mobile device is disconnected from the MMI and is removed from the list of all devices that are already paired.

### Show Bluetooth profiles*

You can **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree**, **Messages***, **Directory/contacts** and **Bluetooth audio player** profiles separately.

### Bluetooth settings*

– **Bluetooth**: select and confirm a setting for the Bluetooth connection visibility. Select **Visible** for the MMI to be visible to other devices. Select **Invisible** for the MMI to not be visible to other devices. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with paired devices when the visibility is switched off. Select **Off** to turn visibility off. Then a Bluetooth connection is not possible.
– **Bluetooth audio player**: when this function is switched on ☑, the Bluetooth audio player is available as a source in the **Media** menu.
– **Bluetooth name**: the MMI Bluetooth name (for example "AUDI MMI") is displayed and can be changed.

### Online settings*

– **Data usage counter**: the amount of data packets that are sent and received through the MMI is displayed. You can reset the data usage information to zero using the **Reset data counter** option.
– **Network status**: the mobile network provider for data service as well as the network status are displayed.

### Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 195, Wi-Fi hotspot*.

### Storing as a default telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 177*.

As soon as the cell phone is in range and the Bluetooth function on the cell phone and in the MMI is switched on, this cell phone is given priority over the other Bluetooth devices and is connected directly to the MMI. The connected cell phone is displayed first in the device list.

### Network settings*

– **Login**: you can chose an **automatic** login to your cell phone service provider's network, or you can choose a **manual** login from the list of available networks.
– **Network selection**: available networks in the present location can be selected under network selection. This function is only available for the **Manual** login setting.

### Apple CarPlay sound settings/Android Auto sound settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

See ⇨ *page 247*.

### About Apple CarPlay/About Android Auto

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Here you will find legal information regarding the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto and information about device-specific data exchange.

### Delete Apple CarPlay device/Delete Android Auto device

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Requirement: your cell phone must not be connected to the Audi music interface with a USB adapter.

Select: **Audi smartphone** > a device from the list > right control button.

To remove your cell phone from the list, select and confirm **Delete Apple CarPlay device** or **Delete Android Auto device**.

## System update

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

– **System update**: slide the storage device with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 224*. Select and confirm the drive > **Start update**. The length of the process depends on the size of the update.
– **Reset driver installation**: the selected media driver package is reset to the settings at the time of delivery. ▶

– **Version information**: information on the MMI software version and the navigation database* software version is displayed. The **Software information** function also provides information on the software contained in the MMI and the licensing agreement.

# Sound settings

*The sound distribution and volume of the MMI can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on vehicle equipment.*

**Fig. 215** Adjusting the balance/fader

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**.

### Treble/Bass

You can adjust the **Treble** and **Bass** settings by turning the control knob. The changed settings only apply for the audio source that is active at the time. This allows you to adjust the sound settings for each audio source separately.

### Balance/fader (Sound focus)

– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the left or right**: press the control knob. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the front or rear**: press the control knob again. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution using the MMI touch***: move your finger on the MMI touch control panel* in the desired direction.

### Sound effects

Select and confirm a **Focus** setting:

– **All**: all speakers in the vehicle are active (symmetrical sound distribution).
– **Front**: only the speakers in the front of the vehicle are active.
– **Rear***: only the speakers in the rear of the vehicle are active.

### Surround level

Turn the control knob to adjust the surround sound level.

### Subwoofer

Turn the control knob to adjust the subwoofer.

### Speed dependent volume control*

Turn the control knob to adjust the playback volume to the noise inside the vehicle.

# Volume settings

## Adjusting the volume

*The volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system*) can be adjusted directly while the sound is playing using the On/Off knob.*

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the On/Off knob (1) ⇨ *page 154, fig. 155* to the right or left.
– **Muting or pausing**: press the On/Off knob briefly. **Or**: turn the On/Off knob to the left until the symbol (12) ⇨ *page 163* appears. An active audio/video source is stopped.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: press the On/Off knob briefly. **Or**: turn the On/Off knob to the right.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the audio system so that audible signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

**Tips**

Volumes that are too high or too low are automatically adjusted to a set level when the MMI is switched on.

## Adjusting the system volume

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

### Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

**Mute telephone**: messages and ringtones are set to mute.

**Ringtone**: see ⇨ *page 188,* **Ringtone and volume settings**.

**Ringtone volume**: you can adjust the volume of the selected ringtone by turning the control knob.

**Message volume**: you can adjust the volume of the notification for an incoming text message by turning the control knob.

**Microphone input level**: you can adjust the call volume during a phone call by turning the control knob.

### Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

**Voice guidance**: see ⇨ *page 210*.

**Voice guidance during phone call**: see ⇨ *page 210*.

**Voice guidance volume**: you can adjust the voice guidance volume by turning the control knob. **Or**: you can adjust the voice guidance volume during active route guidance by turning the On/Off knob.

**Entertainment fader**: the volume of audio playback can be temporarily lowered when the parking system or voice guidance is active.

### Voice recognition system

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

**Command display**: see ⇨ *page 243*.

**Short dialog**: see ⇨ *page 243*.

**Volume**: see ⇨ *page 243*.

**Individual speech training**: see ⇨ *page 243*.

### Parking aid*

You can adjust the volume of the signal tone by turning the control knob.

– **Adjusting** the **Front volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.
– **Adjusting** the **Rear volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

### MMI touch*

Turn the control knob to adjust the volume of the spoken prompts from the MMI touch*.

# Restarting the MMI

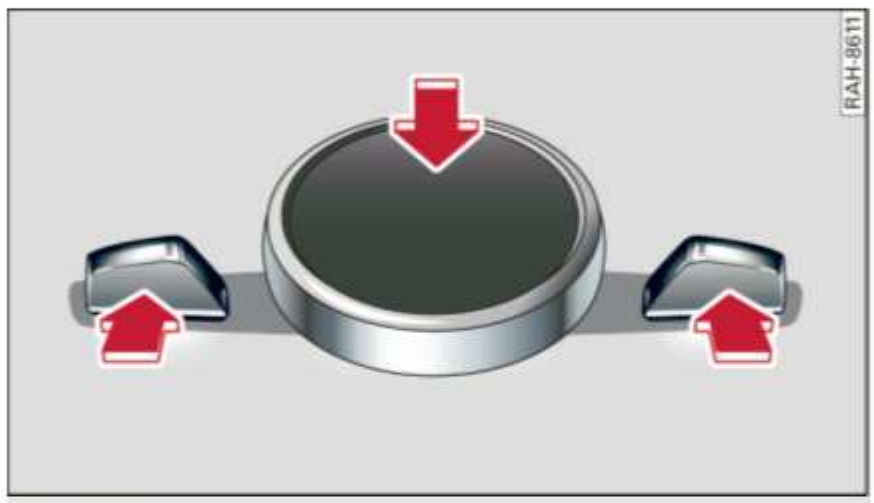



**Fig. 216** Button combination to restart the system

▸ Briefly press the control knob and both buttons *at the same time* to immediately open the menu upward ⇨ *fig. 216*.

# Software license information

### Information on MMI software and licensing agreements

– Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information**.
– **Or**: online at www.audiusa.com/softwareinfo.

### Information on instrument cluster software and licensing agreements

Press the reset button twice within five seconds after switching the ignition on [1].

[1] Not available in all vehicles.

# Driving safety

## Basics

### Safe driving habits

*Please remember - safety first!*

The individual safety features of your vehicle can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

**WARNING**

– Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
– Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
– Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

### Important things to do before driving

*Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.*

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 63*, ⇨ *page 63*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.
- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 59, Front seats*.
- ▸ Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 260*.

### What impairs driving safety?

*Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.*

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- ▸ Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- ▸ NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- ▸ Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense. ▶

- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

**WARNING**

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

# Correct passenger seating positions

## Proper seating position for the driver

*The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.*

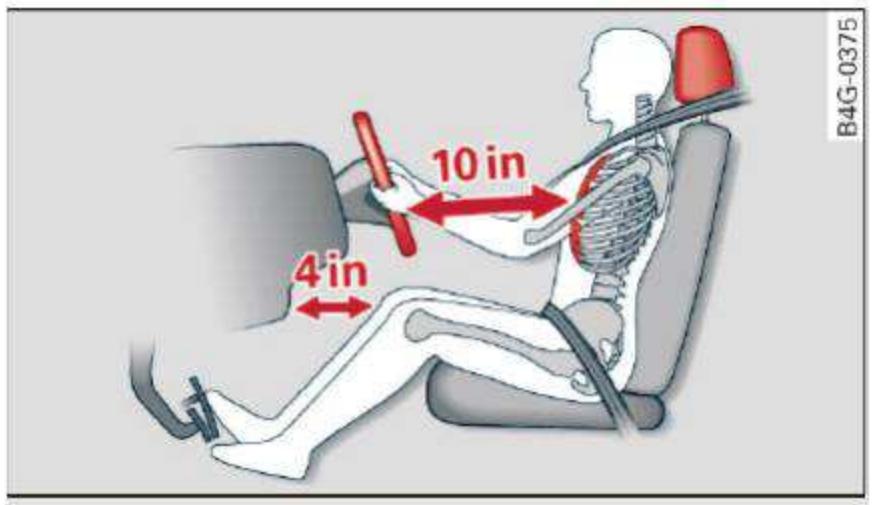



**Fig. 217** Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 217*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- For adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 264*.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 59*.

**WARNING**

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates. ▶

– Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Before driving, always adjust the front seats properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 294*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 269*.

## Proper seating position for the front passenger

*The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.*

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
▸ For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 61*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
▸ Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 264*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 59*.

**WARNING**

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Always make sure that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat properly.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due ▶

to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 294*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 269*.

## Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

*Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.*

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 61*.
- Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 264*.
- Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 294*.

**WARNING**

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the safety belts are properly positioned on the body and securely latched. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
– For adjustable head restraints: always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

## Proper adjustment of head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

*Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.*

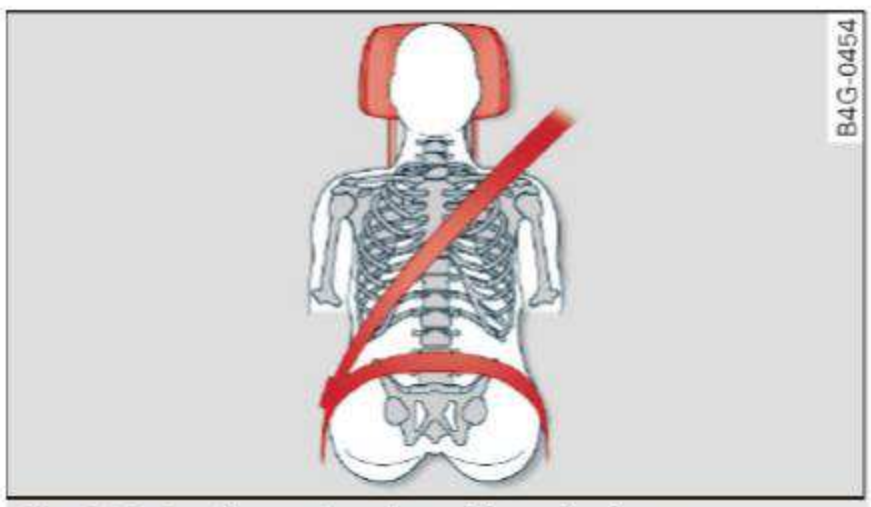



**Fig. 218** Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

- Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *fig. 218*.
- Applies to: forward/back adjustable head restraints: Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position, slide the center head restraint upward at least to the next notch.

Adjusting head restraints ⇨ *page 61*.

**WARNING**

All seats are equipped with head restraints. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury:
– Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted. ▶

- Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.
- Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- Applies to: forward/back adjustable head restraints: Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
- Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 294*.

## Examples of improper seating positions

*The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.*

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

▸ Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

**Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:**

- never stand up in the vehicle
- never stand on the seats
- never kneel on the seats
- never ride with the seatback reclined
- never lie down on the seats
- never lean up against the instrument panel
- never sit on the edge of the seat
- never sit sideways
- never lean out the window
- never put your feet out the window
- never put your feet on the instrument panel
- never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
- never ride in the footwell
- never ride in the cargo area

**⚠ WARNING**

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

# Driver's and front passenger's footwell

## Important safety instructions

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

**⚠ WARNING**

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

- No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
- No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent ▸

proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

# Pedal area

## Pedals

*The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.*

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

**WARNING**

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
- Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

## Floor mats on the driver side

*Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.*

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

**WARNING**

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
- Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

# Storing cargo correctly

## Loading the luggage compartment

*All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.*

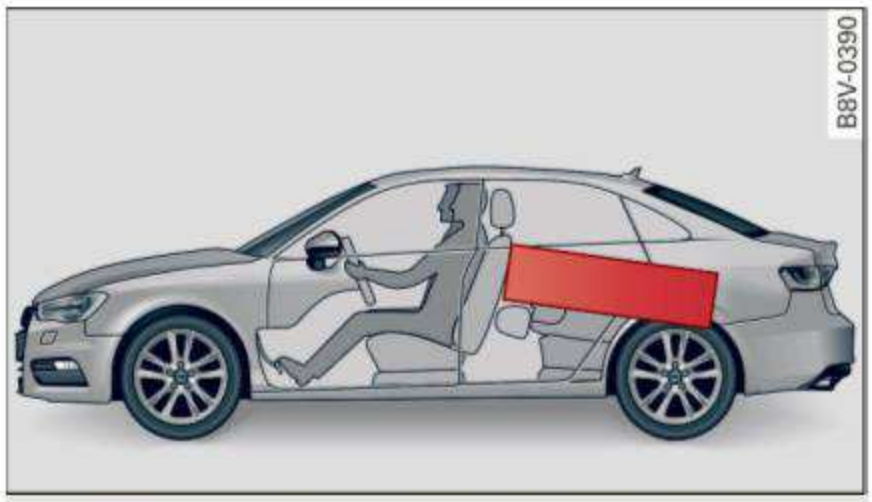



**Fig. 219** Safe load positioning: place heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.
- ▸ Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 63*.
- ▸ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

**WARNING**

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

**WARNING**

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

- Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
- Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 249*.

**WARNING**

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  - Close all windows,
  - Close the power roof*,
  - Close the power top*,
  - Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  - Switch off the air recirculation,
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

**WARNING**

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the power roof*, the power top* and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

▸

– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

**Tips**

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 341*.

## Tie-downs

*The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.*

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 255, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

**WARNING**

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

– Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
– When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
– Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

# Active rollover protection system

## Function

Applies to: vehicles with power top

*The rollover protection system protects vehicle occupants in the event of a rollover.*

**Fig. 220** Rear seats: rollbar deployment range

**Fig. 221** Rear seats: deployed rollbar

The active rollover protection system consists of:

– two rollbars
– the safety belts with belt tensioners
– the windshield frame
– the rollover sensors

The active rollover protection system provides additional safety in the event of a rollover. Within milliseconds, sensors deploy two rollbars located behind the head restraints in the rear seats ⇨ *fig. 221*.

The rollbars, reinforced windshield frame and belt tensioners help protect front and rear passengers in the event of a rollover.

The rollover protection system functions when the power top is both open and closed.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not use the area behind the rear seat head restraints ⇨ *fig. 220* as a seat or storage area. This is the area where the rollbars deploy. If the rollover protection system is triggered, objects placed there can be propelled through the vehicle and make it more difficult for the rollbars to deploy. This increases the risk for serious or life-threatening injuries.

## When is rollover protection deployed?

Applies to: vehicles with power top

*Rollover protection deploys in a collision or rollover.*

Depending on the collision, sensors throughout the vehicle and the control module trigger the rollover system to deploy.

For safety reasons, rollover protection also deploys during front, side and rear collisions above a certain level of severity.

## Retracting rollover protection

Applies to: vehicles with power top

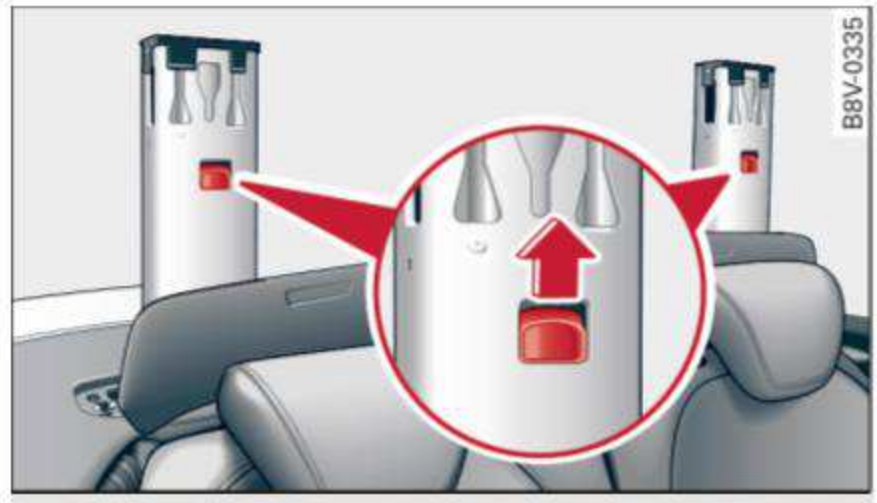



**Fig. 222** Deployed rollbar with release loop.

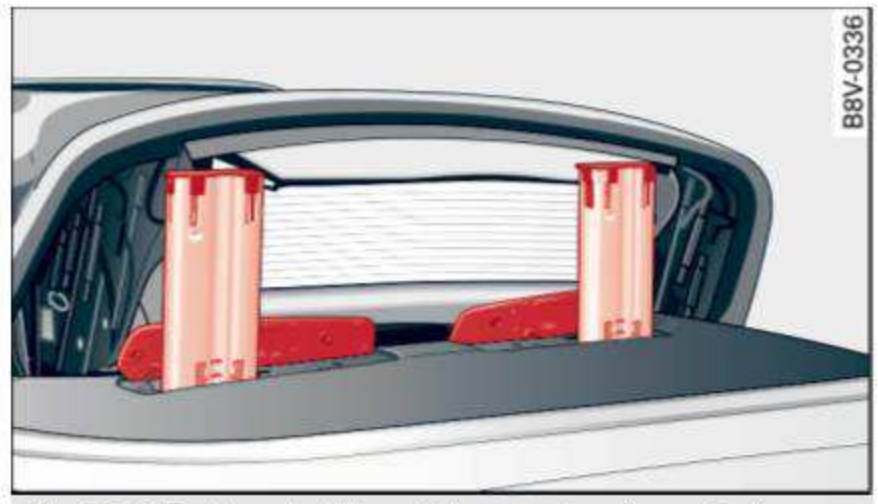



**Fig. 223** Deployed rollbar with power top frame facing upward.

If the rollover protection has triggered but the vehicle was not involved in an accident, you can retract the rollover protection yourself in an emergency. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

### With the power top open

- ▸ Pull the loop upward in the direction of the arrow and hold it in place ⇨ *fig. 222*.
- ▸ Slide the rollbar down.
- ▸ Release the loop just before the rollbar reaches its end position (1-2 in. / 3-5 cm).
- ▸ Press the rollbar down until it stops.
- ▸ Make sure the rollbar is secure before releasing it.
- ▸ Close the cover Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 223*.
- ▸ Repeat the procedure on the other rollbar.

### With the power top closed

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press the power top switch to adjust the power top frame until it is vertical ⇨ *fig. 223*.
- ▸ Pull the loop upward in the direction of the arrow and hold it in place ⇨ *fig. 222*.
- ▸ Slide the rollbar down.
- ▸ Release the loop just before the rollbar reaches its end position (1-2 in. / 3-5 cm).
- ▸ Press the rollbar down until it stops.
- ▸ Make sure the rollbar is secure before releasing it.
- ▸ Close the cover Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 223*.
- ▸ Repeat the procedure on the other rollbar.
- ▸ You can now close the power top again.

**WARNING**

- Make sure your head or other parts of your body are not located in the area above the rollbar when pressing the rollbar down. If the rollbar is not secured correctly, it could deploy again as soon as you release it and cause injuries.
- Have the rollover protection system checked by and authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if it malfunctions. Otherwise the system may not deploy correctly in a collision.
- Modifying the rollover protection system or individual components is not permitted.
- Work on the rollover protection system should only be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Otherwise the system may not function correctly in a collision or it could deploy unexpectedly.
- Have the system inspected at service intervals. This ensures the system will always be ready for use. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the rollover protection system every two years at the latest.

## Reporting Safety Defects

## Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact the NHTSA, you may either call: ▸

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or 1-800-424-9393

or you may write to:

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Ave., S.E.
West Building
Washington, DC 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

## Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired: Tel.: 1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

8V2012721BF

# Safety belts

## General notes

### Always wear safety belts!

*Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!*

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

**⚠ WARNING**

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.
– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

### Number of seats

Applies to: vehicles without power top: Your Audi has a total of five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

Applies to: vehicles with power top: Your Audi has a total of four seating positions: two in the front and two in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

**⚠ WARNING**

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

### Safety belt warning light

*Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.*

**Fig. 224** Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

**Before driving off, always:**

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

**Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.**

**⚠ WARNING**

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious ▶

injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

# Why use safety belts?

## Frontal collisions and the law of physics

*Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.*

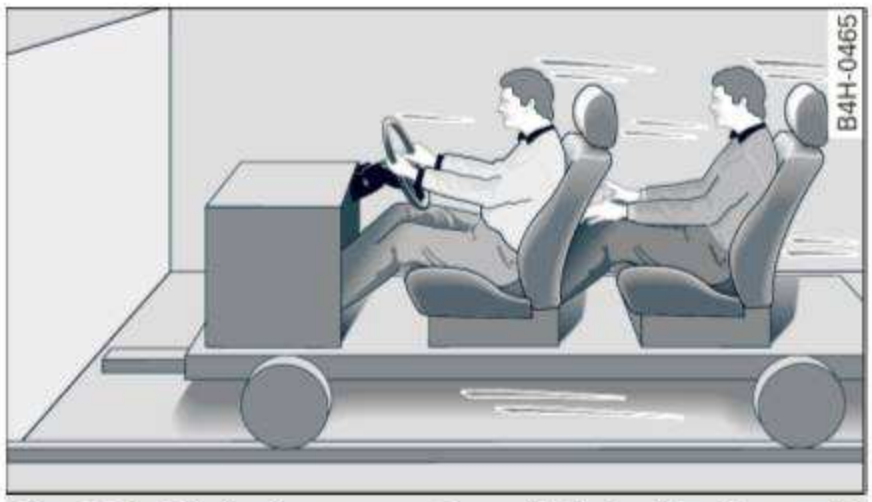



**Fig. 225** Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall

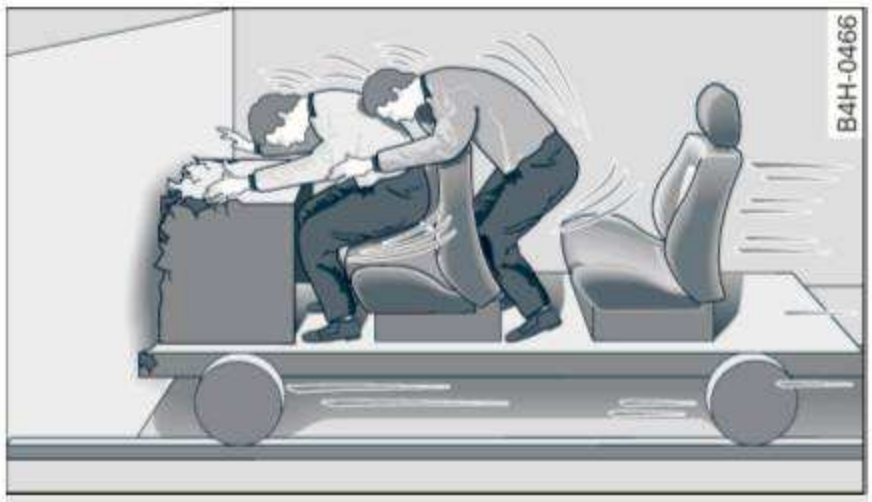



**Fig. 226** The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 225*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 226*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

## What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

*In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!*

**Fig. 227** A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward

**Fig. 228** A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 227*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 228*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

## Safety belts protect

*People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!*

**Fig. 229** Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada. ▶

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

## Important safety instructions about safety belts

*Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.*

- ▸ Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- ▸ Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

**WARNING**

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- – Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- – For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- – Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- – Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- – Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- – Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- – Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- – Never wear belts twisted.
- – Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- – Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- – Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- – Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- – Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- – Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- – Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- – Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- – Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- – Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table Interior cleaning on page 356*.

# Safety belts

## Fastening safety belts

*Safety first - everybody buckle up!*

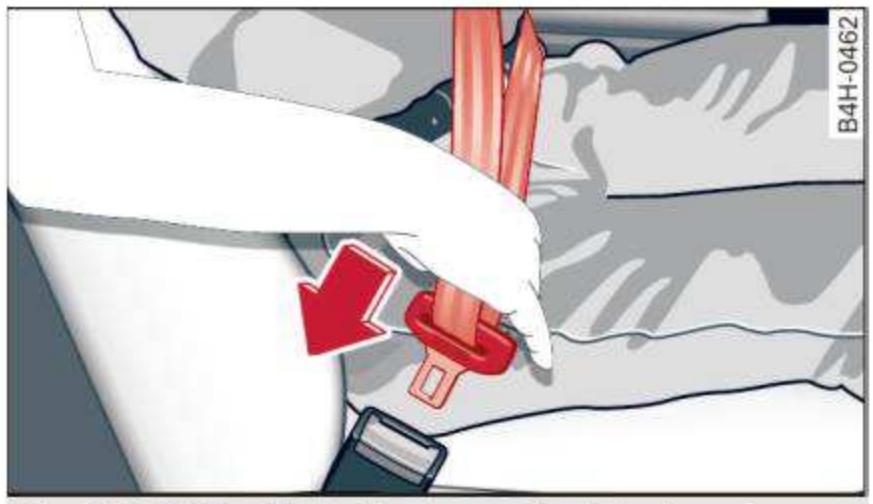



**Fig. 230** Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 59, Front seats*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 230*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

### Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

### Safety belt pretensioners

Safety belts with pretensioners help to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioners are activated ⇨ *page 267*. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 26*.

### Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 305*.

**⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 265, Safety belt position*.

- – Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
- – Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
- – Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- – A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
- – Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 307*.

## Safety belt position

*Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.*

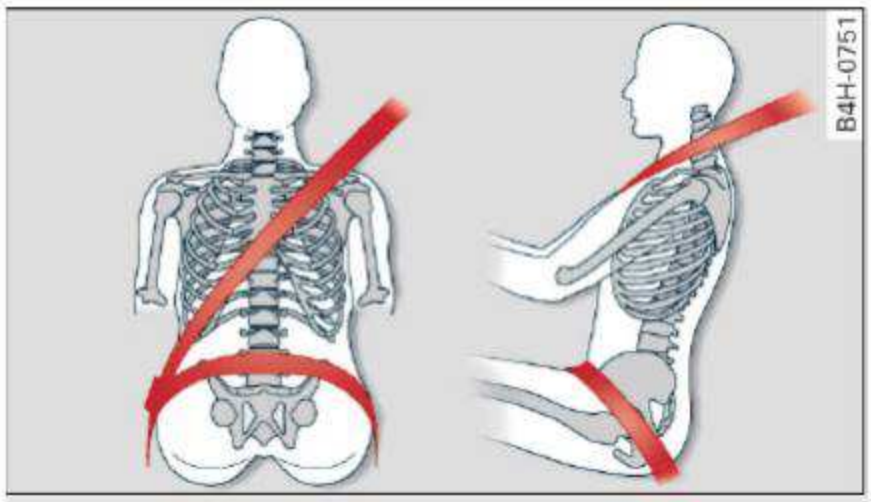



**Fig. 231** Safety belt position

Standard features on your vehicle help you adjust the position of the safety belt to match your body size.

– belt height adjustment for the front seats*,
– height-adjustable front seats.

**WARNING**

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 231*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇨ *fig. 231*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 263*.

## Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

*The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.*

**Fig. 232** Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 265*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and adjustable head restraint* correctly ⇨ *page 59, Front seats*.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen ⇨ *fig. 232*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

**WARNING**

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 264*.

## Unfastening safety belts

*Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.*

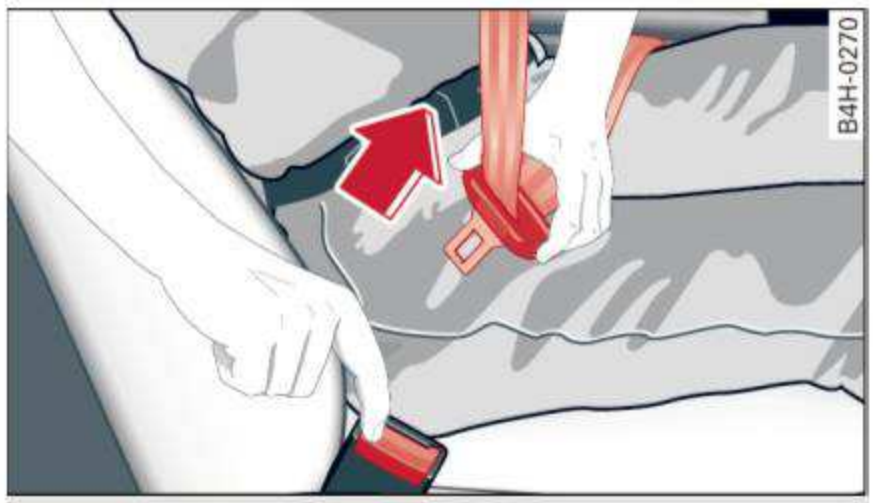



**Fig. 233** Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 233*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

## Adjusting the safety belt latch tongue

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable latch tongue

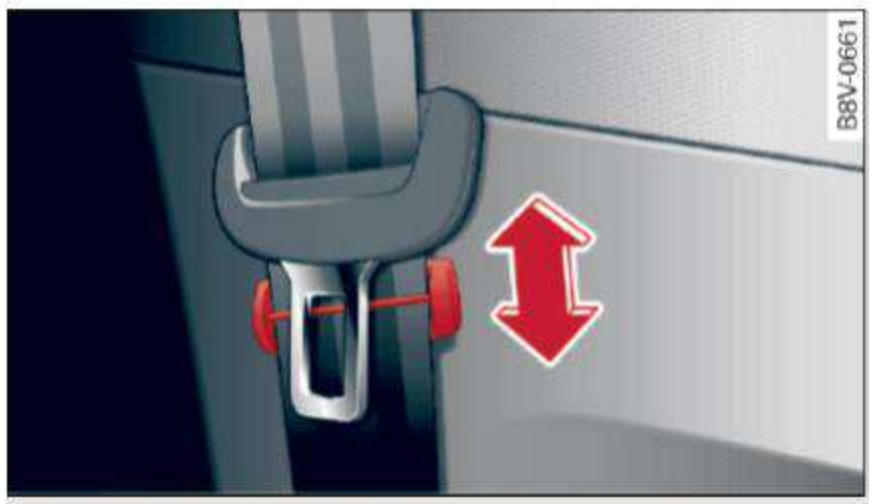



**Fig. 234** Safety belt: latch tongue clip (example)

- ▸ Slide the clip so that you can easily reach the belt latch when putting the safety belt on.

## Adjusting safety belt height

Applies to: vehicles with safety belt height adjustment

*With the aid of the safety belt height adjustment, the three point safety belt strap routing can be fitted to the shoulder area, according to body size.*

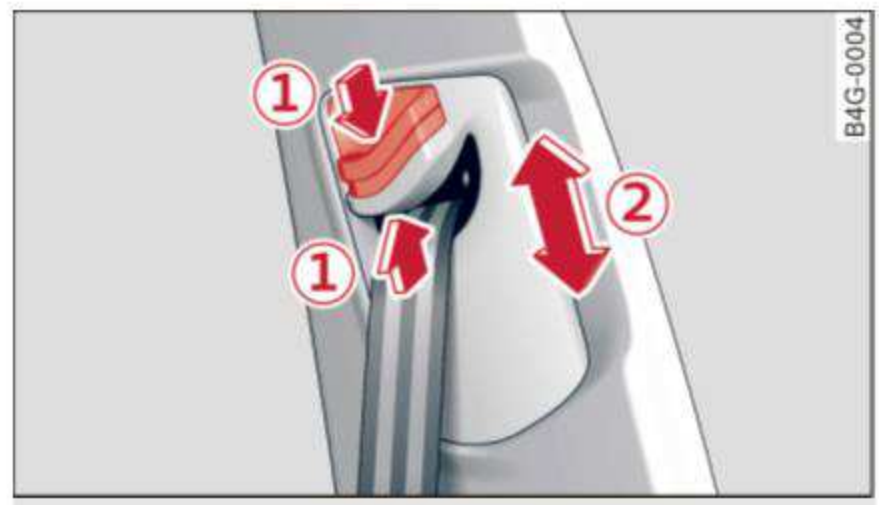



**Fig. 235** Safety belt height adjustment for the front seats – loop-around fittings

The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety belt position on page 265*.

- ▸ *Push* the loop-around fittings **up** ⇨ *fig. 235* ②, or
- ▸ *squeeze* together the ① button, and *push* the loop-around fittings **down** ②.
- ▸ Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is properly engaged.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 263*.

**ⓘ Tips**

With the front seats, the height adjustment of the seat can also be used to adjust the position of the safety belts.

## Improperly worn safety belts

*Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.*

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. ▸

Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 263*.

# Belt tensioners

## How safety belt pretensioners work

### Reversible safety belt tensioners

The following functions are available when safety belts with reversible safety belt tensioners are fastened:

- In certain driving situations, the safety belts may tighten with a reversible tensioning function ⇨ *page 130*.
- The safety belts may also tighten with this reversible tensioning function in minor collisions.

### Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

Seat belts with pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners are tensioned automatically in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

**WARNING**

- It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
- The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced.

**Tips**

- A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

## Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

**WARNING**

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

- The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system. ▶

– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

### For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

# Airbag system

## Important information

### Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

*Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.*

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 250*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 251*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 263*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 294*.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 250, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 59*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 294*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside of the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

**Always remember:** Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 260*.

**WARNING**

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 264, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 250*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

**WARNING**

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

## Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and heed the WARNINGS for important details ▶

about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 294*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for “suppression” for infants of about 12 month old and younger and for “low risk deployment” for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you switch on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 297*.
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system ⇨ *page 281, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

**For example, the airbag may deploy if:**

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 297*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 281, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*. ▶

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.

**WARNING**

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

**WARNING**

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 281, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

**WARNING**

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.

▶

– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

# Front airbags

## Description of front airbags

*The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.*

**Fig. 236** Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel

**Fig. 237** Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 236* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 237*. The general location of the airbags is marked "AIRBAG".

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

**WARNING**

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.
– Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
– Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
– Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
– Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates. ▶

– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

**WARNING**

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Always make sure nothing is in the front airbag deployment zone that could be struck by the airbag when it inflates.
– Objects in the zone of a deploying airbag can become projectiles when the airbag deploys and cause serious personal injury.
– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors; never attach then to the doors or the windshield; never place them over or near or attach them to the area marked „AIRBAG“ on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the seat backrests; never place them between these areas and you or any other person in the vehicle.
– Never attach objects to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as accessory GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during breaking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.

**WARNING**

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the „low risk“ option for 3- and 6-year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child with electrical capacitance greater than the combined capacitance of a typical one-year old infant restrained in one of the forward facing or rearward-facing child seats with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
– Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
– For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

## Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough. ▶

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 297, Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 297*,
– When a person is detected on the front passenger seat that has an electrical capacitance that is more than the total electrical capacitance of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total electrical capacitance on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

**For example, the airbag may deploy if:**

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 297*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 281*.

**Always remember:** Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly. ▶

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 269*.

**WARNING**

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

**WARNING**

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

## Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇨ *page 281*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced ▶

Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

**The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:**

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit “decides” whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also “decides” whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 281*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 318* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

**WARNING**

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. The capacitive passenger detection mat in the front passenger seat will not function properly if it is punctured.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive ▶

passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

**WARNING**

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.
– If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger frontal airbag. If this happens, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster.
– If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the passenger frontal airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat.

Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will go out.

## How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts and the adjustable head restraints* to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger frontal airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front passenger frontal airbag will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 281*.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher. ▶

– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 269*.

## More important things to know about front airbags

**Fig. 238** Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
– and for adjustable head restraints: the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three-point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

**Front airbags will not deploy:**

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

**The front passenger airbag also will not deploy:**

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side frontal airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light ⇨ *page 281* and how they work comes on and stays on).

**WARNING**

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 270*.

▶

**WARNING**

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

**WARNING**

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
- Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Objects on the front passenger seat could cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

**WARNING**

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.

- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

# Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

## Airbag monitoring indicator light

*Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the* *light and the* **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (function check).

**The system must be inspected when the indicator light** **:**

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

**WARNING**

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 26* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

## PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

**Fig. 239** Center console: passenger airbag off warning light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 239*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light burns out, the airbag indicator light will come on to signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front passenger's frontal airbag works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

**The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will blink for about 5 seconds when:**

– the ignition is switched on and
– the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

As soon as the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is proper for the age, size and electrical capacitance of the person occupying the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened. ▶

**The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will show the status of the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag a few seconds after the ignition is switched on and the airbag indicator light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:**

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified; For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 297*.
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...
– a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
– and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 270, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.

### If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight.
– make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket;
– make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
– make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
– make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

### If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on), ▶

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

### The PASSENGER AIR BAG light should NOT come on ...

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

## Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

**WARNING**

– If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

**WARNING**

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 26* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

**WARNING**

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.
– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the ▶

seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

**WARNING**

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

**Tips**

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the frontal airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

## Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

**WARNING**

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can deploy only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service ▶

action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.

– Applies to plug-in hybrid* vehicles: In the event of a collision where the airbags deploy, the electrical connection to the high voltage battery is automatically disconnected. This prevents a short circuit.

**For the sake of the environment**

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

### Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

**WARNING**

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

– Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
– Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

## Knee airbags

### Description of knee airbags

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

*The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.*

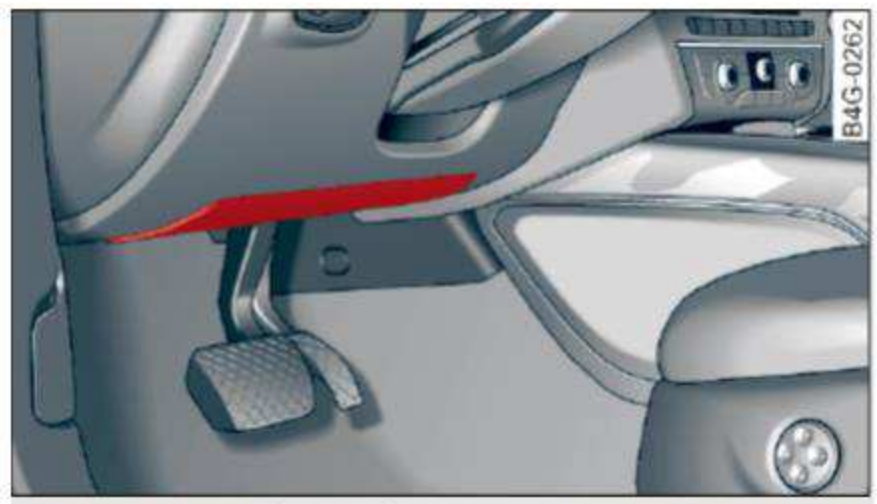



**Fig. 240** Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 240*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 279, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection. ▶

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 260, General notes*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

**The knee airbag system basically consists of:**

- The electronic control module
- Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
- The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

**The knee airbag system will not deploy:**

- when the ignition is switched off
- in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
- in side collisions
- in rear-end collisions
- in rollovers
- in the event of a system malfunction (warning/ indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 26*.

**WARNING**

- Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 279*.
- If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 26* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

## How knee airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

*The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.*

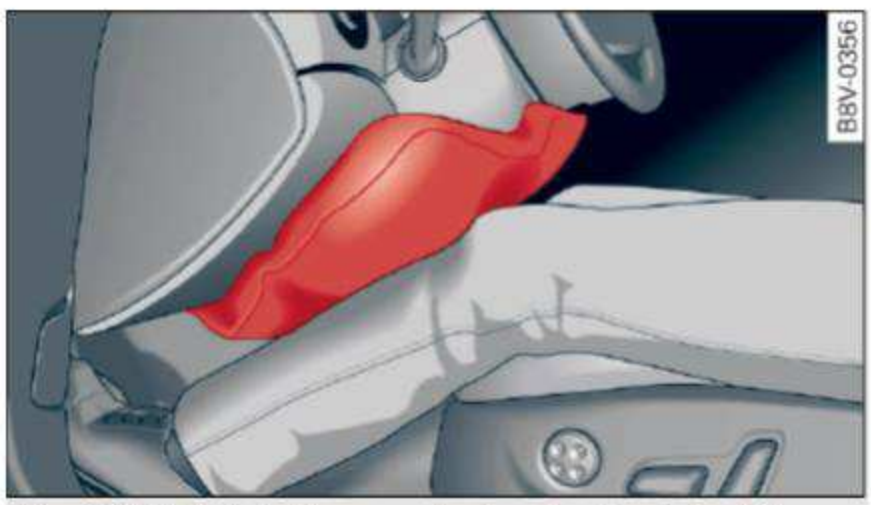



**Fig. 241** Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a compressed propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 279, fig. 238*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for ▶

occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

### Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

*Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.*

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

**WARNING**

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  - Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  - Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.

## Side airbags

### Description of side airbags

*The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.*

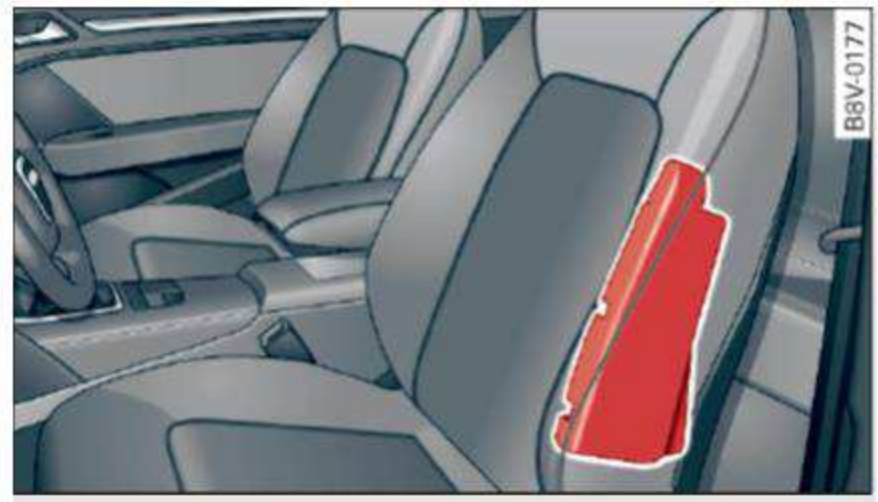



**Fig. 242** Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 242* and the rear backrest* facing the doors.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly. The side airbag for the front passenger seat ▶

can be used with properly installed child restraints. Please be sure to read the important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Safety belts ⇨ *page 260*, Airbag system ⇨ *page 269*, Child safety ⇨ *page 294*.

**The side airbag system basically consists of:**

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two airbags located in the sides of the front backrests and the two airbags* located in the rear backrest
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's, front and rear* passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 289, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 260, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

**The side airbag system will not deploy:**

– when the ignition is switched off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

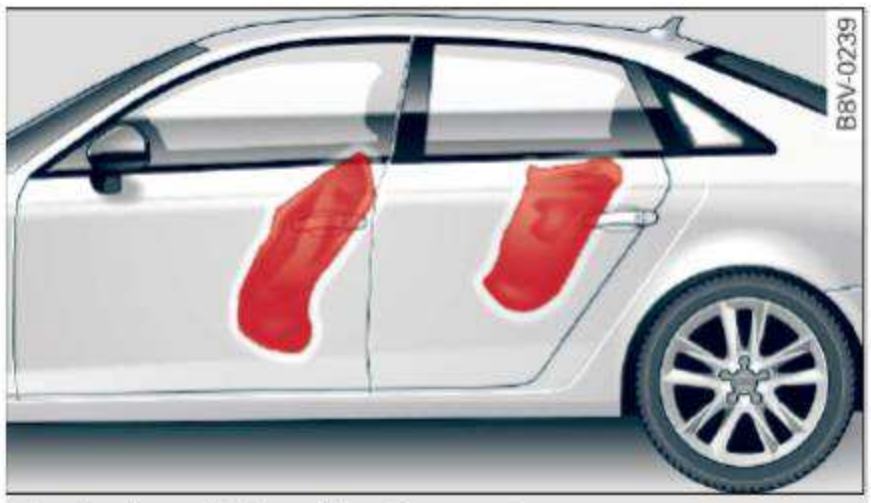
In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

**WARNING**

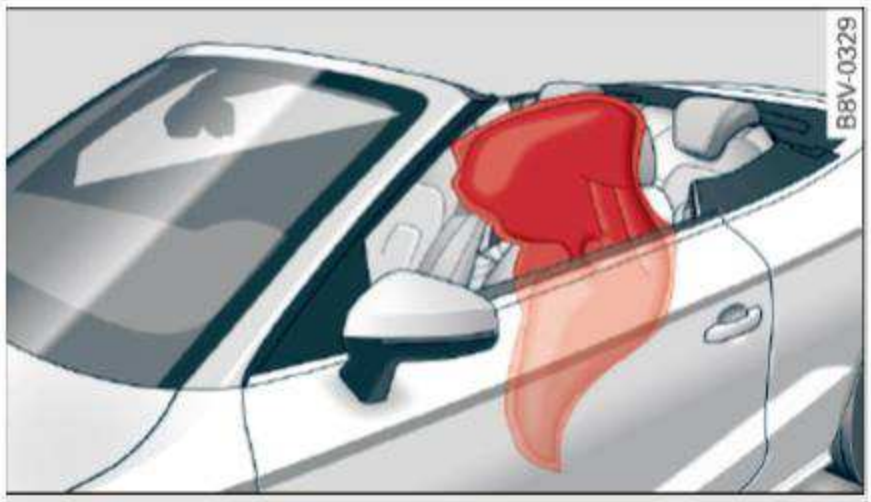
– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 289*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 26* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

## How supplemental side airbags work

*Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.*




Applies to: vehicles without power top
**Fig. 243** Side impact protection: inflated side airbags (example)




Applies to: vehicles with power top
**Fig. 244** Side impact protection: inflated side airbags

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked “AIRBAG”. It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 243*, ⇨ *fig. 244*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

## Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

*Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.*

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

**WARNING**

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy. ▶

– Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.
– Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
– Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
– Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
– Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
– Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
– Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
– Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
– Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

# Side curtain airbags

## Description of side curtain airbags

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

*The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.*

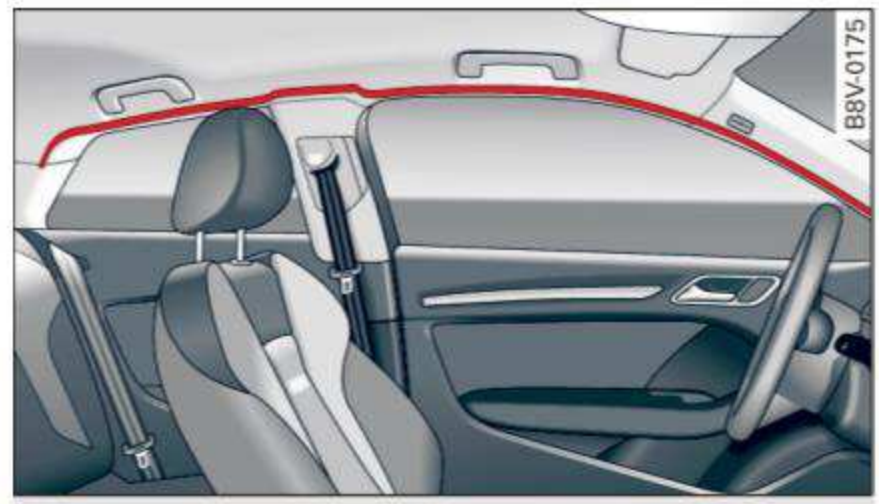



**Fig. 245** Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location (example)

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 245*. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG" on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle ▶

interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 292, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 260, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

**The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:**

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

**The side curtain airbag is not activated:**

– if the ignition is switched off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

**WARNING**

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 59, Front seats*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 26* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

## How side curtain airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

*Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.*

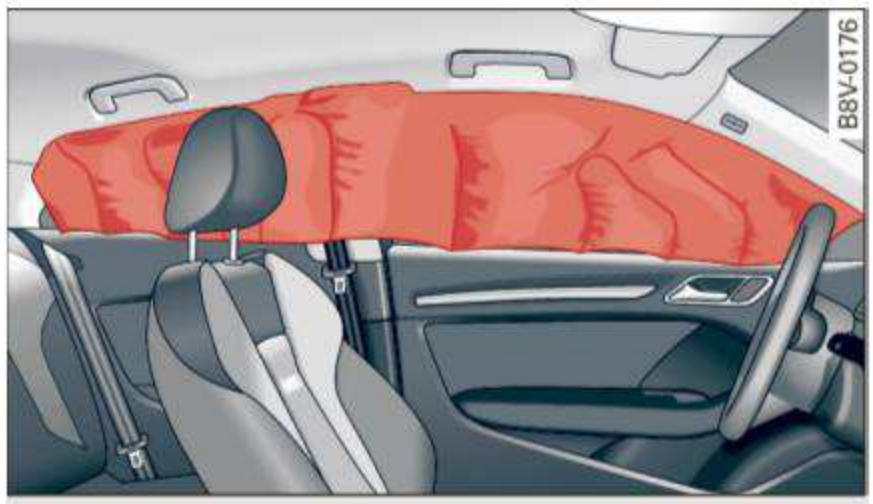



**Fig. 246** Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side (example)

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 246*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 294*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

## Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

*Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.*

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

**WARNING**

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbag inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Audi sun shades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the side curtain airbag inflates.
- A deploying airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and with great force.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a side curtain airbag.
- The airbag deployment zones must be kept clear at all times. Make sure there are no objects, pets, or other persons in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors. ▶

**WARNING**

- The airbag system can deploy only once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

# Child safety

## Important information

### Introduction

*The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.*

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 261, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings ⇨ *page 270*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information please see information provided by the:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at : http://www.safercar.gov (for the USA)
- Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: http://www.tc.gc.ca (for Canada)

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 298, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

**WARNING**

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

**WARNING**

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

**WARNING**

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Applies to: vehicles with safety belt height adjustment: Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

▶

- Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇨ *page 260, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 269, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 294, Important information*.

**Tips**

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

## Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low-risk” requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system registers the changes that result in an electrical field when a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket are on the front passenger seat. The change in the measured capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The measured capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1-year old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

## Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child and child restraint are correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different “footprints”, the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

### Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

| Model | Manufactured on or after |
|---|---|
| Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF | September 25, 2007 |

### Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

| Model | Manufactured on or after |
|---|---|
| Century SmartFit 4543 | December 1, 1999 |
| Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO | September 25, 2007 |
| Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212 | December 1, 1999 |
| Evenflo First Choice 204 | December 1, 1999 |
| Graco Infant 8457 | December 1, 1999 |
| Graco Snugride | September 25, 2007 |
| Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US | September 25, 2007 |

### Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

| Model | Manufactured on or after |
|---|---|
| Britax Roundabout E9L02xx | September 25, 2007 |
| Cosco Touriva 02519 | December 1, 1999 |
| Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262 | September 25, 2007 |
| Cosco High Back Booster 22-209 | September 25, 2007 |
| Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx | September 25, 2007 |
| Evenflo Medallion 254 | December 1, 1999 |
| Evenflo Generations 352xxxx | September 25, 2007 |
| Graco ComfortSport | September 25, 2007 |
| Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2 | September 25, 2007 |
| Graco Platinum Cargo | September 25, 2007 |

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

▶

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

**Tips**

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

## Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

*Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!*

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 300*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 305*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 300*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

**WARNING**

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
– Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  – When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  – Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  – Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
– Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
– Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
– Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  – Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  – The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.

▶

– The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  – Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  – Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  – Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  – Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  – Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  – Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  – Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  – If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  – Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  – Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  – Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
  – Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 260, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 269, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

▶

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

### Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat

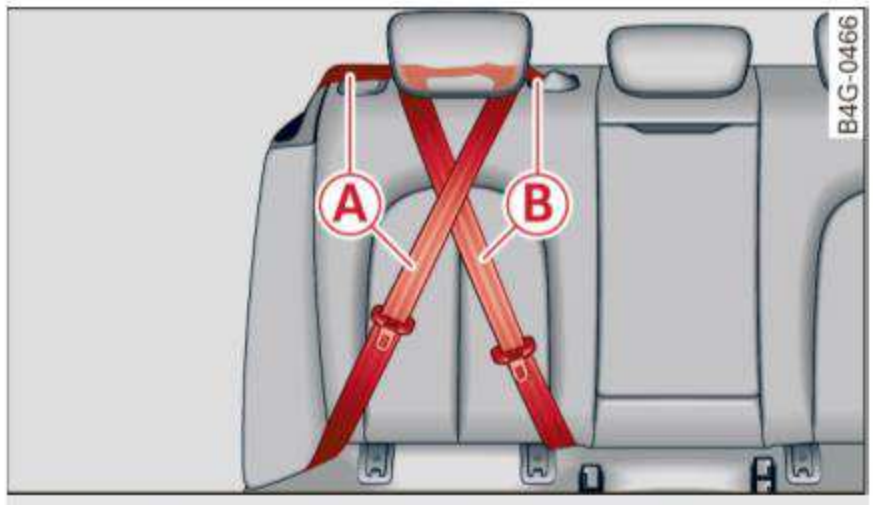



**Fig. 247** Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. Ⓐ - outer rear safety belt, Ⓑ - center rear safety belt*

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt webbings Ⓐ and Ⓑ* behind the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed ⇨ *fig. 247*. When doing so, do not engage the convertible locking retractor! You should not hear a "clicking" sound when winding up the safety belt.
– Let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

**⚠ WARNING**

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.

– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed.
– Never activate the convertible locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
– Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position* if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

# Child safety seats

### Infant seats

*Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.*

**Fig. 248** Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 305* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 300*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant ▶

seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 248*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

**WARNING**

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 270, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
- Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 260, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 269, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 294, Important information*.

## Convertible child safety seats

*Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.*

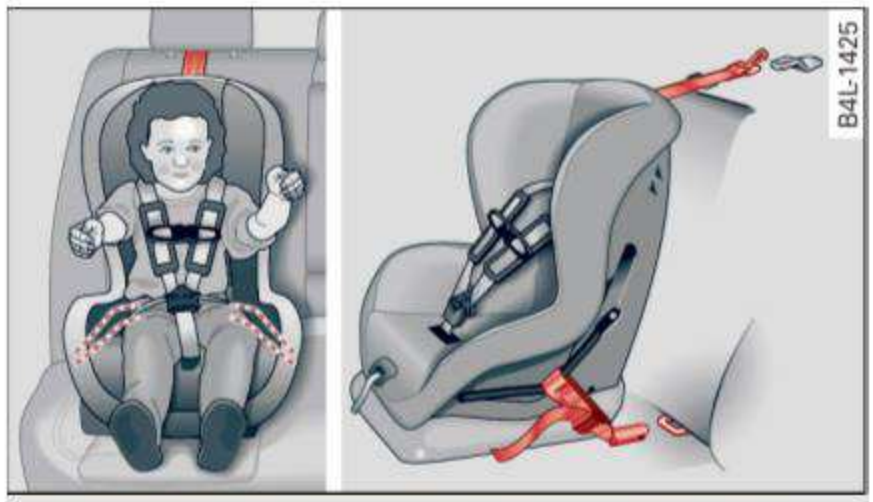



**Fig. 249** Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

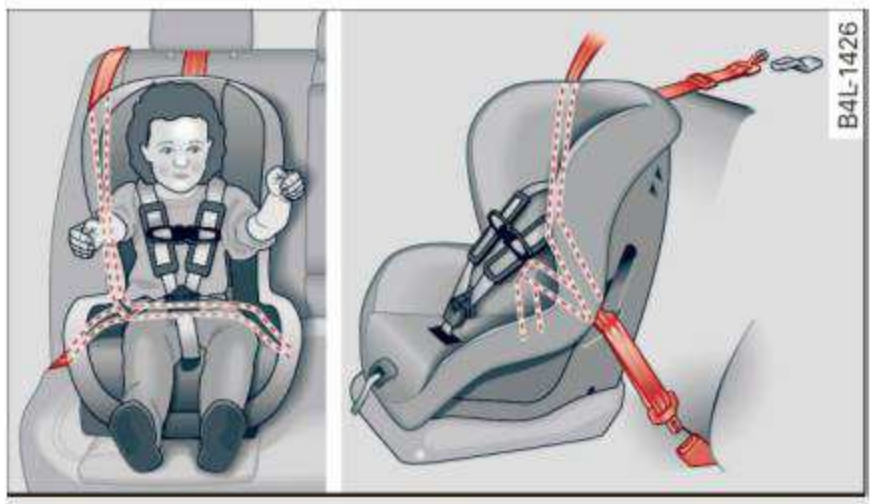



**Fig. 250** Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- ▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 305* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 305*.
- ▸ If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 311*.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 300*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 249* and ⇨ *fig. 250*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

**WARNING**

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- – Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- – The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- – Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- – If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- – The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. ▸

– For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 61*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 260, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 269, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 294, Important information*.

**WARNING**

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

## Booster seats and safety belts

*Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.*

**Fig. 251** Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Applies to: vehicles with safety belt height adjustment: If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 300*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and ▶

provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

**WARNING**

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 260*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 61*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 281, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 260, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 269, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 294, Important information*.

# Securing child safety seats

## Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

*Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.*

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. ▶

**WARNING**

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
- If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
- It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 294*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 270, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

**WARNING**

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

- Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 281, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light signals the correct front passenger frontal airbag status.

**WARNING**

Forward-facing child restraints:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag. ▶

– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

**WARNING**

Rearward-facing child restraints:
– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

## Activating the convertible locking retractor

*Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.*

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

- ▸ Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
- ▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
- ▸ Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- ▸ Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- ▸ You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- ▸ Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

**WARNING**

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.
– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.

▶

– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 294*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 270, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

### Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

*The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.*

▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

**WARNING**

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.
– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 294*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 270, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

## LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children)

### Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

In the United States, the combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the LATCH system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren". In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

In other countries the term "ISOFIX" is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or ▸

push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

**WARNING**

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

## Location

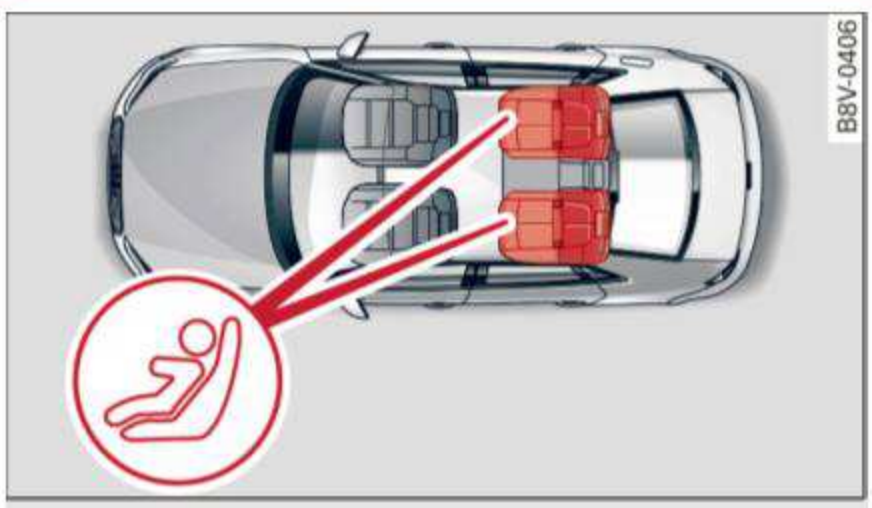



**Fig. 252** Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations (example)

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

## Description

*The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.*

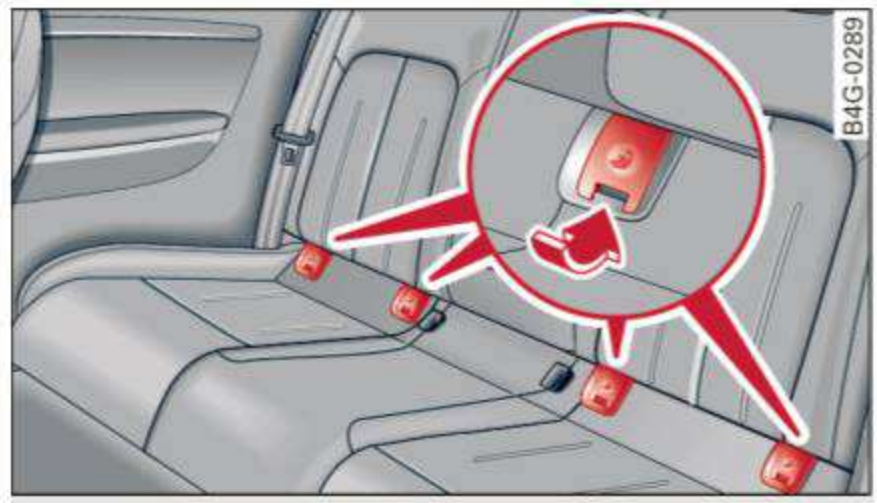



**Fig. 253** Lower anchorages, covers marked

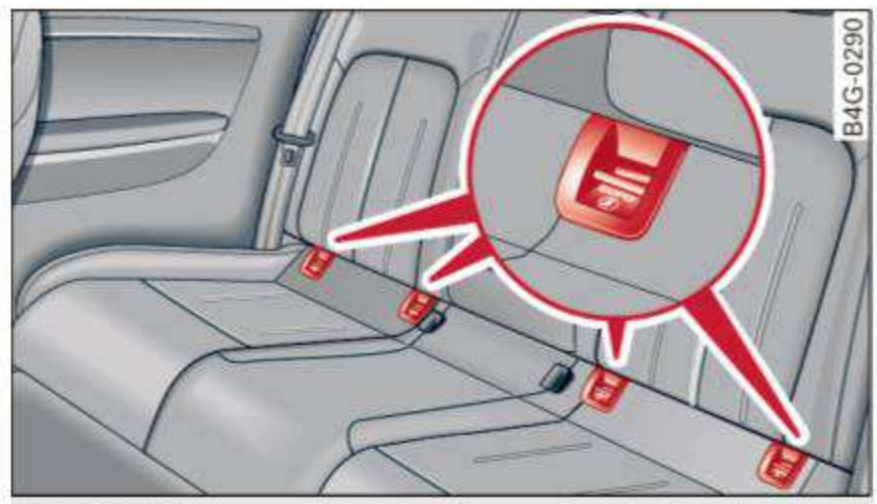



**Fig. 254** Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

### Lower anchorages

The circular markings on the rear seat help you to identify the location of lower anchorages for the two outboard seating positions ⇨ *fig. 253*. The LATCH lower universal anchorage attachment points are between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 253* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 254*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system. ▶

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

**WARNING**

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
– Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.

## Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Applies to: vehicles with Top Tether

*Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.*

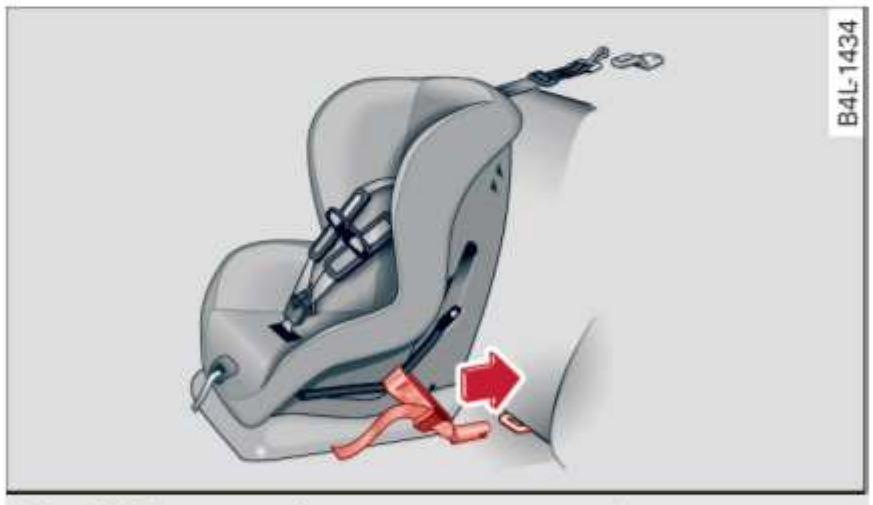



**Fig. 255** Lower anchorages: proper mounting

### Mounting

- Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 255*.
- Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

### Releasing

- Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

**WARNING**

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

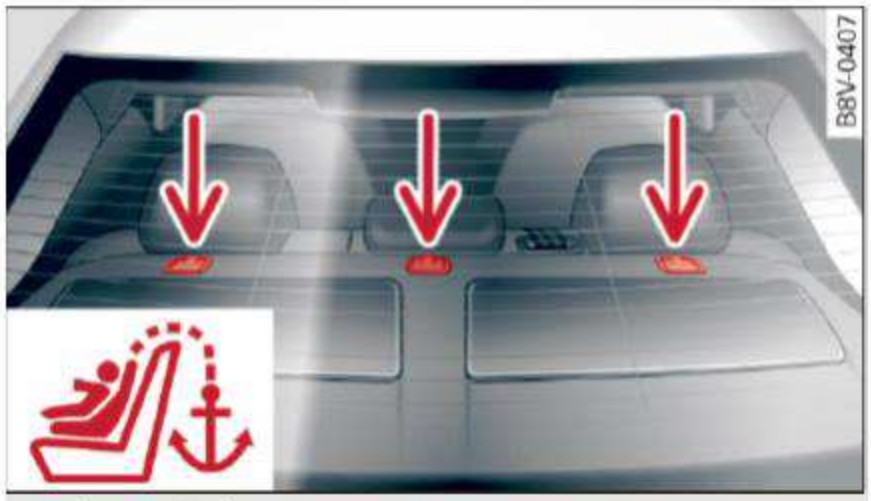
– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

**WARNING**

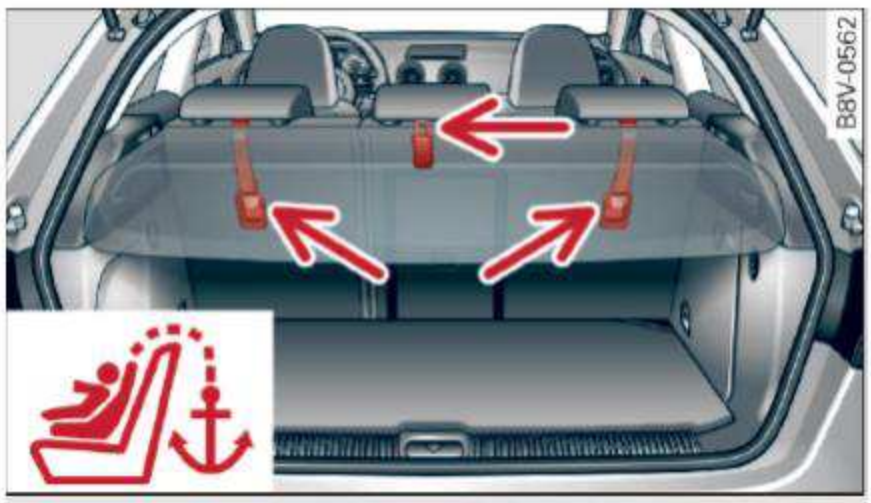
Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.

## Tether anchors and tether straps




Applies to: Sedan
**Fig. 256** Tether anchors: recess flaps behind the rear seatbacks




Applies to: Cabriolet/Sportback
**Fig. 257** Tether anchors: recess flaps behind the rear seatbacks

Applies to: Sedan: The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located in recesses in the rear window shelf ⇨ *fig. 256*

Applies to: Cabriolet/Sportback: The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located on the backside of the rear seatbacks ⇨ *fig. 257*.

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

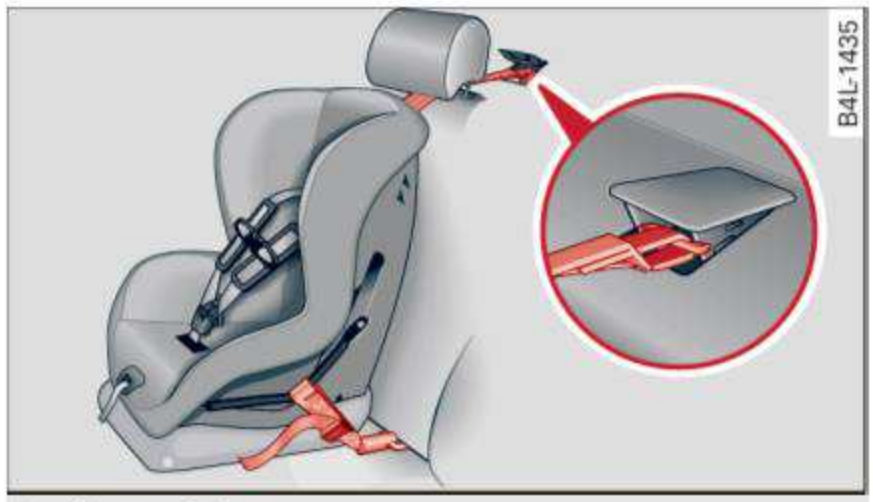
Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

**⚠ WARNING**

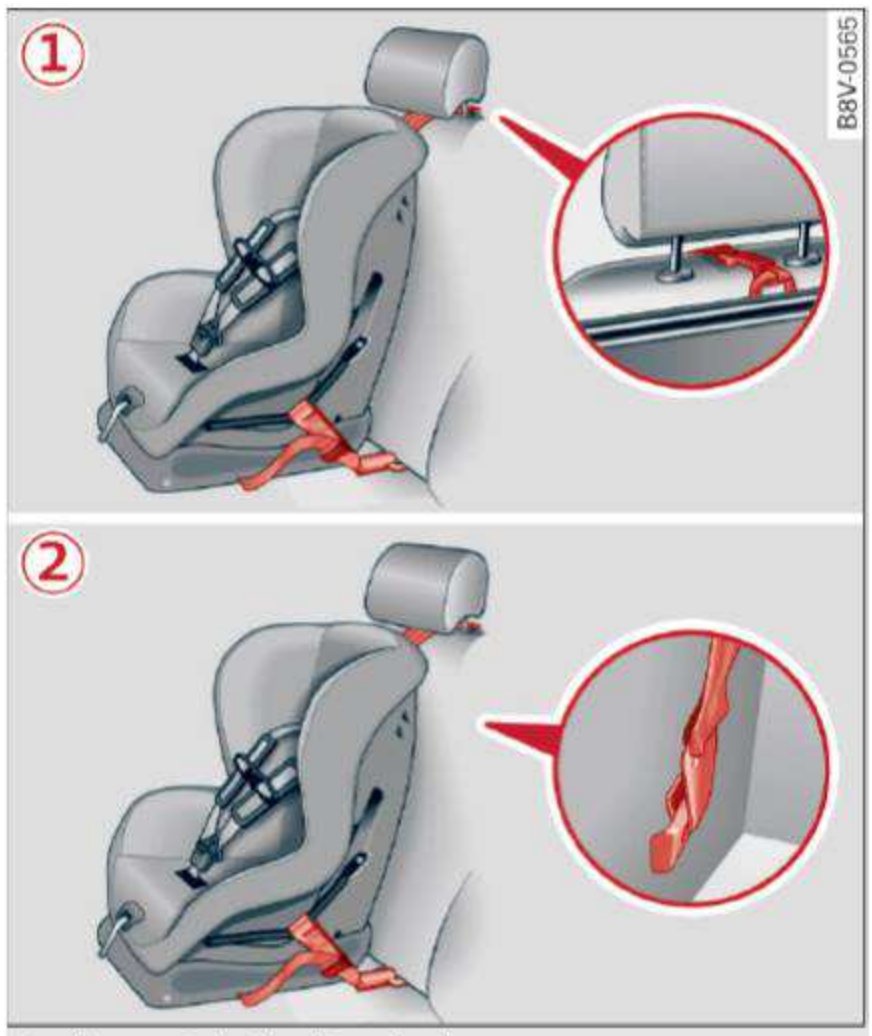
Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

## Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage




Applies to: Sedan
**Fig. 258** Tether strap: proper routing and mounting




Applies to: Cabriolet/Sportback
**Fig. 259** Tether strap: proper routing and mounting. ① center, ② outside

### Installing the tether strap

Applies to: Sedan

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary) ⇨ *fig. 258*. For child restraints with V-tether straps, always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.
- ▸ Tilt the recess flap up to expose the anchor bracket.
- ▸ Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

### Installing the tether strap

Applies to: Cabriolet/Sportback

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Applies to: Sportback: Unlock the backrest and fold it slightly forward ⇨ *page 65, Increasing the cargo area* and locate the tether anchor behind the rear seat backrest.
- ▸ Applies to: Cabriolet: Unlock the backrest and fold it slightly forward ⇨ *page 66, Pass-through* and locate the tether anchor behind the rear seat backrest.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary) ⇨ *fig. 259*. For child restraints with V-tether straps, always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.
- ▸ Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook is engaged.
- ▸ Straighten the backrest back up into its upright position and press it firmly into the locking mechanism.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

### Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place. ▶

**WARNING**

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the "LATCH" system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

**WARNING**

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 294, Child safety*.

### Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

**WARNING**

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

## Additional information

### Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

**U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration**
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

**National SAFE KIDS Campaign**
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
http://www.safekids.org

**Safety BeltSafe U.S.A.**
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
http://www.carseat.org

**Transport Canada Information Centre**
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

**Audi Customer Relations**
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

# Checking and Filling

## Fuel

### Gasoline grade

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engines

*The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.*

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. Additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline can be found on the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R+M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The following headings match the corresponding sticker in the fuel filler door.

**UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular**

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ ⓘ.

The maximum engine power is only reached if premium gasoline 91 AKI / 95 RON is used.

**UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R +M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95**

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

**Note**

– Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
– When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

**Tips**

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

### Blended gasoline

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

**Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)**

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

**Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)**

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
– Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

**Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)**

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.

**Blend of gasoline and MTBE**

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must not contain more than 15% MTBE.

**Seasonally adjusted gasoline**

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

**Note**

– Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter. ▶

- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
- If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

## Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

**Note**

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

# Refueling

## Fueling

Applies to: vehicles without plug-in hybrid drive

**Fig. 260** right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

**Fig. 261** Fuel filler door with attached fuel cap

Plug-in hybrid drive*: refer to the information under ⇨ *page 103, Refueling*.

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

- Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: note the information on ⇨ *page 103, Opening the fuel filler door*.
- Applies to: vehicles without plug-in hybrid drive: to open, press on the left side of the fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 260*.
- Unscrew the tank cap counterclockwise.
- Place the cap from above on the open fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 261*.
- Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck.
- Begin fueling. Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel. ▶

- ▸ After the fuel pump has switched off, wait five seconds before removing it to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank.
- ▸ Turn the fuel cap clockwise until you hear it lock.
- ▸ Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 314*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 382*.

To reduce the risk of fuel leaking out or vapors escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is closed correctly. Otherwise the indicator light will turn on.

If the central locking system malfunctions, the fuel filler door may emergency release ⇨ *page 317*.

**WARNING**

An improper fueling procedure and improper handling of fuel can lead to explosions, fires, severe burns and other injuries.

- Do not smoke and keep away from open flames.
- The ignition must be switched off when refueling.
- Cell phones, radio devices and other radio equipment should always be switched off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
- If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where the vehicle must be entered, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.

**WARNING**

We recommend that you do not transport any fuel containers in the vehicle. Fuel could leak out of the container and ignite, especially during an accident. This can cause explosions, fires and injuries.

- If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, please note the following:
  - Always place a fuel container on the ground before filling. Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is in or on the vehicle. Electrostatic charge can occur while refueling and the fuel vapors could ignite.
  - For fuel containers made of metal, the fuel pump nozzle must always maintain contact with the container to reduce the risk of static charge.
  - Insert the fuel pump nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening while refueling.
  - Follow legal requirements when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
  - Make sure that the fuel container meets the industry standards, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

**Note**

- Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

**For the sake of the environment**

Do not overfill the fuel tank, otherwise fuel can leak out when the vehicle is warming up.

**Tips**

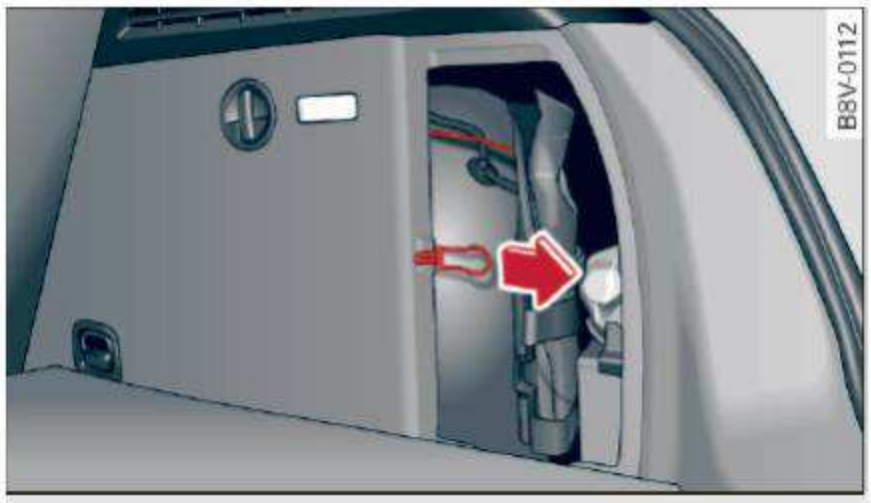
The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking switch. ▸

**Tips**

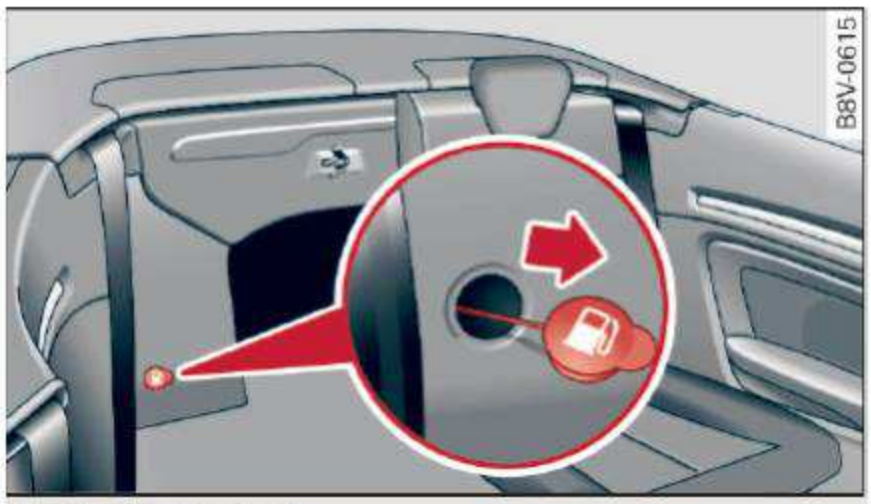
Fuel can age and may lead to problems when starting. Audi recommends replacing the fuel in your vehicle within six months.

## Fuel filler door emergency release

*If the central locking system is faulty, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.*




Applies to: version 1
**Fig. 262** Right rear luggage compartment: emergency release (example)




Applies to: version 2
**Fig. 263** Rear of the vehicle: right rear seat folded forward

### Emergency release in the luggage compartment

Applies to: version 1

The emergency opening mechanism is located behind the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Remove the cover in the side panel.
- ▸ Loosen the loop from the retainer and then pull on the loop carefully -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 262* ⇨ (!). The filler door is released.
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 315, fig. 260*.

Plug-in hybrid drive*: read and follow the instructions under ⇨ *page 103*.

### Emergency release behind the rear seat backrest

Applies to: version 2

The emergency release is located behind the right rear seat.

The pull cable for the emergency release is located on the cover.

- ▸ To access the emergency release, fold the right backrest forward ⇨ *page 66*.
- ▸ Remove the cover from the trim panel.
- ▸ Carefully pull the cover toward the center of the vehicle at a 45° angle -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 263* ⇨ (!). The tab on the cover must point forward in the direction you are pulling when pulling on the cover.
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 315, fig. 260*.

**Note**

Only pull on the loop/cover until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. Otherwise you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

# Catalytic converter

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, otherwise the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

**WARNING**

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

- – Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
- – Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the emissions control system could start a fire.

– Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.

# On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

*The On-Board Diagnostic System monitors the engine and transmission components that influence emissions.*

**Fig. 264** Footwell on left side of the vehicle: connection port for the On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

### On-Board Diagnostic System

Engine data can be read out at the On-Board Diagnostic System connection port using a special testing device ⇨ *fig. 264*.

### Indicator light

If the indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction that is causing poor emissions quality and that could damage the catalytic converter.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

The indicator light can also turn on if the fuel filler cap is not closed correctly ⇨ *page 315*.

**WARNING**

Incorrect use of the connection port for the On-Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.

– Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the engine data.

# Engine compartment

## Working in the engine compartment

*Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment*

**For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area.** ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of injuries, complete the following steps before opening the hood:

– Turn the engine off.
– Switch the ignition off.
– Set the parking brake.
– Move the selector lever into the P position.
– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– Let the engine cool down.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the anti-freezing agent contained in the coolant) can ignite.
– Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of personal injury.
– Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
– To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a large cloth when opening.
– Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.

▶

- If tests need to be performed with the engine running, there is additional danger due to moving components (such as the ribbed belt, alternator and radiator fan) and from the high-voltage ignition system.
- Never reach into the radiator fan. The electric auxiliary fan is controlled by temperature and can switch on suddenly.
- Do not under any circumstances activate the throttle inadvertently (for example, by hand from the engine compartment) if the vehicle is stationary but the engine is running and a gear is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
- Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near open flames.
  - Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and injury, never touch the following components when the engine is running or is being started:
  - Ignition cable
  - Other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system
- If you must check or perform work on the engine while it is running:
  - Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the P (park) position first.
  - Always proceed with extreme caution so that clothing, jewelry or long hair do not become caught in the radiator fan, fan belt or other moving components or do not come into contact with hot components. Tie back long hair before beginning work and do not wear clothing that can hang down into the engine.
- Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible ⇨ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

**Note**

When filling fluids, be sure not to mix the fluids up. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

**For the sake of the environment**

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

## Opening/closing the hood

*The hood is released from inside the vehicle.*

**Fig. 265** Section from the driver's side footwell: release lever

**Fig. 266** Rocker switch under the hood

**Read and follow all WARNINGS** before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment*.

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

### Opening the hood

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: switch the ignition off before releasing the hood so that the gasoline engine does not start automatically.

- With the driver's door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 265*.
- Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the rocker switch under the hood upward ⇨ *fig. 266*. This releases the catch.
- Open the hood.

### Closing the hood

- Push the hood down until you override the force of the strut.
- Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– For safety reasons, the hood must always be closed securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.
– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.
– If the hood is not latched completely, it could fly up while you are driving and obstruct your vision.

## Engine compartment overview

*The most important check points.*

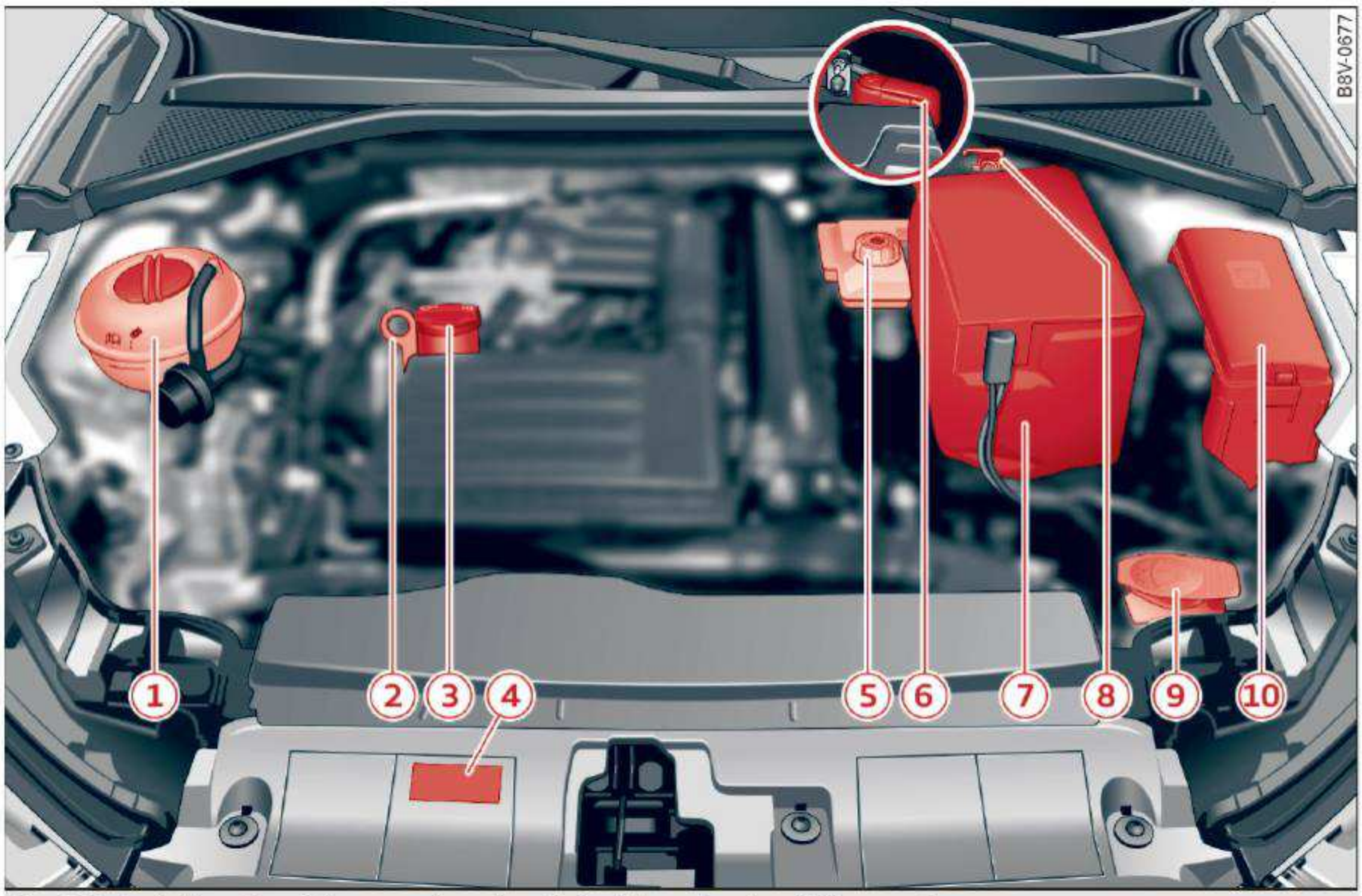



**Fig. 267** Typical location of the reservoir, engine oil dipstick, and engine oil filler opening

① Coolant expansion tank (🌡) ⇨ *page 325*
② Engine oil dipstick ⇨ *page 322*
③ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 322*
④ Engine oil label* with VW standard ⇨ *page 321*
⑤ Brake fluid reservoir (⭘) ⇨ *page 326*
⑥ Applies to: vehicles with jump start point (+): jump start point (+) under a cover ⇨ *page 327*, ⇨ *page 375*
⑦ Applies to: vehicles with the vehicle battery in the engine compartment: vehicle battery (+) under the battery cover ⇨ *page 327*, ⇨ *page 375*
⑧ Body ground point (-) ⇨ *page 327*, ⇨ *page 375*
⑨ Washer fluid reservoir (🚿) ⇨ *page 328*
⑩ Fuse housing ⇨ *page 371*

The oil dipstick (②) and the engine oil filler opening (③) ⇨ *fig. 267* may be located in different places within the engine compartment depending on the engine version.

**⚠ WARNING**

Read and follow all WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 318*.

**ⓘ Tips**

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: note the information for the coolant expansion tank in ⇨ *page 102* and for the vehicle battery (+) in ⇨ *page 102*.

# Engine oil

## If the engine oil level is too low

**If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that is listed on the sticker.** The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 321, fig. 267*. ▶

If the recommended engine oil is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 1 quart (1 liter) of ACEA C3 or API SN engine oil **one time** until the next oil change.

For more information on the correct engine oil for your vehicle, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility.

| **Audi recommends** Castrol EDGE Professional |
| --- |
| **Audi recommends using the Long Life high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.** |

## Checking the engine oil level

*The engine oil dipstick varies depending on the engine type.*

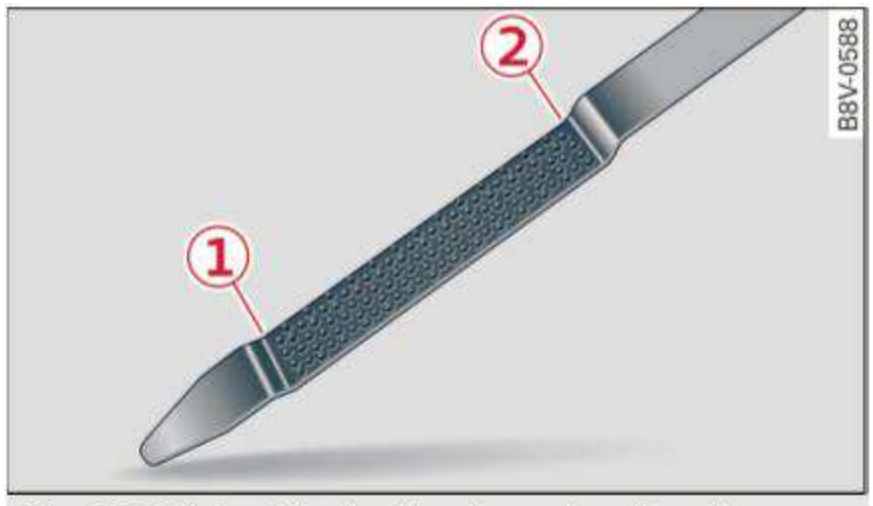



**Fig. 268** Oil dipstick: checking the engine oil level (example)

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 318*.

- ▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- ▸ Wait approximately two minutes.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 320*.
- ▸ Remove the oil dipstick ⇨ *page 321, fig. 267*, wipe it off with a clean cloth and insert it all the way in again.
- ▸ Remove the oil dipstick again and then read the oil level ⇨ *table on page 322*.
- ▸ Add engine oil if necessary ⇨ *page 323*.

| Areas on the oil dipstick ⇨ *fig. 268*. | |
| --- | --- |
| ① | If the engine oil level is just before the marking ①, then engine oil must be added. See ⇨ ⓘ. |
| ② | Do not add engine oil. |

### Note

- The engine oil level must not be below the marking ①, because this increases the risk of engine damage.
- After adding engine oil, the oil level must not be above the marking ②, because this increases the risk of catalytic converter and/or engine damage. Do not start the engine. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have excess engine oil extracted if necessary.

### Tips

- The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.
- In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.
- Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds ▶

up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.
– With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to checking the oil level regularly and frequently.
– If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. An authorized Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.
– You can find information on engine oil and engine oil capacities for the USA at www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance, or for Canada at www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/customer-area/care-and-maintenance/audi-service-schedules.html, or call 800-822-2834.

## Adding engine oil

**Fig. 269** Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 318*.

- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 269*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 321*.
- ▸ Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 322, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Add a smaller amount of engine oil if necessary. The marking (2) ⇨ *page 322, fig. 268* must not be exceeded ⇨ (!) *in Checking the engine oil level on page 322*.
- ▸ Close the engine oil filler cap and push the dipstick all the way in.

**⚠ WARNING**

– When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
– You must seal the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
– Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
– Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
– Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

**(!) Note**

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
– Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
– Do not mix any additional lubricants into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is not covered by the warranty.

**For the sake of the environment**

– Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
– Pay attention to legal requirements when disposing of empty oil containers.

## Changing the engine oil

*We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.*

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 318.*

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

**If you choose to change your oil yourself**, please note the following important information:

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:
- Wear eye protection.
- To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

**Note**

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

**For the sake of the environment**

- Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
- Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
- Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

# Cooling system

## Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored through the indicator light ⇨ *page 25*. However, we do recommend occasionally checking the coolant level manually.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended. ▶

### Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

| Coolant additive | Specification |
|---|---|
| G13 | TL 774 J |
| G12++ | TL 774 G |

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

| | Coolant additive | Freeze protection |
|---|---|---|
| Warm regions | min. 40%<br>max. 45% | min. -13 °F (-25 °C) |
| Cold regions | min. 50%<br>max. 55% | max. -40 °F (-40 °C) |

**Note**

– Before the start of winter, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.

**Tips**

Applies to: RS models: In certain weather conditions, moisture such as rain or snow may evaporate on the radiator after stopping the vehicle. This may cause steam to escape from the front of the vehicle.

## Adding coolant

**Fig. 270** Engine compartment: markings on the coolant expansion tank

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment*.

### Checking the engine coolant level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Read the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *fig. 270*. The coolant level must be between the markings when the engine in cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the upper marking.

### Adding coolant

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: your vehicle has two coolant expansion tanks that are separate from each other. The smaller of the two expansion tanks must not be opened ⇨ *page 102*. Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Coolant on page 103*.

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- ▸ Let the engine cool down.
- ▸ Place a cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap and unscrew the cap counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 324* up to the upper marking.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Close the cap securely. ▶

Coolant loss usually indicates there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, a loss can come from the coolant boiling through overheating and being pushed out of the cooling system.

**WARNING**

- The cooling system is under pressure. Do not open the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. This increases the risk of burns.
- The coolant additive and the coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, keep the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.

**Note**

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

# Brake fluid

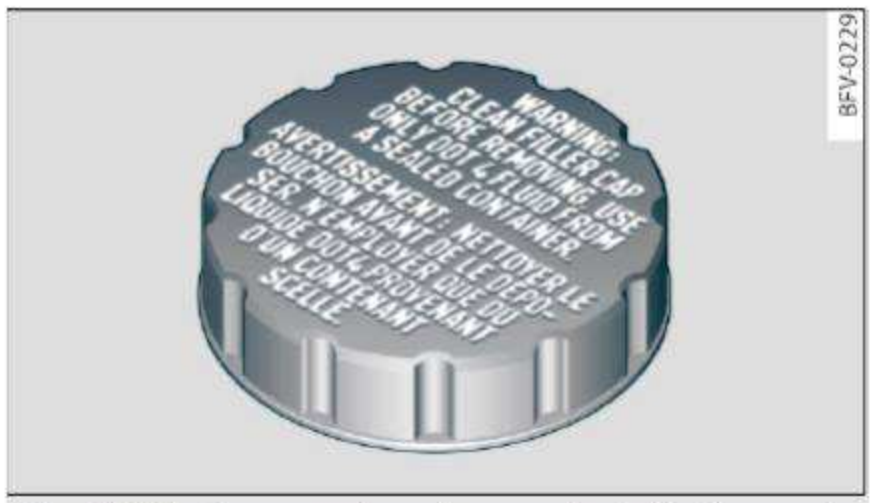



**Fig. 271** Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment*.

## Checking the brake fluid level

Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 321, fig. 267*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

## Changing the brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed regularly by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**WARNING**

- If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This would impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
- To ensure the brake system functions correctly, only use brake fluids that comply with VW standard 501 14 or FMVSS-116 DOT 4.

**Note**

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not get any brake fluid on the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

# Battery

## General warnings about batteries

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠. ▶

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: you can find important information about your high-voltage battery in ⇨ *page 92*.

**Detailed warnings for the vehicle battery:**

| | |
|---|---|
| | Always wear eye protection. |
| | Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. |
| | Fire, sparks, open flame and smoking are forbidden. |
| | A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. |
| | Always keep children far away from battery electrolyte and the battery. |
| | Always follow the instructions in the operating manual. |

**WARNING**

All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**WARNING**

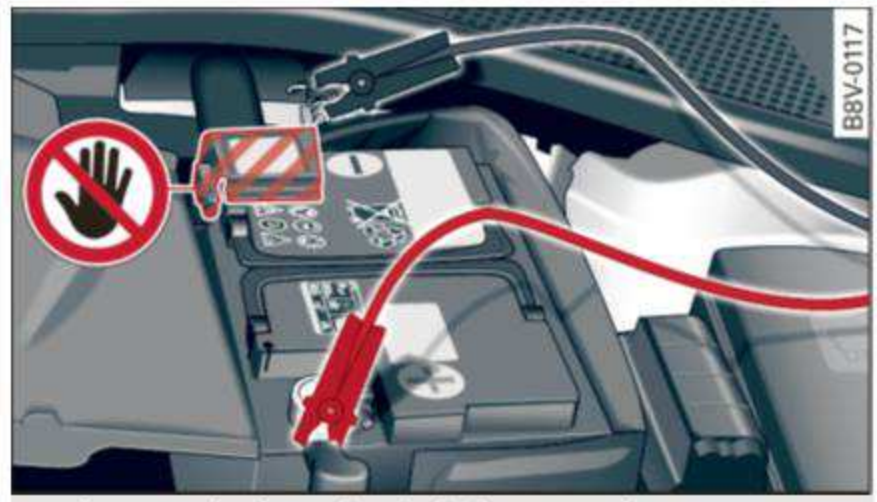
California Proposition 65 Warning:

– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

**Note**

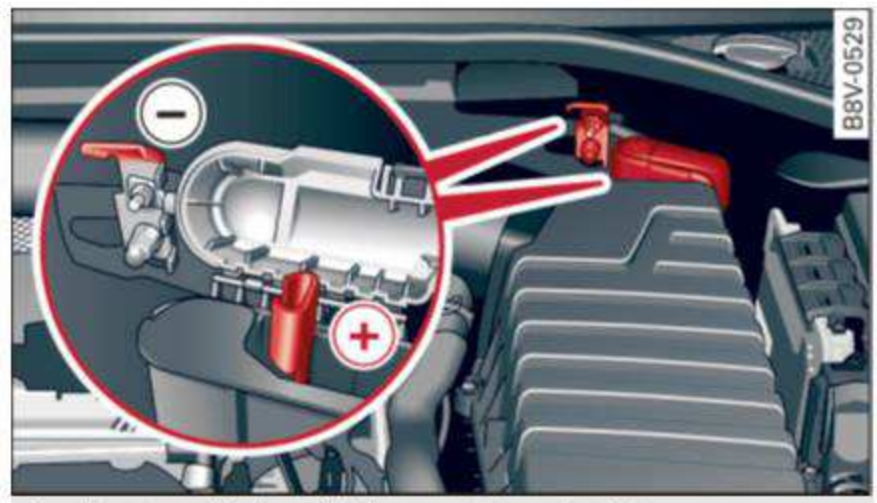
If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect it against the cold so that it will not be destroyed by "freezing" ⇨ *page 327, Charging the vehicle battery*.

## Charging the vehicle battery




Applies to: vehicles with vehicle battery in the engine compartment

**Fig. 272** Engine compartment: connections for charger and jump start cable




Applies to: vehicles with jump start point (+)

**Fig. 273** Engine compartment: connections for charger and jump start cable

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment*.

Vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive*: ⇨ *page 102, Jump start*.

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging current of 30 amps/14.8 Volts**. The vehicle battery cables remain connected.

Depending on the engine, the battery is located in the engine compartment or in the luggage compartment. For vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment, a jump start point that is also used for battery charging is located in the engine compartment. The battery is always charged in the engine compartment. The ground point ⊖ is always located on the vehicle chassis.

- ▸ Read the warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General warnings about batteries on page 327* and ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 320*.

- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with the vehicle battery in the engine compartment: open the battery cover ⇨ *fig. 272*.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with jump start point (+): open the cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 273*.
- ▸ Clamp the charger terminal clamps as instructed on the **positive terminal (+)** and only on the **body ground point (-)**.
- ▸ Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Remove the charger terminal clamps.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with the vehicle battery in the engine compartment: fold the cover back on the battery correctly.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with jump start point (+): close the cover on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 320*.

**WARNING**

– A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the vehicle battery in well-ventilated areas.
– A drained vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 ºF (0 ºC). A frozen or thawed vehicle battery must not be charged and must not be used anymore. If ice forms, the battery housing can crack and battery electrolyte can leak out, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

**Tips**

– Only charge the vehicle battery through the connections in the engine compartment.
– Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the vehicle battery.

# Windshield washer system

**Fig. 274** Engine compartment: windshield washer fluid cover (example)

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 318, Working in the engine compartment*.

The windshield washer fluid reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 321, fig. 267*. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 382*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

**Note**

– The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions in the respective climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
– Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
– Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

# Service interval display

*The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.*

The service interval display works in two stages: ▸

– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after a certain distance driven, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on/off.

### Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals**.

### Resetting the indicator

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the display, select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

**Note**

– Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the function, service life, and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.

# Wheels

## Wheels and Tires

### General information

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

**WARNING**

–Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.

–Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

**Note**

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

## Tire designations

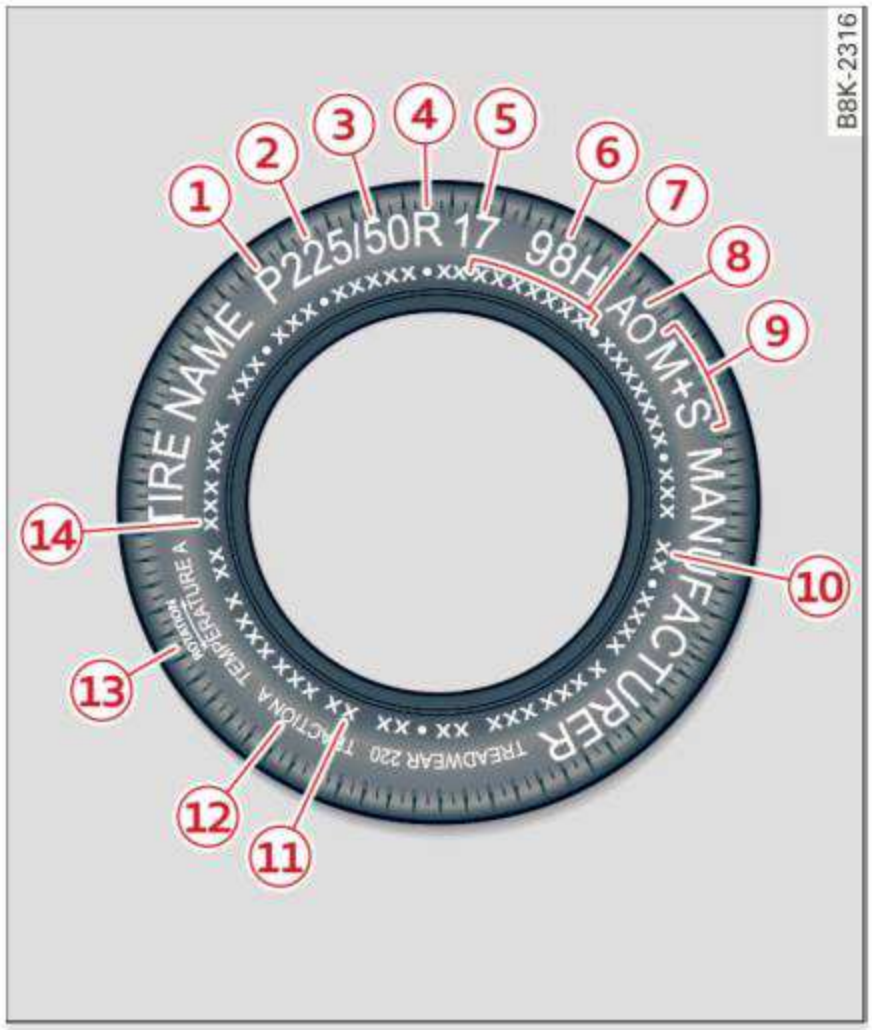



**Fig. 275** Tire designations on the sidewall

### ① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

"P" indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. "T" indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

### ② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

### ③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

### ④ Tire construction

"R" indicates a radial tire.

### ⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

### ⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 330*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

| Speed rating | Maximum permitted speed |
|---|---|
| P | up to 93 mph (150 km/h) |
| Q | up to 99 mph (160 km/h) |
| R | up to 106 mph (170 km/h) |
| S | up to 110 mph (180 km/h) |
| T | up to 118 mph (190 km/h) |
| U | up to 124 mph (200 km/h) |
| H | up to 130 mph (210 km/h) |
| V | up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a] |
| Z | above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a] |
| W | up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a] |
| Y | up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a] |

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR". ▶

### ⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

**DOT ... 2217 ...**

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2017.

### ⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation "AO" have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information.

### ⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

### ⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

### ⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

### ⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 347*.

### ⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 368*.

### ⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

## Glossary of tire and loading terminology

### Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

### Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

### Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

### Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

### Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

### Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

### Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

### Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall. ▶

### Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

### Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

### Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

### Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

### Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

### Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

### Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

### Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

### Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

### Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

### Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords. ▶

### Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

### Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

### Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 333, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

### Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

### Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

### Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

### Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

### Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

### Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 331*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the ▶

maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 330*.

### Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

### Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

### Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

### Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 339, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

**DOT ... 2217 ...**

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2017. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used ▶

by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

### Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

### Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 342*) and dividing by two.

### Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 341, fig. 278* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 342* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

## New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▸ New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▸ Only use tires with the same design, size (rolling circumference), and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ▸ Applies to: RS models: only use tires with the same design and the same tread pattern on all four wheels.
- ▸ Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time. ▸

8V2012721BF

- Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

Because the spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle (such as winter tires or wide tires), only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive: all four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different wheel speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
- Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.
- Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so. ▶

–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

## Tire wear/damage

**Fig. 276** Tire profile: treadwear indicator

### Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear.
–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

### Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 276*. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

### Tire rotation

Applies to: RS models: tires may only be rotated if the tires on the ▸

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

front and rear axles are the same size ⇨ ⚠.

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 368*.

## Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.
- Applies to: RS models: depending on the equipment, the widths of the standard summer tires may be different on the front and rear axles. The wider tires are mounted on the front axle. The tires must not be rotated.

## Tire pressure

**Fig. 277** Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

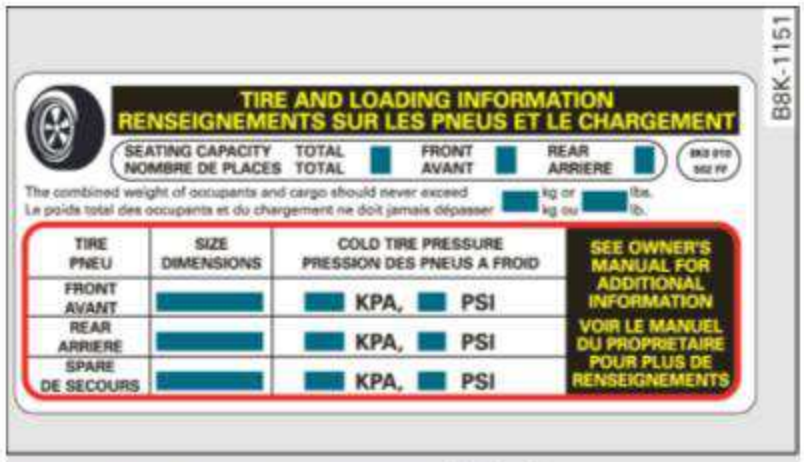



**Fig. 278** Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 277*, ⇨ *fig. 278*. The location may vary depending on the model.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 342*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

### Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 278* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Store the new tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 349* or ⇨ *page 352*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 343, Tires and vehicle load limits*. ▸

8V2012721BF

– The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.
– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

**For the sake of the environment**

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

## Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 341, fig. 277*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed.

| Model/ Engine | Tire designation | Tire pressure | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Normal load (up to 2/3* people)[a)] | | | | Maximum load | | | |
| | | front | | rear | | front | | rear | |
| | | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA |
| A3 sedan: 2.0 L 4-cylinder | 225/40 R18 92Y | 35 | 240 | 32 | 220 | 36 | 250 | 36 | 250 |
| | 225/45 R17 91H | 33 | 230 | 30 | 210 | 41 | 280 | 41 | 280 |
| | 225/40 R18 92H | 36 | 250 | 33 | 230 | 41 | 280 | 41 | 280 |
| | 235/35 R19 91Y | 33 | 230 | 30 | 210 | 38 | 260 | 41 | 280 |

| Model/ Engine | Tire designation | Tire pressure | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Normal load (up to 2/3* people)[a] | | | | Maximum load | | | |
| | | front | | rear | | front | | rear | |
| | | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA | PSI | kPA |
| S3 sedan: 2.0 L 4-cylinder | 225/40 R18 92Y | 38 | 260 | 35 | 240 | 42 | 290 | 42 | 290 |
| | 225/40 R18 92H | 38 | 260 | 35 | 240 | 41 | 280 | 41 | 280 |
| | 235/35 R19 91Y | 39 | 270 | 36 | 250 | 44 | 300 | 44 | 300 |
| RS 3 Sedan: 2.5 L 5-cylinder | 235/35 R19 91Y | 39/ 44[b] | 270/ 300[b] | 35/ 39[b] | 240/ 270[b] | 44/ 46[b] | 300/ 320[b] | 39/ 44[b] | 270/ 300[b] |
| | 255/30 R19 91Y | 39/ 44[b] | 270/ 300[b] | – | – | 44/ 46[b] | 300/ 320[b] | – | – |
| A3 Cabriolet: 2.0 L 4-cylinder | 225/40 R18 92Y | 35 | 240 | 32 | 220 | 38 | 260 | 38 | 260 |
| | 225/45 R17 91H | 33 | 230 | 30 | 210 | 39 | 270 | 39 | 270 |
| | 225/40 R18 92H | 38 | 260 | 35 | 240 | 41 | 280 | 41 | 280 |
| | 235/35 R19 91Y | 42 | 290 | 39 | 270 | 45 | 310 | 45 | 310 |
| A3 Sportback e-tron: 1.4 l 4-cylinder | 205/55 R16 91V | 35 | 240 | 35 | 240 | 36 | 250 | 39 | 270 |
| | 225/40 R18 92Y | 33 | 230 | 33 | 230 | 36 | 250 | 39 | 270 |
| | 225/45 R17 91H | 33 | 230 | 33 | 230 | 38 | 260 | 38 | 260 |
| | 225/40 R18 92H | 36 | 250 | 36 | 250 | 41 | 280 | 41 | 280 |

a) **Vehicles with 4 seating positions:** two people in the front, **Vehicles with 5 seating positions:** two people in the front, one person in the rear

b) The value before the forward slash applies to vehicles with a maximum speed up to 155 mph (250 km/h); the value after the slash is for up to 174 mph (280 km/h).

**WARNING**

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 341* and load limits ⇨ *page 343*.

## Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the ▶

8V2012721BF

vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar.

**WARNING**

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported –

▶

including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

## Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

### Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 341, fig. 277*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 341, fig. 277*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▸Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 331, fig. 275*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

8V2012721BF

## Wheel bolts and rims

### Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

### Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 364, After changing a wheel*.

- Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
- Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

## Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

- ▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
- ▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- ▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 330*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 341*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 inch (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

**For the sake of the environment**

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

**Tips**

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⛄ symbol may be permitted.

## Snow chains

Snow chains not only improve the driving in winter road conditions, but also the braking.

- ▸ Only install snow chains on the front wheels. This applies also to vehicles with all wheel drive*.
- ▸ Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- ▸ Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Note the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

Use **fine-mesh snow chains**. They must not add more than 0.53 inch (13.5 mm) in height, including the chain lock.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires. ▶

**WARNING**

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

**Note**

Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.

**Tips**

When using snow chains, it may be useful to switch on sport mode ⇨ *page 149*.

## Low-profile tires

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving style. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition.

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers, and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure ⇨ *page 341*.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 mi (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/ cracks on the rims.

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

## Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 331, fig. 275*.

**For example:** Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

### Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**WARNING**

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

**WARNING**

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

**WARNING**

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

## General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator appears

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

*The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.*

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the ▶

individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an (!) indicator light and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the menu display again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 349*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 341, fig. 278*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

- the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low
- the tire has structural damage
- the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 349*
- one side of the vehicle is more heavily loaded than the other
- the wheels on one axle are more heavily loaded than the others (for example, when towing a trailer or when driving up and down hills)
- snow chains are installed
- the spare tire* is installed
- only one tire was replaced on each axle

### Indicator lights

(!) – loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires. Then store the tire pressures in the menu ⇨ *page 349*.

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual**. If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Check/correct the pressures on all four tires and store the pressures ⇨ *page 349*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

**WARNING**

- If the tire pressure indicator appears in the instrument cluster display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressures.
- The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressures. You must check the tire pressures regularly.
- Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the pressure monitor indicator may be delayed.
- Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

**Tips**

- The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC/ABS malfunction.
- Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
- The tire pressure monitoring system in your Audi was calibrated with "Audi Original Tires" ⇨ *page 337*. Using these tires is recommended.
- The tire pressure monitoring system can only monitor the tire pressure of the driving tires. Check the tire pressure of the spare wheel in the luggage compartment so that if necessary it is ready for use.

## Storing tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

*A change in tire pressure or a change in tires must be stored in the system.*

Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 339*. ▶

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.

**Tips**

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

# Tire pressure monitoring system

## General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

*The tire pressure monitoring system monitors the pressure in the four tires when driving.*

The system uses sensors that measure the temperature and pressure in the tires. The data is sent from these sensors to the control module by radio frequency.

The tire pressure monitoring system shows the current pressures and temperatures of the tires in the Infotainment system while driving ⇨ *page 351*. It also compares the current tire pressures with the stored tire pressures and gives a warning if the tire pressure is different from what is stored ⇨ *page 351*.

The system does not detect if the stored tire pressures match the recommended tire pressures. You must store the tire pressures again ⇨ *page 352*:

– every time the tire pressures change, for example when the load in the vehicle changes,
– after replacing a tire, or
– if wheels with new wheel sensors are used. ▶

**WARNING**

- The tire pressure monitoring system assists the driver in monitoring tire pressures. The driver is responsible for having the tires inflated to the correct pressure.
- Do not change the tire pressure when the temperature of the tire is extremely high. This could result in serious damage to the tire and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
- A tire with low pressure flexes more. This heats the tire up too much. This could cause the tread to separate and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
- The tire pressure monitoring system does not warn about damage or defects in the tire construction that could cause the tire to burst, for example. Inspect your tires regularly.

**Tips**

- If tires are replaced, the sensors/valves do not need to be removed or replaced. Just replaced the valve stem and, if necessary, the valve and the wheel electronics. If you have questions, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- An incorrect display or a malfunction in the tire pressure monitoring system can occur after using the tire mobility kit. Have the sensors replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 386*.

## Displaying tire pressures/temperatures

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

Requirement: you must be driving the vehicle.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Display tire pressures**.

The current tire pressures are shown in green, yellow or red numbers in the Infotainment system:

- **Green:** the current tire pressure and the specified tire pressure are approximately the same.
- **Yellow:** the current tire pressure is too low compared to the specified tire pressure.
- **Red:** the current tire pressure is extremely low compared to the specified tire pressure.

The specified tire pressure is the last tire pressure that was stored ⇨ *page 352*.

Note that the tire pressure also depends on the temperature of the tire. The tire pressure increases as the engine becomes warmer while driving.

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 350*.

**Tips**

The tire pressure or temperature is not displayed while the vehicle is stationary and in adaptation mode. Dashes **--.--** are shown in place of the pressure and temperature.

## Tire pressure loss

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

If the indicator light turns on, the pressure in at least one tire is too low or new sensors were not adapted:

### Indicator light turns on after turning the ignition on

The tire pressure is too low compared to the specified pressure.

▸ Check and store the tire pressure(s) the next time it is possible ⇨ *page 352*.

### Indicator light turns on while driving

Wheels with new sensors were not adapted or the tire pressure has reached a critical level compared to the specified pressure.

▸ Avoid unnecessary steering and braking maneuvers. ▶

- ▸ Adapt your driving style to the situation.
- ▸ Stop as soon as possible and check the tire(s).
- ▸ If it is possible to continue driving, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately and have your tire(s) repaired or replaced.

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 350*.

## Storing new tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

*Correctly stored tire pressure specifications are necessary for reliable tire pressure monitoring.*

It is always necessary to store the tire pressures when the tire pressures are modified, for example due to a change in load. or when new sensors are installed.

- ▸ Before storing the tire pressures, make sure the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 341, fig. 278*. Only correct and store the pressure in tires whose temperature is approximately the same as the ambient temperature. If the temperature of the tire is higher than the ambient air temperature, the tire pressure must be increased approximately 3.0 PSI (0.2 bar) above the value on the sticker.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**. After storing the tire pressures, the tire pressure monitoring system measures the current pressures while driving and stores them as the new specified pressures.
- ▸ If the changed tire pressures are not displayed in the Infotainment system, drive the vehicle for approximately 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels is received again.

During this adaptation phase, **--.--** is displayed for the pressure and temperature and the tire pressure monitoring system is only partially available. It only provides a warning if one or more tire pressures is below the minimum permitted specified pressure.

If the (!) indicator light turns on and the message **Tire pressure: wheel change detected. Please check all tires and store pressures in MMI** also appears, the system has detected that the position of the sensors has changed because of a tire rotation, or that new sensors were installed. Store the new tire pressures.

**WARNING**

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 350*.

## Malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

If the tire pressure monitoring system is not available, the TPMS indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display along with the message **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual**.

If the TPMS indicator light appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light also blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is a system malfunction. The following are examples of situations that could cause a malfunction:

- – If the message appears at the end of the adaptation phase, the system may not detect one or several of the wheel sensors necessary for pressure monitoring. This may result from one or more wheels being installed without wheel sensors or with incompatible wheel sensors.
- – A wheel sensor or another component has failed.
- – Using snow chains can affect the function of the system because of the shielding effect of the chains.
- – The tire pressure monitoring system is not available due to a malfunction.
- – Transmitters with the same frequency, such as headphones or remote-controlled devices, may cause a temporary system malfunction due to the strong electromagnetic field. ▸

The TPMS indicator light and the message turn off once the tire pressure monitoring system is available again. If you cannot correct the malfunction and the TPMS indicator light stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

# Care and cleaning

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: for additional cleaning and care information, see ⇨ *page 117*.

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

**WARNING**

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

**For the sake of the environment**

- Preferably purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

## Car washes

The longer that deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap or road salt remain on the vehicle, the more the surface can be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

### Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at seals on side windows, doors, the hood, the luggage compartment lid or the panorama glass roof* or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, the power top*, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

### Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows, the panorama glass roof* and the power top* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Applies to: RS models

Only use car washes where the vehicle remains stationary and the washing equipment moves around the vehicle when washing and drying. Car washes that move the vehicle through the car wash using a chain are not recommended.

### Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

### Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint. ▶

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois.

**WARNING**

- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.
- To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
- After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

**Note**

- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash the power top* with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
- Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  - Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  - Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

**For the sake of the environment**

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

# Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

**Exterior cleaning**

| Component | Situation | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| **Windshield wiper blades** | Deposits | soft cloth with glass cleaner, ⇨ *page 56* |
| **Headlights/ Tail lights** | Deposits | Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)] |
| **Sensors/ camera lenses** | Deposits | Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution<br>Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution |
| | Snow/ice | Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray |

8V2012721BF

| Component | Situation | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| **Wheels** | Road salt | Water |
| | Brake dust | Acid-free special cleaning solution |
| **Exhaust tail pipes** | Road salt | Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary |
| **Power top** | Deposits | Clean water, power top cleaning product, if necessary. Clean with the grain of the fabric using a soft brush and allow to air dry. |
| **Wind deflector** | Deposits | Water, mild soap solution, if necessary[a)] |
| **Decorative parts/ trim** | Deposits | Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary |
| **Paint** | Paint damage | Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 381* |
| | Spilled fuel | Rinse with water immediately |
| | Surface rust | Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. |
| | Corrosion | Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. |
| | Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint | Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year) |
| | No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor | Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant |
| | Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt | Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth |
| | Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock | Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth |
| **Carbon parts** | Deposits | clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 354* |
| **Decorative decals** | Deposits | Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)] |

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

### Interior cleaning

| Component | Situation | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| **Windows** | Deposits | Glass cleaner, then wipe dry |
| **Decorative parts/ trim** | Deposits | Mild soap solution[a)] |
| **Plastic parts** | Deposits | Damp cloth |
| | Heavier deposits | Mild soap solution [a)], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary |

| Component | Situation | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| **Displays/instrument cluster** | Deposits | Soft cloth with LCD cleaner |
| **Controls** | Deposits | Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a)] |
| **Safety belts** | Deposits | Mild soap solution [a)], allow to dry before letting them retract |
| **Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara** | Deposits adhering to the surface | Vacuum cleaner |
| | Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc. | Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)] |
| | Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc. | Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary |
| | Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc. | Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a)] |
| **Natural leather** | Fresh stains | Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a)] |
| | Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc. | Fresh stains: absorbent cloth<br>Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather |
| | Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc. | Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather<br>Dried stains: grease dissolving spray |
| | Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc. | Spot remover suitable for leather |
| | Care | Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use special colored conditioning cream, if necessary. |
| **Carbon parts** | Deposits | clean the same way as plastic parts |

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

**WARNING**

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

**Note**

– **Headlights/tail lights**
  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
– **Wheels**
  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  – Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.

▶

- **Camera lenses**
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  - Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
- **Power top**
  - Remove bird droppings immediately.
  - Never use gasoline, spot remover, benzene, paint thinner or other solvents to remove.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  - To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
- **Decorative parts/trim**
  - Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
- **Paint**
  - To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
  - To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
  - To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
  - Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.
- **Displays/instrument cluster**
  - The displays/instrument cluster and the trim surrounding them must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could be scratched.
  - Make sure that the instrument cluster is switched off and has cooled off before cleaning it.
  - Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.
- **Controls**
  - Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.
- **Safety belts**
  - Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
  - Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
  - If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**
  - Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
  - Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  - Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  - Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  - Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.
- **Natural leather**
  - Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
  - Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  - Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  - To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight ▶

for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

**Tips**

– Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
– Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

## Placing your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 326*.

8V2012721BF

# Emergency assistance

## Trunk escape latch

Applies to: vehicles with trunk escape latch (Sedan and Cabriolet)

*In case of an emergency, the rear lid can be opened from the inside using the trunk escape latch.*

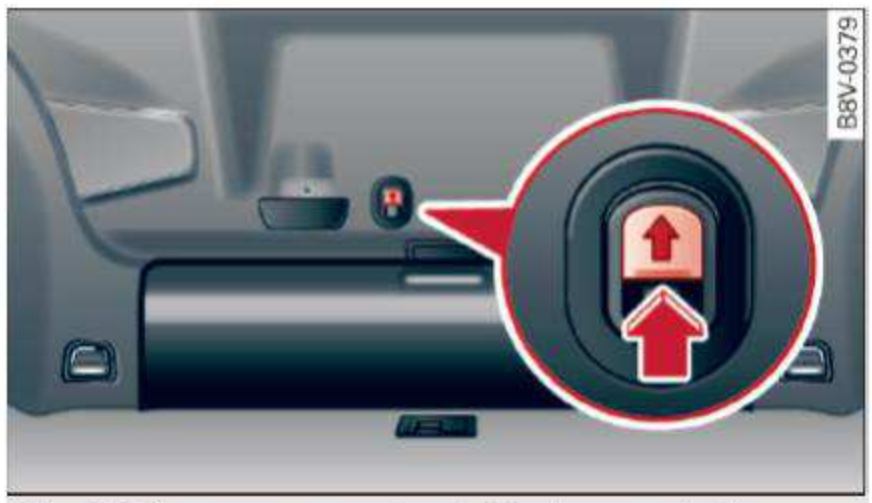



**Fig. 279** Luggage compartment: Trunk escape latch

▸ Push the latch in the direction of the arrow until the lock releases.

The trunk escape latch inside the rear lid is made of fluorescent material to glow in the dark.

**WARNING**

The trunk escape latch is to be used only in an emergency.

## General information

- ▸ Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. It you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Place the selector lever in the P position.
- ▸ Switch the emergency flashers on.
- ▸ Put on a reflective vest, if available.
- ▸ Set up the warning triangle, if available.
- ▸ Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

**WARNING**

Pay attention to the steps above. They are for your protection and the for the safety of other drivers.

# Equipment

## Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/ compressor

Applies to: vehicles with vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/compressor

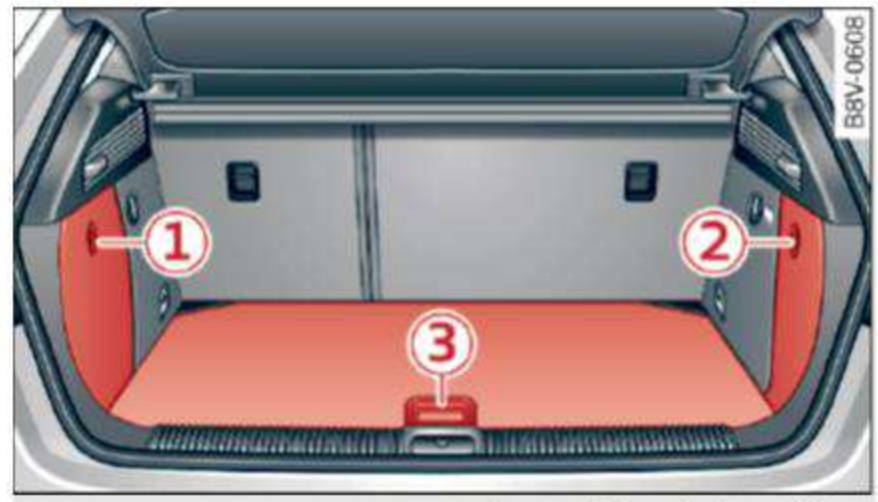



**Fig. 280** Luggage compartment (example): vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit and vehicle jack* placement

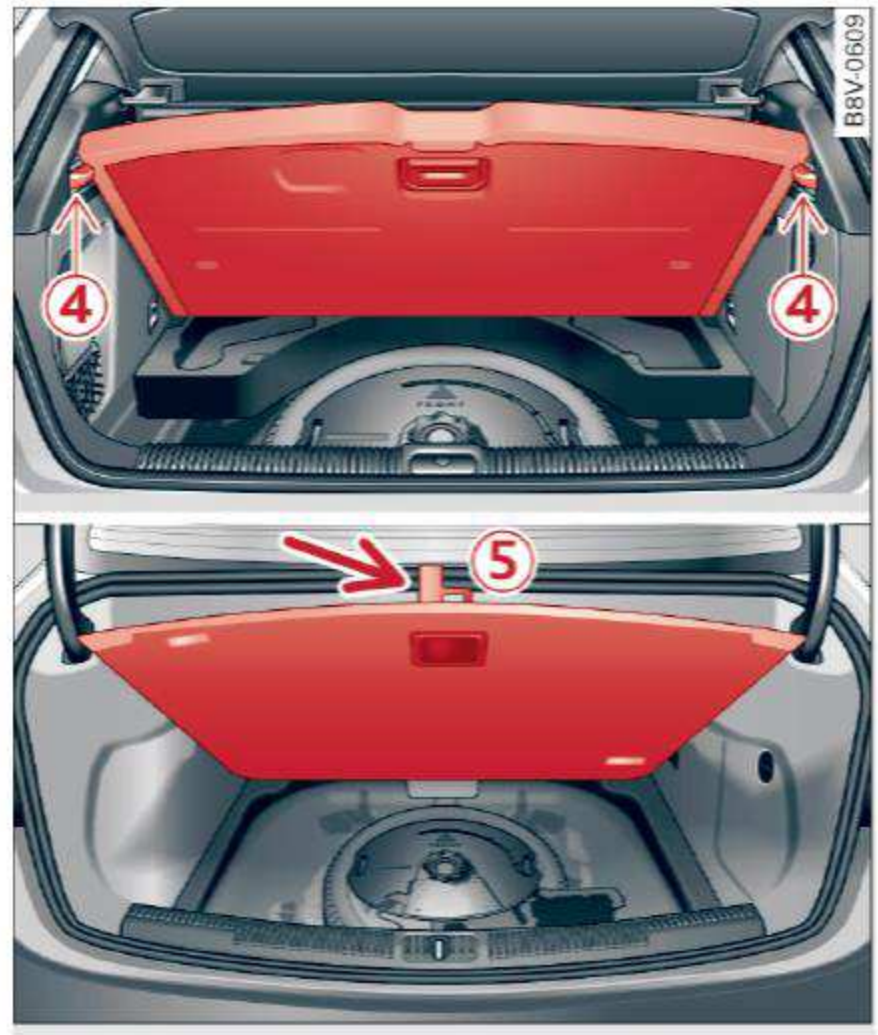



**Fig. 281** Luggage compartment (examples): cargo floor folded up (versions 1 and 2)

Plug-in hybrid drive*: the housing location varies ⇨ *page 101*.

### Vehicle tool kit, cargo floor cover and side panel

Applies to: vehicles with version 1

The vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit* and the compressor* are located in the luggage compartment, separated in the side panels ①*/②, or under the cargo floor cover ③ ⇨ *fig. 280*. ▸

- ▸ To open the side panel, turn the lock and remove the cover ① * / ② ⇨ *fig. 280*.
- ▸ Lift the cargo floor using the plastic handle ③ until the cargo floor engages behind the tabs ④ in both side panels ⇨ *fig. 281* (upper image).
- ▸ Fold the cargo floor back before closing the luggage compartment lid.

### Vehicle tool kit and cargo floor cover

Applies to: vehicles with version 2

The vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit* and compressor* are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover ③ ⇨ *fig. 280*.

- ▸ Engage the plastic hook ⑤ in the luggage compartment seal ⇨ *fig. 281*.
- ▸ Fold the cargo floor back before closing the luggage compartment lid.

**WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with jack

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

– Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
– The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
– Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
– Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

**Tips**

The vehicle jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

# Tire mobility kit

## Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 360*.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Move the selector lever into the P position.
- ▸ Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 361*.

## Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

**Fig. 282** Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the spare tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire repair set is able to be used at temperatures as low as – 4 °F (– 20 °C).

**The tire mobility kit may not be used:**

– if the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 282*
– if the rim is damaged ②
– if you drove with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③

In this case, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**WARNING**

– Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothes.

▸

– If tire sealant gets in your eyes or on your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothes immediately if they get tire sealant on them.
– If an allergic reaction occurs, seek immediate medical attention.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.
– In vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring system*, using tire sealant can results in an incorrect display or a system malfunction. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

### Tips

– If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
– Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor*.
– Obey all laws.

## Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

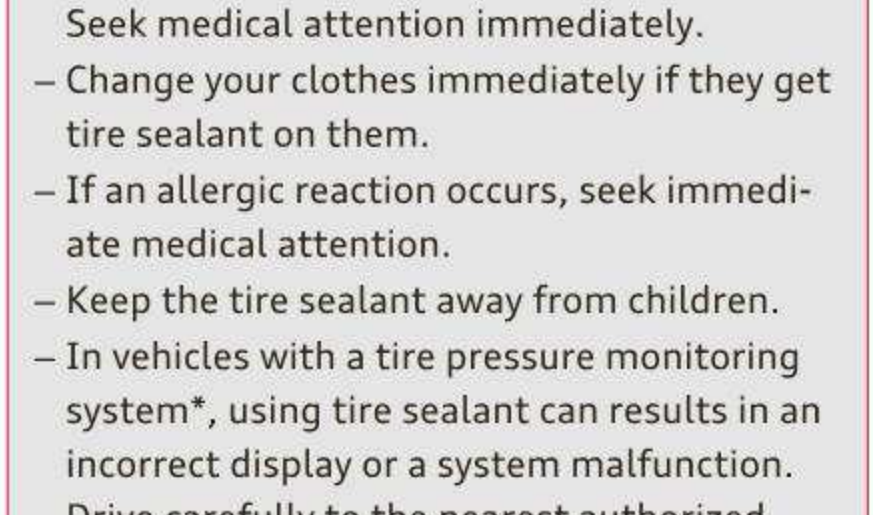



**Fig. 283** Components of the tire mobility kit

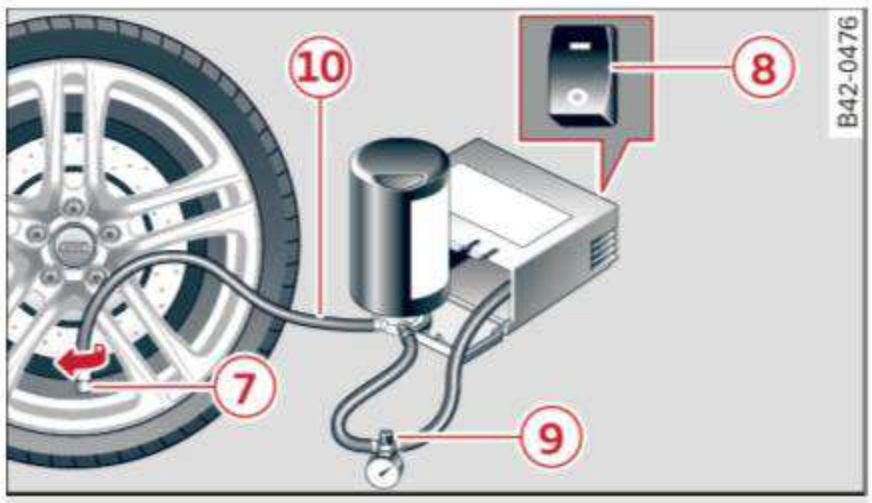



**Fig. 284** Tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 360, Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/compressor*.

Plug-in hybrid drive*: the placement of the vehicle tool kit varies ⇨ *page 101*.

### Installing the tire mobility kit

▸ Open the cover (2) on the compressor ⇨ *fig. 283*.
▸ Remove the connector (4) and pressure hose (5) with pressure gauge from the housing.
▸ Install the compressor pressure hose (5) onto the flange (6) of tire sealant bottle (1).
▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening (3) on the compressor cover.
▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
▸ Install the filler hose (10) onto the valve (7) ⇨ *fig. 284*.
▸ Connect the plug (4) ⇨ *fig. 283* to a socket in the vehicle.
▸ Switch the ignition on.

### Inflating a tire

▸ Move the switch (8) ⇨ *fig. 284* on the compressor into position **I**.
▸ Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
▸ If that tire pressure is not reached, drive your vehicle approximately 33 ft (10 m) forward or backward so that the sealant can be redistributed inside the tire. ▶

**WARNING**

– Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
– If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
– If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**Tips**

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

### Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- Affix the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

**WARNING**

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
– Avoid hard acceleration, braking sharply, and fast cornering.
– The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
– If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

**For the sake of the environment**

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

**Tips**

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

## Replacing wheels

### Before changing a wheel

*Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.*

- After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- Move **selector lever to position P** ⇨ ⚠.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- Take the **jack** ⇨ *page 360* and the **spare tire** ⇨ *page 369* out of the luggage compartment.

**WARNING**

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the front and back of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in P (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.

▶

– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 255*.

**Tips**

Obey all laws.

## Changing a wheel

*When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.*

1. Remove the **decorative wheel cover***. For more details see also ⇨ *page 364, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 365, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
2. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 365*.
3. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 366*.
4. **Raise** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 366*.
5. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install **the spare** ⇨ *page 367*.
6. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
7. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
8. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇨ *page 365*.
9. Replace the decorative **wheel cover***.

**WARNING**

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 366* and ⇨ *page 368*.

## After changing a wheel

*A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.*

- Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 255*.
- Check the **tire pressure** on the spare wheel immediately after mounting it.
- As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lb (120 Nm).
- Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

**Tips**

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.
– After changing a wheel, the tire pressure in all four tires must be checked/corrected and the tire pressure monitoring indicator must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 349*.

## Decorative wheel covers

Applies to: vehicles with decorative wheel covers

*The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.*

**Fig. 285** Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover

### Removing

- Insert the **hook** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) in the hole in the wheel hub cover.
- Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 285*.

## Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Applies to: vehicles with wheel bolts with caps

*The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.*

**Fig. 286** Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

### Removing

- ▸ Push the **plastic clip** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) over the wheel bolt cap until the inner retainers on the clip align with the edge of the cover.
- ▸ Remove the cap with the **plastic clip** (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 286*.

### Refitting

- ▸ Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

## Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

*The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.*

**Fig. 287** Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

### Loosening

- ▸ Slide the **wheel wrench** onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 287*.

### Tightening

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

**WARNING**

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.
– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

**Tips**

– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
– If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

## Raising the vehicle

*The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.*

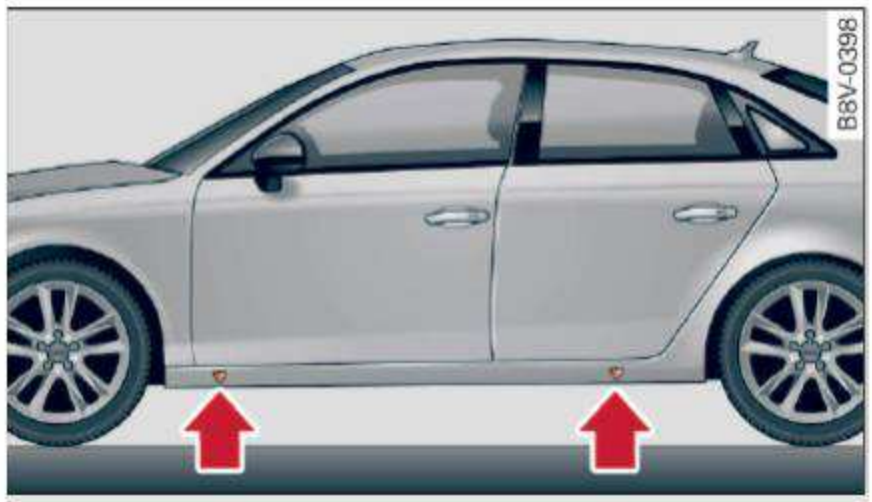



**Fig. 288** Sill panels: markings (example)

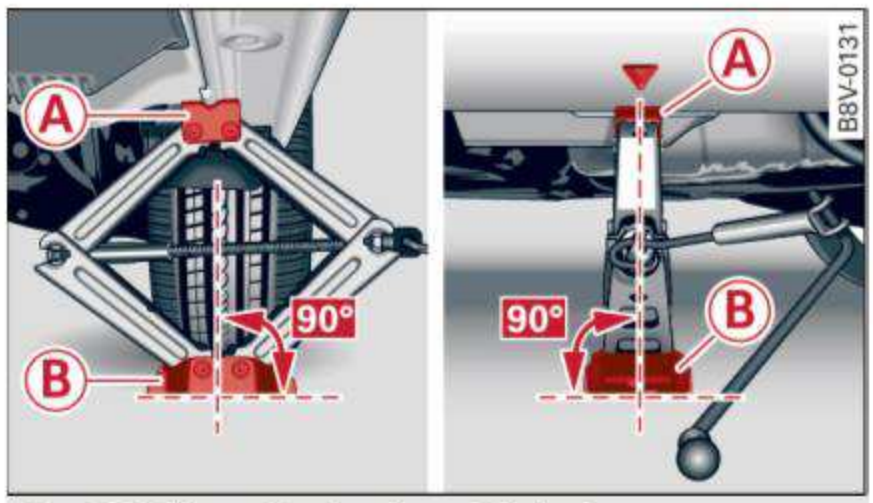



**Fig. 289** Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- ▸ Move the **selector lever to position P**.
- ▸ Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 288*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- ▸ Vehicles with a sill: Note the position of the sill when positioning the vehicle jack ⇨ *fig. 289*.
- ▸ Place the vehicle jack (vehicle tool kit) on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad (such as a rubber mat) ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 289* is located under the designated plastic mount ⇨ ⚠, ⇨ ⓘ.
- ▸ Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 289* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.
- ▸ Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 288*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ ⓘ.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

### ⚠ WARNING

- – You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  - – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  - – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  - – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
  - – Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack for another vehicle, your vehicle can slide and cause injury.
  - – Changes in load can affect the height of the vehicle.
  - – Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
  - – Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
- – To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers: ▸

– Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
– Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.

**Note**

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

## Taking the wheel off/installing the spare

*Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.*

**Fig. 290** Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts

**Fig. 291** Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

### Removing the wheel

- Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely remove the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇨ *fig. 290*.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 291*[1)].
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

### Putting on the compact spare wheel

- Lift the spare wheel and carefully slide it over the alignment pin to guide it in place ⇨ (!).
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 365*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

**Note**

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

**Tips**

Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

1) Applies to vehicles with ceramic brake rotors*: Use a second alignment pin* (stored in the spare wheel well molding) for the lower hole, following the description for the first alignment pin.

– Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts.
– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 368*.
– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

## Tires with unidirectional tread design

*Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.*

### Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

– The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire.
– If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
– We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
– Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.

## Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 337* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

– **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
– **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
– **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lbs (120 Nm).**
– **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
– **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

**Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.**

**WARNING**

– If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 337*.
– Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
– In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
– Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

# Spare tire

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

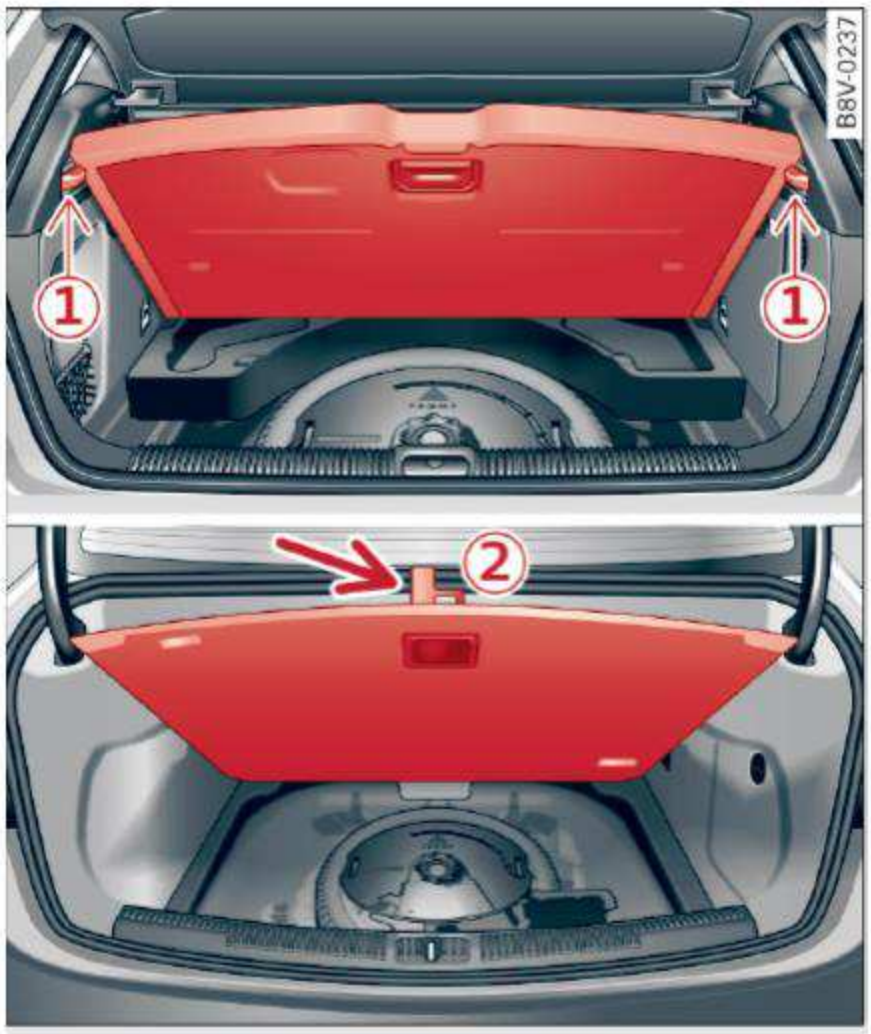



**Fig. 292** Luggage compartment: cargo floor folded up (versions 1 and 2)

**Fig. 293** Spare tire (example)

The spare tire ⇨ *fig. 293* is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor by the plastic handle.
- ▸ Hang the plastic hook on the luggage compartment seal ① ⇨ *fig. 292*.
- ▸ Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise and remove it.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.

### Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

**WARNING**

- After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure is available on ⇨ *page 341, fig. 278*
- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering with the compact spare tire.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, never drive with more than one compact spare tire.
- Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

## Removing the subwoofer (version 1)

Applies to: vehicles with subwoofer in the spare wheel well

*The subwoofer must be removed before the spare wheel* can be removed.*

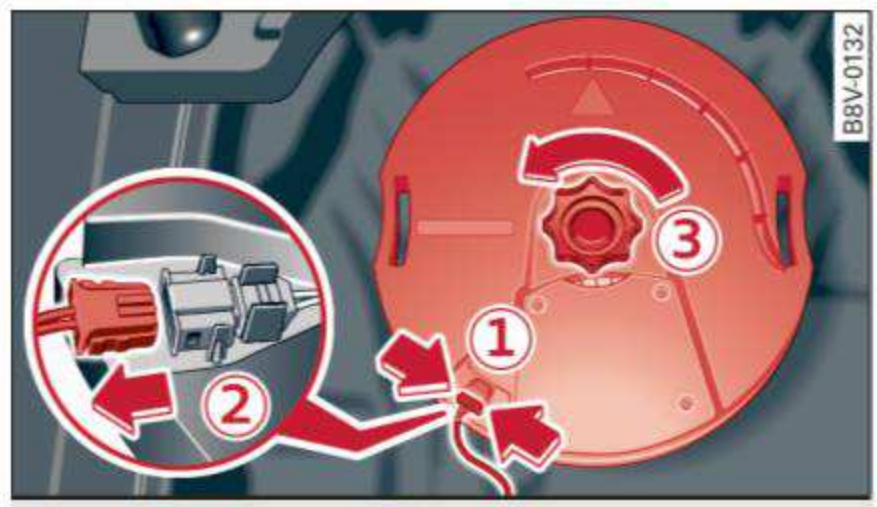



**Fig. 294** Spare tire well: subwoofer ▶

### Removing the subwoofer

- Lift up the cargo floor ⇨ *page 369, fig. 292*.
- Press the connector tabs (1) ⇨ *fig. 294* together.
- Remove the connector (2) and set the disconnected cable aside.
- Remove the bolt (3).
- Carefully remove the subwoofer.

### Installing the subwoofer

- Carefully place the subwoofer in the rim well. The word "FRONT" on the subwoofer must face forward.
- Insert the connector that was removed.
- Secure the subwoofer with the bolt.
- Fold the cargo floor cover back into place.

**Tips**

The subwoofer can also be mounted when the spare tire is not in the spare wheel well.

## Removing the subwoofer (version 2)

Applies to: vehicles with subwoofer in the spare wheel well

*The subwoofer must be removed before the spare wheel* can be removed.*

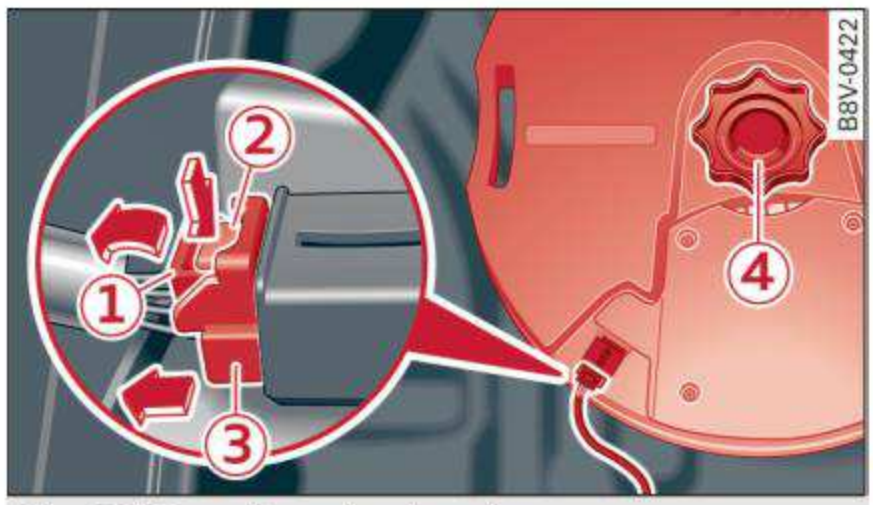



**Fig. 295** Spare tire well: subwoofer

### Removing the subwoofer

- Lift up the cargo floor ⇨ *page 369, fig. 292*.
- Pull the lock (1) ⇨ *fig. 295* toward the cable.
- Press the locking tab (2) down.
- Remove the connector (3) and set the removed cable aside.
- Remove the bolt (4).
- Carefully remove the subwoofer.

### Installing the subwoofer

- Carefully place the subwoofer in the rim well. The word "FRONT" on the subwoofer must face forward.
- Insert the connector that was removed.
- Slide the lock (1) back in the direction of the subwoofer.
- Secure the subwoofer with the bolt.
- Fold the cargo floor cover back into place.

**Tips**

The subwoofer can also be mounted when the spare tire is not in the spare wheel well.

# Fuses and bulbs

## Fuses

### Changing fuses

*A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.*

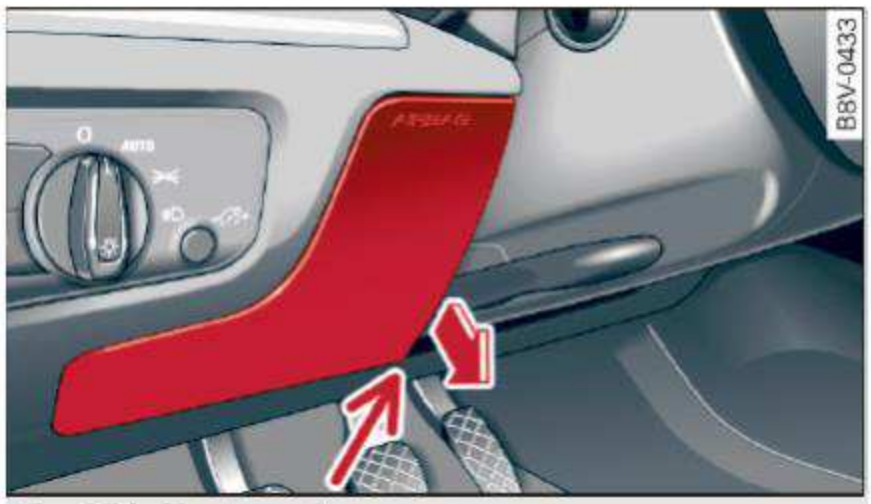



**Fig. 296** Steering column area: cover

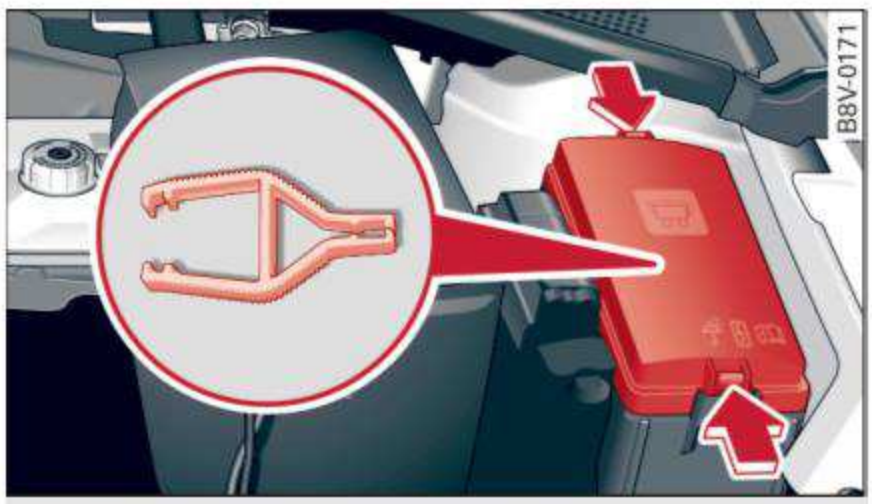



**Fig. 297** Left side of the engine compartment: fuse cover

The fuses are located behind a cover in the steering column area ⇨ *fig. 296* or under a cover on the left side of the engine compartment ⇨ *fig. 297*.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment ⇨ *page 372*.
- ▸ Remove the cover.
- ▸ Remove the plastic clip from the fuse panel cover in the engine compartment ⇨ *fig. 297*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the plastic clamp.
- ▸ Replace the burned fuse with an identical new one.
- ▸ Reinsert the cover.

**Fuse color identification**

| Color | Current rating in amps |
|---|---|
| Black | 1 |
| Purple | 3 |
| Light brown | 5 |
| Brown | 7.5 |
| Red | 10 |
| Blue | 15 |
| Yellow | 20 |
| White or transparent | 25 |
| Green | 30 |
| Orange | 40 |

**WARNING**

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

**Note**

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

**Tips**

- The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
- Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

## Fuse assignment - interior

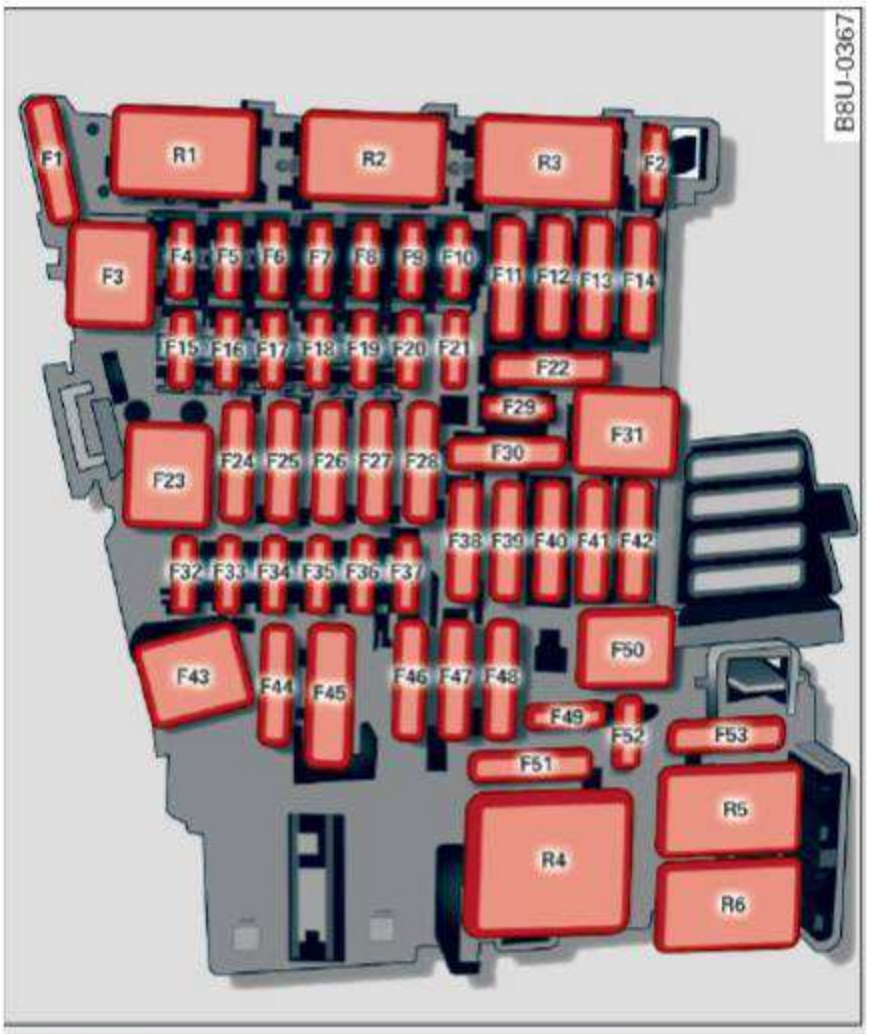



**Fig. 298** Vehicle interior: fuse assignment

| No. | Equipment |
|---|---|
| F1 | AdBlue engine components |
| F2 | Seat adjustment |
| F3 | Power top hydraulic pump |
| F4 | Infotainment control panel, Infotainment components |
| F5 | Gateway |
| F6 | Selector lever (automatic transmission) |
| F7 | Air conditioning/heating controls, auxiliary heating, rear window defogger relay, tire pressure monitor |
| F8 | Electromechanical parking brake switch, light switch, rain/light sensor, anti-theft alarm system, diagnostic connector, roof module, emergency call system, headlight range control |
| F9 | Steering column switch module |
| F10 | Infotainment system display |
| F11 | Left vehicle electrical system control module |
| F12 | Infotainment components |
| F13 | Driver's side safety belt tensioner |
| F14 | Heating/air conditioning system blower |
| F15 | Electronic steering column lock |
| F16 | Infotainment components |
| F17 | Instrument cluster |
| F18 | Rearview camera |
| F19 | Convenience access control module |
| F20 | Engine components |
| F21 | Steering column, steering wheel heating switch module |
| F23 | Panorama glass roof/power top control module, power top latch |
| F24 | Right vehicle electrical system control module |
| F25 | Driver's side front/rear power windows |
| F26 | Seat heating |
| F27 | Interior lights |
| F28 | Power top control module |
| F29 | Interior lights |
| F30 | Diagnostic connector |
| F32 | Front camera, parking system, ACC sensor, lane change assist |
| F33 | Airbag |
| F34 | Hold assist button, interior sound, reversing light switch, temperature sensor, neck heating relay coil and socket relay, power top operation button |
| F35 | Air quality sensor, automatic dimming rearview mirror, diagnostic connector, center console power supply |
| F36 | Right headlight (LED, Matrix LED) |
| F37 | Left headlight (LED, Matrix LED) |
| F38 | High-voltage battery |
| F39 | Passenger's side front/rear power windows |
| F40 | Sockets |
| F41 | Passenger's side safety belt tensioner |
| F42 | Central locking area |
| F43 | Sound-amplifier |
| F44 | All wheel drive |
| F47 | Rear window wiper |
| F48 | Outer sound actuator |

▶

| No. | Equipment |
|---|---|
| F49 | Clutch sensor (relay 1+2), high-voltage battery, power electronics |
| F52 | Control module for suspension control |
| F53 | Rear window defogger |

The power seats* are protected via **circuit breakers** that automatically switch on after a few seconds after the overload has been reduced.

## Fuse assignment - engine compartment

**Fig. 299** Engine compartment: fuse assignment

| No. | Equipment |
|---|---|
| F1 | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) |
| F2 | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) |
| F3 | Engine control module |
| F4 | Engine components, engine cooling, auxiliary heater coil relay (1+4+7), secondary air injection pump relay |
| F5 | Engine components, fuel tank system (diesel), CNG cut-off valve |
| F6 | Brake light switch |
| F7 | Engine components, water pumps, tank system (gasoline engine) |
| F8 | Heat oxygen sensor |

| No. | Equipment |
|---|---|
| F9 | Engine components, exhaust door, glow time control module (relay 6) |
| F10 | Fuel control module, fuel pump |
| F11 | Auxiliary heater heating element 2, engine components, secondary air pump |
| F12 | Auxiliary heater heating element 3, vacuum pump |
| F13 | Automatic transmission |
| F15 | Horn |
| F16 | Ignition coil (relay 8), power and control electronics |
| F17 | Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC), engine control module (relay 5) |
| F18 | Terminal 30 (voltage reference), battery monitoring |
| F19 | Windshield wipers |
| F20 | Anti-theft alarm system |
| F22 | Terminal 50 diagnosis, engine control module |
| F23 | Starter |
| F24 | Auxiliary heater heating element 1, brake booster |
| F31 | Vacuum pump, water pump, high pressure pump, fuel injectors |
| F33 | Brake pressure reservoir, recuperation, transmission fluid pump |
| F34 | Brake booster |
| F35 | A/C function relay |
| F37 | Parking heater |

# Bulbs

## Replacing light bulbs

*For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you.*

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the ▶

front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, parts must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

**Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights)**

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with Xenon light are identified by the high voltage sticker.

**LED headlights***

LED headlights require no maintenance. Please contact your authorized Audi dealer if a bulb needs to be replaced.

**WARNING**

Changing Xenon lamps without the necessary equipment can cause serious personal injury.

- Bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed. Potential risk of injury!
- On vehicles equipped with gas discharge bulbs (Xenon light) life-threatening injuries can result from improper handling of the high-voltage portions of such lamps!
- Only your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps. There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the bulb holders that can cause serious cuts. If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

**Tips**

- If you still prefer to replace the light bulbs yourself, be aware that the engine compartment is a hazardous area to work in ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 318*.
- It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you want to change a bulb.

# Emergency situations

## General

**This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.**

## Starting by pushing or towing

**Note**

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

## Jump starting

### Preparation

*If needed, the engine can be jump started by another vehicle battery.*

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: the connection points for the jump start cable are different ⇨ *page 102*.

If the engine does not start because the vehicle battery is drained, you can jump start the engine using another vehicle battery. You need a jump start cable to do this.

Both vehicle batteries must have 12 V nominal voltage. The voltage capacity (Ah) of the vehicle battery that is giving power must not be less than the capacity of the drained vehicle battery.

#### Jump start cable

Only use a jump start cable with a large enough diameter. Note the manufacturer's specifications.

Only use a jump start cable with insulated terminal clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable -usually black.

**WARNING**

- Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: you must **not** give a jump start with your vehicle. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system in your vehicle ⇨ *page 102*.
- A drained vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 ºC. If the vehicle battery is frozen, you must thaw it before connecting the jump start cables. If you do not, this increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
- The engine compartment is a dangerous area and can cause serious injuries. Before working in the engine compartment, read and follow the warnings ⇨ *page 318*.
- Handling the jump start cables incorrectly may cause the vehicle battery to explode and lead to serious injuries. To reduce the risk of injury, observe the following:
- Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
- Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the engine compartment.
- To reduce the risk of chemical burns, do not bend over the vehicle battery.
- The locking bolts on the battery cells must be tightened securely.
- Keep ignition sources (open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
- Do not clamp the negative cable to fuel system components or to the brake lines.

**Note**

- There must be no contact between the vehicles, If there is, current could already be ▶

flowing when connecting the positive terminals and the vehicle battery in the vehicle providing the jump start could be drained.
– Jump start cables can cause considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system if they are connected incorrectly.
– The drained vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the electrical system.
– Please note that the connecting process described below for the jump start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump started. If you are jump starting another vehicle, do not connect the negative cable to the negative terminal **(-)** on the drained vehicle battery, but rather connect it to a large metal component that is bolted securely to the engine block, or to the engine block itself. If the vehicle battery in the vehicle being jump started is not vented to the outside, there is a risk of explosion due to hydrogen gas.

**Tips**

If a car phone is installed, switch it off or check the operating guide for what to do in this situation.

## A3 models: starting the engine

*Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order!*

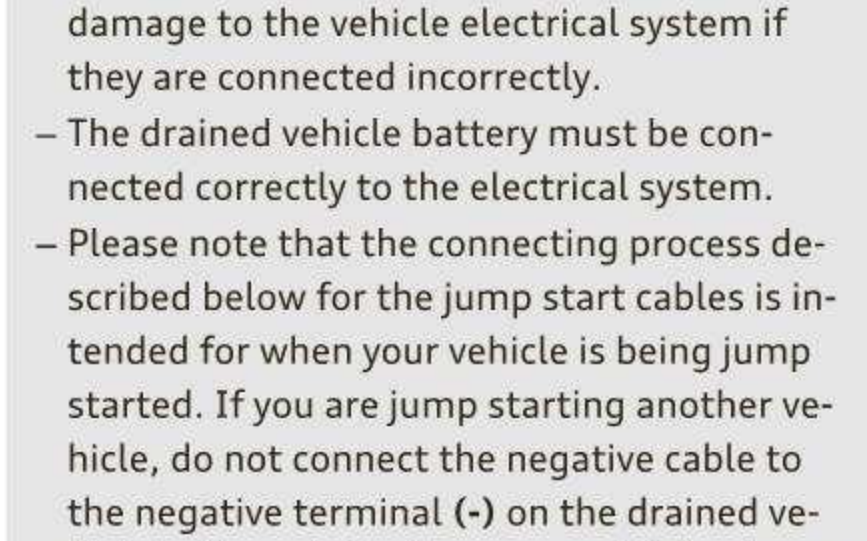



**Fig. 300** Jump starting using a vehicle battery in another vehicle: Ⓐ – drained, Ⓑ – providing current

Plug-in hybrid drive*: the connection points for the jump start cables vary ⇨ *page 102*.

The vehicle battery is located on the left front side of the engine compartment. Open the cover to access the positive terminal of the vehicle battery. The procedure for connecting jump start cables that is described next is designed to help jump start your vehicle.

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 326*.

### Preparations

1. Read the following carefully ⇨ *page 375, Preparation*.
2. Set the parking brake and select neutral on vehicles with a manual transmission, or move the selector lever to the P position on vehicles with an automatic transmission.
3. Turn the ignition and electrical equipment off in both vehicles.

### Connecting/disconnecting the jump start cable

4. Fold the battery cover upward.
5. Clamp the end of the red jump start cable to the terminal ① ⇨ *fig. 300* on the drained vehicle battery Ⓐ ⇨ ! *in Preparation on page 375*.
6. Clamp the other end of the red jump start cable to the positive terminal ② on the vehicle battery providing the current Ⓑ.
7. Clamp the black end of the jump start cable **preferably at the ground point**, or on the negative terminal of the vehicle battery ③ on the vehicle providing the current Ⓑ.
8. Clamp the other end of the black jump start cable **only** to the **ground point** ④ on **your vehicle** Ⓐ ⇨ !.
9. Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the engine compartment.

### Starting the engine

10. First start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
11. Now start the engine in the vehicle with the drained vehicle battery and wait two to three minutes until it “runs smoothly”.
12. If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
13. In the vehicle that is being jump started, switch the heater fan and rear window ▶

defroster on to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jumper cables. The headlights must be switched off.

14. While the engines are running, remove the cables in *reverse* order from the way they were installed, as described in ⇨ *page 376*. Make sure the cables do not get caught in moving engine components.
15. Fold the cover back on the battery correctly.
16. Switch the heater fan and rear window defroster off.

Read and follow: ⇨ ⚠ *in Preparation on page 375* and ⇨ ⓘ *in Preparation on page 375*.

**Note**

Do not use the negative terminal on the vehicle battery for jump starting. A malfunction could occur in the vehicle electrical system.

**Tips**

– Make sure that the connected positive terminal clamps have sufficient contact with metal.
– The vehicle battery in your vehicle vents to the outside so the battery gases drain out of the vehicle.

## RS models: starting the engine

*Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order!*

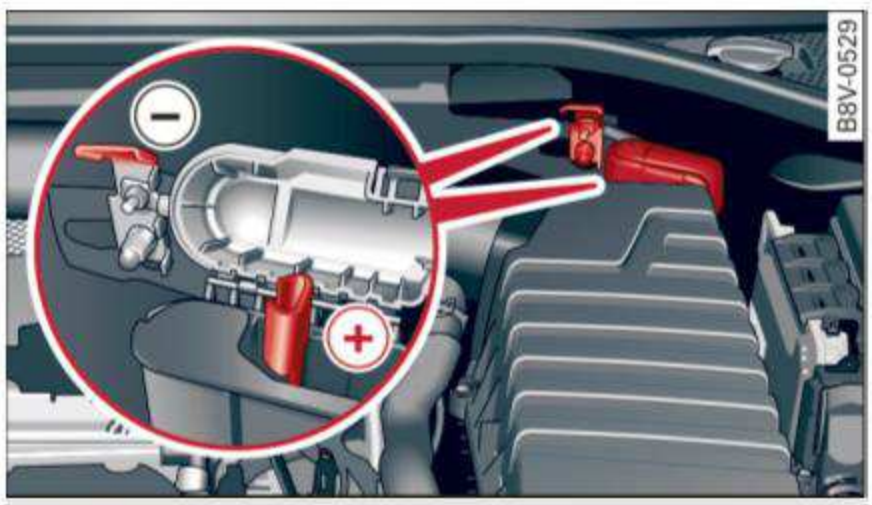



**Fig. 301** Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

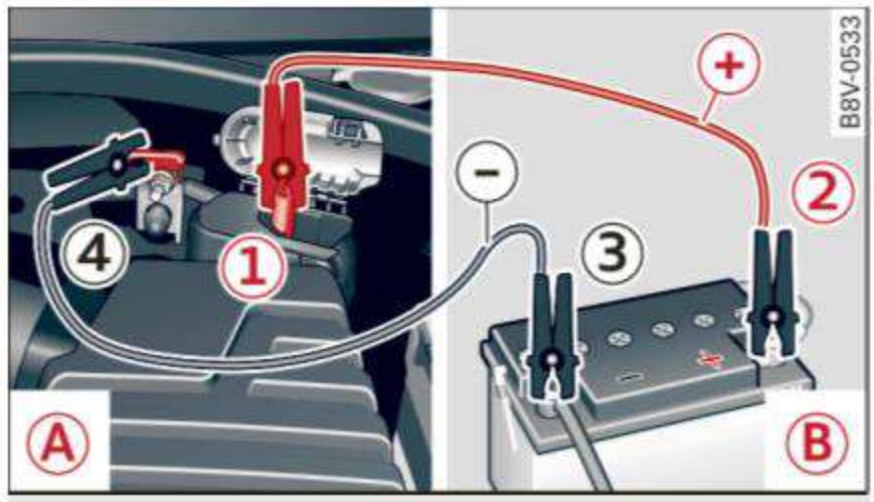



**Fig. 302** Jump starting using a vehicle battery in another vehicle: Ⓐ – drained, Ⓑ – providing current

**Jump start points** are located on the left side of the engine compartment instead of the vehicle battery ⇨ *fig. 301*. Open the cap on the positive terminal. The procedure for connecting jump start cables that is described next is designed to help jump start your vehicle.

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 326*.

### Preparations

1. Read the following carefully ⇨ *page 375, Preparation*.
2. Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the P position.
3. Turn the ignition and electrical equipment off in both vehicles.

### Connecting/disconnecting the jump start cable

4. Open the cover on the positive terminal.
5. Clamp the end of the red jump start cable to the terminal ① ⇨ *page 376, fig. 300* on the drained vehicle battery Ⓐ ⇨ ⓘ *in Preparation on page 375*.
6. Clamp the other end of the red jump start cable to the positive terminal ② on the vehicle battery providing the current Ⓑ.
7. Clamp the black end of the jump start cable **preferably at the ground point**, or on the negative terminal of the vehicle battery ③ on the vehicle providing the current Ⓑ.
8. Clamp the other end of the black jump start cable **only** to the **ground point** ④ on **your vehicle** Ⓐ. ▶

9. Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the engine compartment.

### Starting the engine

10. First start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
11. Now start the engine in the vehicle with the drained vehicle battery and wait two to three minutes until it “runs smoothly”.
12. If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
13. In the vehicle that is being jump started, switch the heater fan and rear window defroster on to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jumper cables. The headlights must be switched off.
14. While the engines are running, remove the cables in *reverse* order from the way they were installed, as described in ⇨ *page 376*. Make sure the cables do not get caught in moving engine components.
15. Close the cap on the positive terminal.
16. Switch the heater fan and rear window defroster off.

Read and follow: ⇨ ⚠ *in Preparation on page 375* and ⇨ ⓘ *in Preparation on page 375*.

**Tips**

- Make sure that the connected positive terminal clamps have sufficient contact with metal.
- The vehicle battery in your vehicle vents to the outside so the battery gases drain out of the vehicle.

## Towing with a tow truck

### General hints

*Your Audi requires special handling for towing.*

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

- **Never tow your Audi. Towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
- **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
- **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flatbed truck.**
- **To load the vehicle on to the flatbed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 378* and ⇨ *page 379*.

**WARNING**

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

### Front towing loop

**Fig. 303** Right side of front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 360*.
- ▸ Press inward on the *upper left* area of the cap with brief, strong pressure to remove it from the bumper ⇨ *fig. 303*.
- ▸ Insert the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops, and then tighten it with the wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

**WARNING**

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

## Rear towing loop

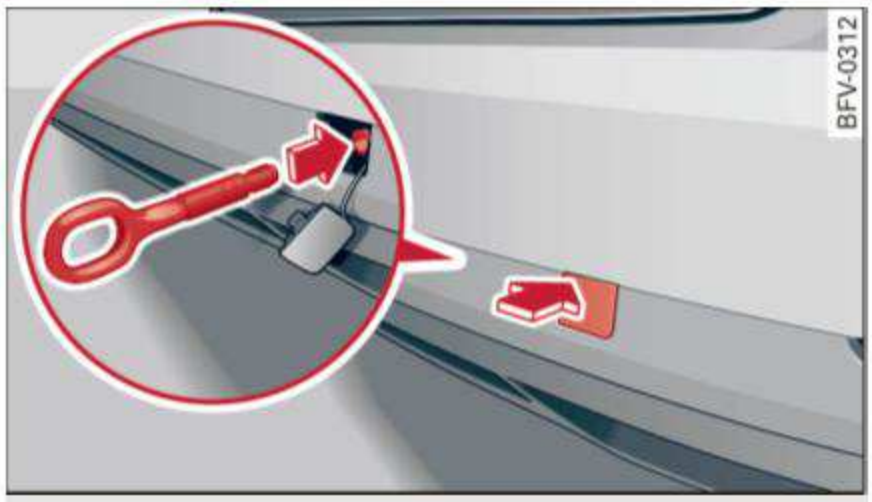



**Fig. 304** Right side of rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The towing loop threaded opening is located in the right of the rear bumper cover under a cover.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 360*.
- ▸ To remove the cap from the bumper, press in on the *upper* area of the cap -arrow- with brief, strong pressure and lift it up from the *lower* area ⇨ *fig. 304*.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

Depending on the model, the shape of the cover can vary.

**WARNING**

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

## Loading the vehicle onto a flatbed truck

**Fig. 305** Vehicle on flatbed truck (example)

### Front hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

### Rear hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

**Tips**

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

# Raising the vehicle

## Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

*The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.*

**Fig. 306** Front lifting point (example)

**Fig. 307** Rear lifting point (example)

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 306* and ⇨ *fig. 307*. ▶

- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

**If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.**

### Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 306*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

### Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the on-board jack ⇨ *fig. 307*.

### Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 366*.

**pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**

- **– To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**
- **– Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**
- **– Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.**

**WARNING**

- – To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - – Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 306* and ⇨ *fig. 307*.
  - – Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- – When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

**Note**

- – Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - – **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil**

# Technical data

## Vehicle specifications

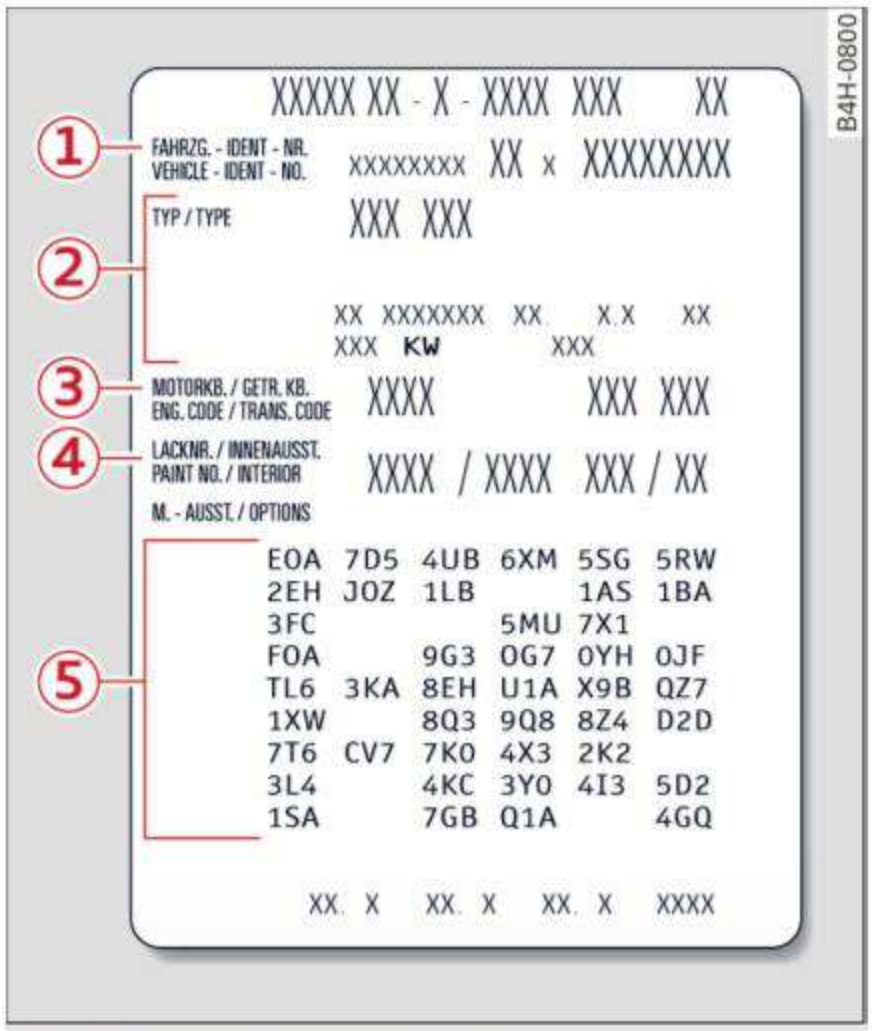



**Fig. 308** Vehicle identification label

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The VIN number is located in the following places:

– Select: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**.
– On the vehicle identification label
– At the front behind the windshield*

### Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 308* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

The vehicle identification label information can also be found in the Warranty and Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission codes
④ Paint and interior codes
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

## Notes about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

**Tips**

Missing technical data was not available at the time of printing.

## Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model, equipment and measuring methods used in each market.

| | Length (in (mm)) | Width (in (mm)) | Width across the mirrors (in (mm)) | Height at curb weight (in (mm)) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| A3 Cabriolet | 174.4 (4,430) | 70.5 (1,793) | 77.1 (1,960) | 55.4 (1,409) |
| A3 sedan | 175.8 (4,465) | 70.7 (1,796) | 77.1 (1,960) | 55.7 (1,416) |
| A3 Sportback e-tron | 169.6 (4,311) | 70.2 (1,785) | 77.4 (1,966) | 56.1 (1,426) |
| RS3 sedan | 176.3 (4,479) | 70.9 (1,802) | 77.1 (1,960) | 55.0 (1,397) |
| S3 sedan | 176.1 (4,472) | 70.7 (1,796) | 77.1 (1,960) | 54.8 (1,392) |

# Capacities

| | Approximate capacities |
|---|---|
| Fuel tank, front wheel drive | 13.2 gal (50.0 L) |
| Fuel tank, all wheel drive | 14.5 gal (55.0 L) |
| Plug-in hybrid drive fuel tank | 10.5 gal (40.0 L) |
| Windshield washer system | 3.2 qt (3.0 L) |
| Windshield and headlight washer system* | 5.0 qt (4.7 L) |
| Windshield and headlight washer system*, S models | 4.2 qt (4.0 L) |
| Windshield and headlight washer system*, RS models | 3.7 qt (3.5 L) |

# Weights

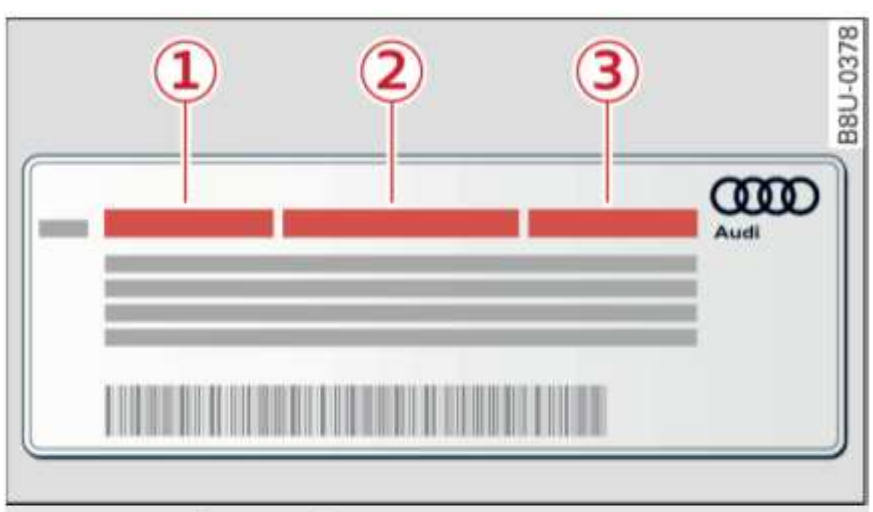



**Fig. 309** Safety certificate

## Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight ① of the vehicle is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

## Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle ② or the rear axle ③ is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

## Load

The maximum permitted load is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

## Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is 165 lbs (75 kg).

# Consumer Information

## Warranty coverages

**Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:**

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

## Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside North America.

**Note**

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

## Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

**www.audi.techliterature.com**

## Maintenance

### General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

**Under difficult operating conditions,** for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

**For the sake of the environment**

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

### Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of ▶

8V2012721BF

today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

### Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

**Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ *page 318*.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always switch off the ignition before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in P (Park position) and the park brake is applied. ▶

**For the sake of the environment**

- Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
- Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
- Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

# Accessories and technical changes

## Additional accessories and parts replacement

*Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.*

Audi vehicles that are constructed with advanced materials like Steel/Aluminum (Hybrid construction), Aluminum (Audi Space Frame), and/or Aluminum/Carbon Fiber (Ultra Advanced Light Weight Materials) are as unique as their drivers. Therefore, the availability of certain parts needed for repair, restoration, or reconstruction will be restricted, or parts will be unavailable, if the vehicle is not repaired at an authorized Audi collision repair facility. This includes but is not limited to structural parts which require specialized training and equipment to restore their crashworthiness back to the original NHTSA and IIHS performance.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

**WARNING**

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

- Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
- These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
- Do not use license plate brackets in the front area that are different from the one installed at the factory, or add additional license plate brackets.
- Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 318*.

**Note**

- If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
- If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
- The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

8V2012721BF

## Technical Modifications

*Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.*

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse effect on other systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

**⚠ WARNING**

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

**Note**

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

# Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

### Equipment

The following equipment complies with FCC section 15 and RSS-Gen:

– Audi adaptive cruise control*
– Audi side assist*
– Remote control key
– Cell phone package*
– Tire pressure monitoring system*

### FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### RSS-Gen

This device complies with Industry Canada's license-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### CNR-Gen

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes :

1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;

2) l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

# A


A/C (automatic climate control system) . . . . 69
Accessories . . . . . 62, 385
Active lane assist
*refer to* Audi active lane assist . . . . . 133
Active rollover protection system . . . . . 257
Retracting rollover protection . . . . . 257
Adaptive cruise control
*refer to* Audi adaptive cruise control . . . . 123
Adaptive light
*refer to* Audi adaptive light . . . . . 49
Adjusting the additional display . . . . . 15
Adjusting the air distribution
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 70
Adjusting the air vents . . . . . 71
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 70
Adjusting the sound . . . . . 247
Advanced key
*refer to* Convenience key . . . . . 76
Airbag . . . . . 269
Airbag system . . . . . 269, 289
Advanced Airbag System components . . . 276
Care . . . . . 284
Children . . . . . 296
Child restraints . . . . . 297
Components (front airbags) . . . . . 276
Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat . . . . . 270
Disposal . . . . . 284
Front airbags . . . . . 274
How do the front airbags work? . . . . . 279
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 276
How the Advanced Airbag System components work together . . . . . 278
Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system . . . . . 287
Knee airbags . . . . . 285
Monitoring . . . . . 281
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light . . . . . 281
Repairs . . . . . 284
Safety instructions . . . . . 283
Side airbags . . . . . 287
Warning/Indicator lights . . . . . 281
When must the system be inspected? . . . 281
Air pressure
Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator 348
Alarm system
*refer to* Anti-theft alarm system . . . . . 36
Alignment pin (tire change) . . . . . 360
All-weather lights . . . . . 49
All season tires . . . . . 346
All wheel drive
*refer to* quattro (all wheel drive) . . . . . 152
AMI
*refer to* Audi music interface . . . . . 229, 230
Android Auto
*refer to* Audi smartphone interface . . . . . 241
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system . . . . . 328
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) . . . . . 148
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) . . . . . 148
Anti-theft alarm system . . . . . 36
Apple CarPlay
*refer to* Audi smartphone interface . . . . . 241
ASR
*refer to* Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) . . . . . 148
Audi active lane assist . . . . . 133
Cleaning the camera area . . . . . 355
Messages . . . . . 135
Audi adaptive cruise control . . . . . 123
Cleaning the sensor . . . . . 355
Distance display, distance warning . . . . . 129
Messages . . . . . 130
Audi adaptive light . . . . . 140
Audi connect e-tron services . . . . . 199
Doors and lights . . . . . 199
Audi connect (Infotainment) . . . . . 190, 196
Data protection . . . . . 197
Services overview . . . . . 191
Starting . . . . . 191
Audi drive select . . . . . 140
Audi magnetic ride
*refer to* Suspension control . . . . . 140
Audi music interface . . . . . 229
Audi music stream
*refer to* Wi-Fi . . . . . 227
Audio files . . . . . 232
Audio player
Bluetooth audio player . . . . . 226
Wi-Fi audio player . . . . . 227
Audio track . . . . . 235


8V2012721BF

Audi pre sense . . . . . 130
Messages . . . . . 130, 133
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 383
Audi side assist . . . . . 136
Cleaning the sensors . . . . . 355
Messages . . . . . 140
Rear cross-traffic assist . . . . . 139
Audi smartphone interface . . . . . 241, 245
Audi virtual cockpit
*refer to* Instrument cluster . . . . . 10
AUTO
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 69
Automatic headlights . . . . . 49
Auto Lock (central locking system) . . . . . 31
Automatic belt retractor . . . . . 264
Automatic climate control system
*refer to* Climate control system (automatic) . . . . . 68, 69
Automatic power top
*refer to* Power top . . . . . 42
Automatic transmission . . . . . 83
Driving tips . . . . . 86
Emergency mode . . . . . 89
Hill descent control . . . . . 87
Kick-down . . . . . 88
Launch control program . . . . . 89
Malfunction . . . . . 84
Manual shifting (tiptronic mode) . . . . . 88
Selector lever . . . . . 86
Selector lever emergency release . . . . . 90
Selector lever lock . . . . . 84
Selector lever positions . . . . . 84
Shift paddles . . . . . 88
Automatic wipe/wash system . . . . . 55
Auto Safety Hotline . . . . . 258
Auxiliary climate control . . . . . 116
AUX input . . . . . 230
Average consumption . . . . . 17, 18
Average speed . . . . . 17, 18

## B

BACK button . . . . . 154
Bag hooks . . . . . 63, 65
Balance (sound) . . . . . 247
Bass (sound) . . . . . 247
Battery
In the key . . . . . 32
*also refer to* High-voltage battery . . . . . 92
*also refer to* Vehicle battery . . . . . 326
Before driving . . . . . 249
Belt tensioners . . . . . 267
Blended gasoline . . . . . 314
Blower
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 70
Bluetooth
Audio player . . . . . 226
Connecting a cell phone . . . . . 177
Settings . . . . . 246
Boost . . . . . 19
Booster seats . . . . . 304
Boost pressure indicator . . . . . 19
Brakes . . . . . 150
Brake assist . . . . . 148
Brake fluid . . . . . 326
Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 81
Emergency braking function . . . . . 82
New brake pads . . . . . 150
Break-in security feature . . . . . 36
Breaking in
New brake pads . . . . . 150
New engine . . . . . 72
New tires . . . . . 337
Browser
*refer to* Media center . . . . . 233
Bulbs . . . . . 373
Buttons
Control panel (MMI) . . . . . 154
Multifunction steering wheel . . . . . 13, 16
Programming (multifunction steering wheel) . . . . . 15
Switching the Infotainment system display on/off . . . . . 155

## C

Cable (USB adapter/AUX connector cable) . 229
California Proposition 65 Warning . . . . . 319
Battery specific . . . . . 327
Call list . . . . . 180
Call options . . . . . 188

Capacities
Fuel tank . . . . . 382
Washer fluid reservoir . . . . . 382
Care
*refer to* Cleaning . . . . . 354
Car Finder
Audi connect e-tron services . . . . . 200
Cargo area . . . . . 255
Cargo bag . . . . . 65
Catalytic converter . . . . . 317
CD drive (media drives) . . . . . 225
Cell phone
*refer to* Telephone . . . . . 177
Central locking . . . . . 31
Central locking switch . . . . . 34
Certification . . . . . 386
Changing engine oil . . . . . 324
Changing the scale . . . . . 13
Charge level
Instrument cluster . . . . . 95
Charging
*refer to* Power sources . . . . . 62
Charging clip . . . . . 108
Charging the battery (mobile devices) 230, 231
Charging (plug-in hybrid drive) . . . . . 104
Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat . . . . . 270
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? . . . . 313
Child restraint system anchors . . . . . 308
Child safety . . . . . 294
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats . . . . . 298
Tether anchors . . . . . 311
Tether straps . . . . . 311
Child safety lock . . . . . 39
Child safety seats . . . . . 300
Booster seats . . . . . 304
Convertible child seats . . . . . 302
Convertible locking retractor . . . . . 307
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? . . . . . 298
Infant seats . . . . . 300
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system . . . . . 310
LATCH system . . . . . 310
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook . . . . . 310
Safety instructions . . . . . 298
Securing . . . . . 305
Unused safety belts on the rear seat . . . . 300
Child seats
Lower anchorages . . . . . 309
Classic view . . . . . 14
Cleaning . . . . . 354
Cleaning/removing ice from windows . . . . . 356
Cleaning Alcantara . . . . . 357
Cleaning artificial leather . . . . . 357
Cleaning carbon parts . . . . . 356, 357
Cleaning controls . . . . . 357
Cleaning decorative parts/trim . . . . . 356
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes . . . . . 356
Cleaning plastic parts . . . . . 356
Cleaning textiles . . . . . 357
Cleaning the charging clip . . . . . 117
Cleaning the charging dock . . . . . 117
Cleaning the tail lights . . . . . 355
Cleaning the windshield . . . . . 55
Climate control system (automatic) . . . . . 68
Adjusting the air vents . . . . . 71
AUTO (climate control system) . . . . . 69
Description . . . . . 68
Drive select . . . . . 140
Key recognition . . . . . 68
Operation . . . . . 69
Presetting . . . . . 68
Synchronizing . . . . . 69
Clock . . . . . 243
Closing
Hood . . . . . 320
Panorama glass roof . . . . . 40
Power top . . . . . 42
Windows . . . . . 39
*also refer to* Unlocking/locking . . . . 31, 33, 34
Closing/opening
*refer to* Unlocking/locking . . . . . 31, 33, 34
Cockpit (overview) . . . . . 8
Coming home/Leaving home
*refer to* Entry/exit lighting . . . . . 51
Command (voice recognition system) . . . . . 170
Compartments . . . . . 63

Compass in the mirror . . . . . 57
Compliance . . . . . 386
connect e-tron services . . . . . 199
Connection manager . . . . . 244
Connections
*refer to* Media . . . . . 223, 232
Consumer Information . . . . . 258, 383
Consumption (fuel) . . . . . 17, 18
Contacting NHTSA . . . . . 258
Contacts . . . . . 186
Additional directory . . . . . 245
Importing/exporting . . . . . 187
Memory capacity . . . . . 188
Storing as destination . . . . . 208
Control buttons (operating the MMI) . . . . . 156
Control knob with joystick function (MMI operation) . . . . . 159
Convenience key
Emergency operation . . . . . 79
Starting/stopping the engine . . . . . 76
Unlocking/locking . . . . . 34
Convenience opening/closing . . . . . 40
Convertible child safety seats . . . . . 302
Convertible locking retractor
Activating . . . . . 307
Deactivating . . . . . 308
Using to secure a child safety seat . . . . . 307
Cooling down . . . . . 72
Cooling mode
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 69
Cooling system
Adding coolant . . . . . 325
Coolant . . . . . 324
Coolant level checking . . . . . 325
Coolant temperature indicator . . . . . 11
Cruise control system . . . . . 120
Cup holders . . . . . 62
Current consumption . . . . . 17, 18

## D

Data connection . . . . . 196
Data protection . . . . . 197
Data recorder . . . . . 152
Date . . . . . 243
Date display . . . . . 243
Daytime running lights . . . . . 49
Declaration of compliance . . . . . 386
Defrosting (windows)
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 70
DEF (instrument cluster) . . . . . 12
Deluxe automatic climate control
*refer to* Climate control system (automatic) . . . . . 68, 69
Demo mode
*refer to* Presentation mode . . . . . 209
Determining correct load limit . . . . . 345
Digital compass . . . . . 57
Digital Rights Management . . . . . 223
Dimensions . . . . . 381
Dimming the exterior mirrors . . . . . 54
Dimming the rearview mirror . . . . . 54
Directory
*refer to* Contacts . . . . . 186
Display . . . . . 13
Cleaning . . . . . 357
Infotainment system display . . . . . 155, 244
Instrument cluster . . . . . 16
Multifunction steering wheel . . . . . 13
Distance . . . . . 17, 18
Doors
Child safety lock . . . . . 39
Door contact switch . . . . . 52
Emergency release . . . . . 36
*also refer to* Unlocking/locking . . . . 31, 33, 34
Driver information system
Changing views . . . . . 13
Economy tips (analog instrument cluster) . 19
Efficiency program . . . . . 19
Energy consumers (Audi virtual cockpit) . . 18
Outside temperature display . . . . . 12
Service interval display . . . . . 328
Trip computer (analog instrument cluster . 18
Trip computer (Audi virtual cockpit) . . . . . 17
View . . . . . 14
Driver seating position . . . . . 250
Drives
*refer to* Media . . . . . 223, 232
Drive select
*refer to* Audi drive select . . . . . 140
Driving economically . . . . . 73
Driving safely . . . . . 249
Driving through water . . . . . 72

Driving time . . . . . 17, 18
Dust filter
*refer to* Pollutant filter . . . . . 68
DVD drive (media drives) . . . . . 224
Dynamic volume
*refer to* System volume . . . . . 248

# E

E-mail . . . . . 184
e-tron
Navigation . . . . . 217
*also refer to* Plug-in hybrid drive . . . . . 92
eco mode (automatic climate control system) .69
Economical route . . . . . 208
Efficiency program . . . . . 19
Electric drive . . . . . 92
Electric range . . . . . 217
Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 81
Electromechanical steering . . . . . 151
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) . . . . . 148
Electronic immobilizer . . . . . 32
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) . . . . . 148
Emergency assistance . . . . . 360
Emergency braking function . . . . . 82
Emergency flashers . . . . . 51
Emergency operation
Fuel filler door . . . . . 317
Emergency starting . . . . . 375
Emissions control system . . . . . 317
Energy consumers . . . . . 18
Energy management . . . . . 152
Engine
Coolant . . . . . 324
Jump starting . . . . . 375
Jump starting (plug-in hybrid drive) . . . . . 102
Messages . . . . . 78
Start/Stop system . . . . . 79
Starting/stopping (button) . . . . . 76
Starting/stopping (key) . . . . . 75
Warming up/cooling down . . . . . 72
Engine compartment
Opening/closing the hood . . . . . 320
Overview . . . . . 321
Safety precautions . . . . . 318
Engine data
*refer to* Sport displays . . . . . 20
Engine oil
Adding . . . . . 321
Changing . . . . . 324
Checking oil level . . . . . 321
Consumption . . . . . 321
Dipstick . . . . . 321
Oil change interval . . . . . 328
Temperature display . . . . . 19
Enhanced view . . . . . 14
Entering characters/numbers (speller) . . . . 161
Entering letters (speller) . . . . . 161
Entertainment sliding menu . . . . . 159
Entry/exit lighting . . . . . 51
Entry assistance
*refer to* Seats . . . . . 60
Environment
Proper disposal of drained engine oil . . . . 324
Unleaded gasoline . . . . . 314
ESC
*refer to* Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) . . . . . 148
Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . . 152
Exterior lighting . . . . . 49
Exterior mirrors . . . . . 53
Folding . . . . . 53
Folding settings . . . . . 35
External voice operation . . . . . 175

# F

Factory default settings
Multi Media Interface . . . . . 244
Fader (sound) . . . . . 247
Fastening
Booster seats . . . . . 304
Convertible child safety seats . . . . . 302
Infant seats . . . . . 300
Fast forwarding/rewinding (audio/video file) . . . . . 232
Fast forwarding (audio/video file) . . . . . 232
Fast route . . . . . 208
Favorites
Media . . . . . 234
Navigation . . . . . 203
Telephone . . . . . 182
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) 386
File formats (media drives) . . . . . 237

Floor mats . . . . . 254
Folding the rear seats . . . . . 65, 66
Foot pedals . . . . . 254
For the sake of the environment
Environmentally-friendly driving . . . . . 73
Leaks . . . . . 319
Roof rack . . . . . 67
Free text search . . . . . 162
Media . . . . . 234
Navigation . . . . . 201
Radio . . . . . 219
Telephone . . . . . 186
Freeze protection
Coolant . . . . . 324
Frequency band . . . . . 218, 221
Front airbags
Description . . . . . 273
How they work . . . . . 279
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . 261
Front center armrest . . . . . 60
Front passenger's door emergency release . . 36
Front seats . . . . . 59
Adjusting . . . . . 251
Child restraints in the front seat . . . . . 270
Fuel . . . . . 314
Additives . . . . . 314
Blended gasoline . . . . . 314
Current consumption . . . . . 17, 18
Fuel gauge . . . . . 10, 12
Fuel tank capacity . . . . . 382
Gasoline . . . . . 314
Gasoline additives . . . . . 315
Saving fuel . . . . . 140
Fueling
Fuel filler door emergency release . . . . . 317
Fuel gauge . . . . . 12
Fuel tank capacity . . . . . 382
Opening the fuel filler door . . . . . 315
Fuel shut-off during deceleration . . . . . 73
Fuses . . . . . 371

## G

Garment hooks . . . . . 63
Gas discharge lamps . . . . . 373
Gasoline . . . . . 314
Octane rating . . . . . 314
Recommendation . . . . . 314
GAWR
*refer to* Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 382
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 333
Glove compartment . . . . . 63
G meter
*refer to* Sport displays . . . . . 20
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . . . . . 382
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) . . . . . 382
GVWR
*refer to* Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) . . . . . 382

## H

Handsfree . . . . . 177
Headlight range control . . . . . 49
Headlights . . . . . 49
Cleaning . . . . . 355
Headlight range control . . . . . 49
Washer system . . . . . 55
Head restraints . . . . . 252
Adjusting . . . . . 61, 252
Removing and installing . . . . . 61
Heated
Exterior mirrors . . . . . 53
Rear window (automatic climate control system) . . . . . 70
Seats (automatic climate control system) . 70
Washer fluid nozzles . . . . . 55
Heating/ventilation system
Adjusting the air vents . . . . . 71
Heavy clothing and safety belts . . . . . 263
Hex socket . . . . . 360
High-voltage battery . . . . . 93
Charging . . . . . 115
High beams . . . . . 50
High beam assistant . . . . . 50
Hill descent control . . . . . 87
Hill hold assist . . . . . 83
*also refer to* Hill hold assist . . . . . 83
Hold assist (hill) . . . . . 83
Home address . . . . . 203, 207
Horn . . . . . 8

How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety . . . . . 308
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 276
How safety belt pretensioners work . . . . . 267

## I

Ignition
Establishing drive ready mode (plug-in hybrid drive) . . . . . 94
Switching on/off (plug-in hybrid drive) . . . 94
Switching on/off (using the button) . . . . . 76
Switching on/off (using the key) . . . . . 75
Imbalance (wheels) . . . . . 339
Immobilizer
*refer to* Electronic immobilizer . . . . . 32
Important things to do before driving . . . . 249
Importing and exporting (contacts) . . . . . 187
Improperly worn safety belts . . . . . 266
Indicator lights . . . . . 20
Airbag system . . . . . 281
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF . . . . . 281
Indicator lights (plug-in hybrid drive) . . . . . 96
Infant seats . . . . . 300
Input
Using the MMI touch . . . . . 157
Using the speller . . . . . 161
Input level (media) . . . . . 235
Inspection interval . . . . . 328
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage . . . . . 312
Instrument cluster . . . . . 10
Cleaning . . . . . 357
Messages . . . . . 20
Plug-in hybrid drive . . . . . 95
Instruments
Adjusting illumination . . . . . 52
Interior lighting . . . . . 52
Internet
*refer to* Audi connect (Infotainment) . . . . 190
Internet radio . . . . . 228
Interval mode (windshield wipers) . . . . . 55
iPhone
*refer to* Audi music interface . . . . . 229, 230
iTunes tagging . . . . . 218

## J

Jukebox . . . . . 225
Jump start . . . . . 102
Jump starting . . . . . 102, 375

## K

Key . . . . . 32
Key not recognized . . . . . 79
Key recognition . . . . . 68
Messages . . . . . 78
Kick-down (automatic transmission) . . . . . 88
Knee airbags . . . . . 285
Description . . . . . 285
How they work . . . . . 286
Important safety instructions . . . . . 287

## L

Lane assist
*refer to* Audi active lane assist . . . . . 133
Lap timer . . . . . 122
LATCH . . . . . 308
Description . . . . . 309
Installing a child restraint . . . . . 310
Location . . . . . 309
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook . . . . . 310
Launch control program . . . . . 89
Leather care and cleaning . . . . . 357
Left control button . . . . . 14
Licensing agreements (MMI) . . . . . 248
Lifting jack . . . . . 366
Light/rain sensor
Automatic headlights . . . . . 49
Switching the rain sensor on/off . . . . . 55
Lighting
Exterior . . . . . 49
Interior . . . . . 52
Lights . . . . . 49
Interior/reading lights . . . . . 52
Listening to music
*refer to* Media . . . . . 223, 232
Load . . . . . 382
Locking/unlocking
*refer to* Unlocking/locking . . . . . 31, 33, 34
Low beam headlights . . . . . 49

Lowering the cargo floor . . . . . 64
Luggage compartment . . . . . 63
Cover . . . . . 64
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 37
Power sources . . . . . 62
Storing cargo correctly . . . . . 255
Stowing luggage . . . . . 255
Luggage compartment net . . . . . 65
Lumbar support . . . . . 59

## M

Magnetic ride
*refer to* Suspension control . . . . . 140
Maintenance . . . . . 383
Maintenance interval . . . . . 328
Making an emergency call . . . . . 182
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) . . . . . 318
Map
Operating . . . . . 210
Settings . . . . . 212
Update . . . . . 201
Map update . . . . . 213
Massage function . . . . . 59
Media . . . . . 223, 232
Drives . . . . . 224
Supported formats . . . . . 237
Media center . . . . . 233
Memory capacity
Directory . . . . . 187
Jukebox . . . . . 225
Memory card
SD card reader (MMI) . . . . . 224
Supported types/formats . . . . . 237
MENU button . . . . . 154
Menu language
*refer to* Setting the language . . . . . 243
Menu paths (Owner's Manual) . . . . . 156
Menus/symbols . . . . . 163
Messages . . . . . 183
Mirrors . . . . . 53
Compass . . . . . 57
Dimming . . . . . 54
MMI
*refer to* Multi Media Interface . . . . . 154
MMI search
*refer to* Free text search . . . . . 162, 234
MMI touch . . . . . 157
MODE button . . . . . 16
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 281
MP3
*refer to* Jukebox . . . . . 225
Multifunction steering wheel
Changing views . . . . . 13
Operating . . . . . 13, 16
Switching tabs . . . . . 13, 16
Voice recognition system . . . . . 15
Multi Media Interface . . . . . 154
Music collection
*refer to* Jukebox . . . . . 225
Mute
*refer to* Muting . . . . . 247
Muting . . . . . 247
myAudi . . . . . 190, 205
Logging in in the vehicle . . . . . 190
PIN . . . . . 190

## N

NAV/MAP button . . . . . 201
Navigating (instrument cluster) . . . . . 168
Navigation . . . . . 201
Announcements . . . . . 210
Plug-in hybrid drive . . . . . 217
*also refer to* Map . . . . . 210
Navigation (instrument cluster) . . . . . 167
Network connection (Wi-Fi) . . . . . 195
NHTSA
Contacting . . . . . 258
Number of seats . . . . . 260

## O

Occupant protection . . . . . 130
Occupant seating positions . . . . . 250
Octane rating (gasoline) . . . . . 314
Odometer . . . . . 12
Oil
*refer to* Engine oil . . . . . 321
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . . . 318
On/Off knob (MMI) . . . . . 154
Online destinations
*refer to* Point of interest search . . . . . 204
Online map . . . . . 213

Online map update . . . . . 214
Online media . . . . . 228
Online services
*refer to* Audi connect (Infotainment) . . . . 190
Opening . . . . . 31
Doors . . . . . 33, 34
Fuel filler door . . . . . 315
Hood . . . . . 320
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 37
Panorama glass roof . . . . . 40
Power top . . . . . 42
Windows . . . . . 39
Opening/closing
*refer to* Unlocking/locking . . . . . 31, 33, 34
Operating
Multifunction steering wheel . . . . . 13, 16
Multi Media Interface . . . . . 155
Voice recognition system . . . . . 170
Options menu . . . . . 14, 156, 160
Outside temperature display . . . . . 10
Overview (Cockpit) . . . . . 8

## P

Paint damage . . . . . 356
Paint number . . . . . 381
Panorama glass roof . . . . . 40
*also refer to* Convenience opening/closing 40
Parental control
DVD . . . . . 235
Parking aid . . . . . 143
Adjusting . . . . . 147
Cleaning sensors/camera . . . . . 355
Malfunction . . . . . 147
Rearview camera . . . . . 145
Parking brake
*refer to* Electromechanical parking brake . 81
Parking lights . . . . . 49
Parking (automatic transmission) . . . . . 86
Parts replacement . . . . . 385
Pass-through . . . . . 66
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light . . . . . 281
Pause (audio/video file) . . . . . 232
Pedals . . . . . 254
Performance/torque display
*refer to* Sport displays . . . . . 20
Personal route assistance . . . . . 206
Phonebook
*refer to* Contacts . . . . . 186
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 261
Picture format (video) . . . . . 235
Playback (media) . . . . . 232
Playlist . . . . . 234
Plug-in-Hybrid-Drive
High-voltage battery . . . . . 93
Plug-in hybrid drive . . . . . 92
12 volt vehicle battery . . . . . 102
Auxiliary climate control . . . . . 116
Boost . . . . . 99
Charging . . . . . 104
Charging clip . . . . . 108
Charging dock . . . . . 108
Charging system PIN . . . . . 115
Charging the high-voltage battery . . . . . 106
Charging time . . . . . 114
Cleaning the charging system . . . . . 117
Climate control . . . . . 116
Coasting . . . . . 99
Coolant . . . . . 102
Driving . . . . . 94
E-max (power availability) . . . . . 100
Efficient driving . . . . . 99
Ending drive ready mode . . . . . 94
Energy flow display . . . . . 100
Establishing drive ready mode . . . . . 94
EV mode/hybrid mode . . . . . 98
High-voltage battery . . . . . 92, 115
High-voltage system . . . . . 92
Indicator lights . . . . . 96
Inserting the fuel pump nozzle . . . . . 103
Introduction . . . . . 92
Jump start . . . . . 102
Jump starting . . . . . 102
Power meter . . . . . 95
Range and statistics . . . . . 97
Range display . . . . . 97
Recuperation . . . . . 99
Refueling . . . . . 103
Setting the modes . . . . . 98
Starting the vehicle . . . . . 94
Status displays . . . . . 112
Switching the ignition on/off . . . . . 94
Tachometer . . . . . 95
Tire mobility kit . . . . . 101
Vehicle sound . . . . . 94

8V2012721BF

Vehicle tool kit . . . . . 101
Vehicle transport . . . . . 102
Point of interest . . . . . 204
Point of interest search . . . . . 204
*also refer to* Point of interest . . . . . 204
Polishing . . . . . 356
Pollen filter
*refer to* Pollutant filter . . . . . 68
Pollutant filter . . . . . 68
Power entry assistance
*refer to* Seats . . . . . 60
Power meter . . . . . 95
Power seat adjustment . . . . . 59
Power sources . . . . . 62, 230, 231
Power top . . . . . 42
Cleaning . . . . . 356
Power windows . . . . . 39
Child safety lock . . . . . 39
Malfunction . . . . . 40
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt . . . . . 265
pre sense
*refer to* Audi pre sense . . . . . 130
Presentation mode . . . . . 209
Presets (radio) . . . . . 221
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 350
Tires . . . . . 341
Program guide
Radio . . . . . 219
Proper occupant seating positions . . . . . 250
Proper safety belt position . . . . . 265
Proper seating position
Front passenger . . . . . 251
Occupants . . . . . 250
Rear passengers . . . . . 252


## Q


quattro (all wheel drive) . . . . . 152
Selective wheel torque control . . . . . 148
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 261


## R


Radio . . . . . 218
Additional station information . . . . . 220
Presets . . . . . 221
Radio text . . . . . 219
Station list . . . . . 218
Radio Standards Specification (RSS) . . . . . 386
Rain/light sensor
Automatic headlights . . . . . 49
Switching the rain sensor on/off . . . . . 55
Random
*refer to* Shuffle . . . . . 235
Range (tank level) . . . . . 17, 18
Reading lights . . . . . 52
Rear
Cleaning the rear window . . . . . 55
Luggage compartment lid . . . . . 37
Rear fog lamp(s) . . . . . 49
Rear lid
Escape latch . . . . . 360
Rearview camera . . . . . 145
Rear window defogger
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 70
Recirculation mode
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 70
Recuperation . . . . . 17
Refresh station list (radio) . . . . . 221
Refueling . . . . . 315
Plug-in hybrid drive . . . . . 103
Remote control
*refer to* Remote control key . . . . . 32
Remote control key . . . . . 32
Repair manuals . . . . . 383
Repairs
Airbag system . . . . . 284
Replacement key . . . . . 32
Replacing
Light bulbs . . . . . 373
Replacing wiper blades . . . . . 57
Reporting Safety Defects . . . . . 258, 259
Reset
*refer to* Restart (MMI) . . . . . 248
Reset button (trip odometer) . . . . . 12
Resetting the trip odometer . . . . . 12
Restart (MMI) . . . . . 248

Retractor . . . . . 264
Reverse (automatic transmission) . . . . . 84
Rewinding (audio/video file) . . . . . 232
Right control button . . . . . 14
Rims . . . . . 346
  Cleaning . . . . . 356
Ringtone settings . . . . . 188
Roaming
  *refer to* Data connection . . . . . 196
Rollbar
  *refer to* Active rollover protection system 257
Roof load . . . . . 66, 382
Roof rack . . . . . 66
  *also refer to* Roof rack . . . . . 66
Route criteria . . . . . 209
Route guidance
  *refer to* Navigation . . . . . 168, 201

# S

Safe driving habits . . . . . 249
Safety
  Airbag system . . . . . 269
  Belts . . . . . 260
  Cargo . . . . . 255
  Correct seating position . . . . . 250
  Pedal area . . . . . 254
  Telephone . . . . . 177
Safety belt position . . . . . 265
  Safety belt height adjustment . . . . . 266
  Safety belts worn by pregnant women . . . 265
Safety belt pretensioner
  Service and disposal . . . . . 267
Safety belts . . . . . 260, 264
  Adjusting . . . . . 266
  Cleaning . . . . . 357
  Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt . . . . . 261
  Fastening . . . . . 264
  Height adjustment . . . . . 266
  Improperly worn . . . . . 266
  Not worn . . . . . 261
  Safety belt position . . . . . 265
  Safety instructions . . . . . 263
  Securing child safety seats . . . . . 305
  Special considerations for pregnant women . . . . . 265
  Unfastening . . . . . 266
  Warning/indicator light . . . . . 260
  Worn properly . . . . . 262
Safety belt warning light . . . . . 260
Safety instructions
  for side curtain airbags . . . . . 292
  for using child safety seats . . . . . 298
  for using safety belts . . . . . 263
  Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 283
Saving fuel
  Attentive driving . . . . . 73
  Economy tips (analog instrument cluster) . 19
  Efficiency program (analog instrument cluster) . . . . . 19
  Energy consumers (Audi virtual cockpit) . . 18
  Recuperation . . . . . 17
Scan (radio) . . . . . 219
Screen
  *refer to* Display . . . . . 13, 16
Screwdriver . . . . . 360
SD card reader (MMI) . . . . . 224
Search area (point of interest) . . . . . 204
Search function
  *refer to* Free text search . . . . . 162, 234
Seat adjustment
  Head restraints . . . . . 252
Seating capacity . . . . . 260
Seating position
  Driver . . . . . 250
  Front passenger . . . . . 251
  How to adjust the front seats . . . . . 251
  Incorrect seat position . . . . . 253
  Occupants . . . . . 250
  Rear passengers . . . . . 252
Seats
  Adjusting . . . . . 59
  Cleaning . . . . . 357
  Correct seating position . . . . . 250
  Easy seat entry . . . . . 60
  Folding . . . . . 65, 66
  Number of seats . . . . . 260
  Seat heating (automatic climate control system) . . . . . 70
Secondary phone . . . . . 179, 245
Selecting a source (media) . . . . . 232
Selection menu . . . . . 14, 156, 160

Selector lever (automatic transmission)
Emergency release . . . . . 90
Positions . . . . . 84
Self-learning navigation
*refer to* Personal route assistance . . . . . 206
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner . . . . . 267
Service interval display . . . . . 328
Service position
*refer to* Replacing wiper blades . . . . . 56
Settings
Directory . . . . . 188
Map . . . . . 212
Media . . . . . 235
Navigation . . . . . 209
Radio . . . . . 221
System (MMI) . . . . . 243
Telephone . . . . . 187
Voice recognition system . . . . . 243
Setting the language . . . . . 243
Setting the temperature
Automatic climate control system . . . . . 69
Shift light indicator . . . . . 20
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) . . . . 88
Shuffle . . . . . 235
Side airbags
Description . . . . . 287
How they work . . . . . 289
Side assist
*refer to* Audi side assist . . . . . 136
Side curtain airbags . . . . . 290
Description . . . . . 290
How they work . . . . . 292
Safety instructions . . . . . 292
SiriusXM alert notifications . . . . . 220
Sliding/tilting sunroof
*refer to* Panorama glass roof . . . . . 40
Snow chains . . . . . 346
Socket
*refer to* Power sources . . . . . 62
Software update
*refer to* Map update . . . . . 193
*refer to* System update (MMI) . . . . . 246
Software (MMI)
Licensing agreements . . . . . 248
Update . . . . . 246
Version . . . . . 246
Sources of information about child restraints and their use . . . . . 313
Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire) 369
Spare tire . . . . . 369
Spare wheel . . . . . 369
Speed dependent volume control . . . . . 247
Speedometer . . . . . 10
Speed warning system . . . . . 120
Speller . . . . . 161
Sport displays . . . . . 20
Sport view . . . . . 14
Start/Stop system . . . . . 79
START ENGINE STOP (convenience key) . 76, 77
Station scanning (radio)
*refer to* Refresh station list (radio) . . . . . 221
Steering . . . . . 151
Locking steering (ignition lock) . . . . . 75
Locking the steering (button) . . . . . 77
*also refer to* Electromechanical steering . 151
Steering wheel
Adjusting . . . . . 74
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) . . . 88
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 71
*also refer to* Multifunction steering wheel . . . . . 13, 15, 16
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 345
Stopover (navigation) . . . . . 205
Storage options . . . . . 63
Streaming
*refer to* Online media . . . . . 228
S tronic (automatic transmission) . . . . . 83
Subtitles (DVD) . . . . . 235
Subwoofer . . . . . 247, 369, 370
Sun visors . . . . . 54
Surround . . . . . 247
Suspension control . . . . . 140
Swap call . . . . . 181
Switching tabs
*refer to* Multifunction steering wheel . . . . . 13, 15, 16
Symbols . . . . . 163
Navigation . . . . . 210
Traffic . . . . . 215
*also refer to* Indicator lights . . . . . 20
System settings (MMI) . . . . . 243
System update (MMI) . . . . . 246

System volume . . . . . 248

## T

Tachometer . . . . . 10, 11
Technical data . . . . . 381
Technical modifications . . . . . 386
Telephone . . . . . 177
Connecting . . . . . 177
Dialing a number . . . . . 180
Options during a phone call . . . . . 181
Playing music . . . . . 226
Settings . . . . . 187
Temperature display
Coolant . . . . . 10
Outside temperature . . . . . 12
Tether anchors . . . . . 311
Tether strap . . . . . 311
Text messages . . . . . 183
*also refer to* Text messages . . . . . 183
Tie-downs . . . . . 64, 256
Time . . . . . 243
tiptronic (automatic transmission) . . . . . 88
Tire Mobility System (tire mobility kit) . . . . 361
Tires . . . . . 330
Low-profile tires . . . . . 347
Mobility kit . . . . . 361
quattro (all wheel drive) . . . . . 152
Repair set . . . . . 360
Replacing . . . . . 363
Service life . . . . . 339
Tire pressure . . . . . 341
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . 348, 350
Tire pressure table . . . . . 342
Tire pressure (trailer towing) . . . . . 118
Treadwear indicators . . . . . 339
Unidirectional . . . . . 332
Uniform tire quality grading . . . . . 347
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 333
Tires and vehicle load limits . . . . . 343
TMC
*refer to* Traffic information . . . . . 215
Tone (sound)
*refer to* Adjusting the sound . . . . . 247
Tool . . . . . 360
Torn or frayed safety belts . . . . . 263
Touch
*refer to* MMI touch . . . . . 157
Towing
Front towing loop . . . . . 378
Rear towing loop . . . . . 379
Tow trucks . . . . . 378
TPMS
*refer to* Tires . . . . . 348
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system)
Indicator light . . . . . 352
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 350
Traffic information . . . . . 215, 216
Trailer mode (navigation) . . . . . 209
Trailer towing . . . . . 118
Trailer load . . . . . 118
Transmission malfunction . . . . . 89
Transport Canada . . . . . 259
Travel guide
*refer to* Travel (travel guide) . . . . . 193
Travel (travel guide) . . . . . 193
Treble (sound) . . . . . 247
Trip computer (analog instrument cluster) . . 18
Trip computer (Audi virtual cockpit) . . . . . 17
Trunk lid
Trunk escape latch . . . . . 360
Turn signal . . . . . 50

## U

Unfastening safety belts . . . . . 266
Uniform tire quality grading . . . . . 347
Unlocking/locking
At the lock cylinder . . . . . 36
With remote control . . . . . 33
With the central locking switch . . . . . 34
With the convenience key . . . . . 34
Updating stations (radio) . . . . . 218
USB charging port . . . . . 62, 230, 231
USB stick
*refer to* Audi music interface . . . . . 229, 230

## V

Vanity mirror . . . . . 54
Vehicle
Care/cleaning . . . . . 354
Dimensions . . . . . 381

Out of service . . . . . 359
Raising . . . . . 379
Specifications . . . . . 381
Transporting (plug-in hybrid drive) . . . . . 102
Vehicle battery . . . . . 326
Charge level . . . . . 152
Charging . . . . . 327
Vehicle care . . . . . 354
Vehicle control modules . . . . . 152
Vehicle jack . . . . . 360, 366
Vehicle sound . . . . . 94
Vehicle tool kit . . . . . 360
Version information . . . . . 246
VIEW button . . . . . 13
VIN . . . . . 381
Voice guidance
*refer to* Multifunction steering wheel . . . . . 13, 15, 16
Voicemail . . . . . 185
Voice recognition system . . . . . 170
Commands . . . . . 171
External . . . . . 175
Multifunction steering wheel . . . . . 15
Operating . . . . . 170
Settings . . . . . 243
Volume . . . . . 248
Volume . . . . . 247


## W


Warming up . . . . . 72
Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system . . . . . 281
Warning lights
*refer to* Indicator lights . . . . . 20
Warranty coverages . . . . . 383
Washing matte finish paint . . . . . 354
Weights . . . . . 382
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? . . . . . 265
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . . . 261
What impairs driving safety? . . . . . 249
Wheel bolts . . . . . 346
Wheels . . . . . 330
Cleaning . . . . . 356
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 333
Replacing . . . . . 363
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . . . 350
Tires and vehicle load limits . . . . . 343
Wheel wrench . . . . . 360
When must a safety belt be replaced? . . . . 263
When must the airbag system be inspected? 281
Where are lower anchorages located? . . . . 309
Wi-Fi
Audi music stream . . . . . 227
Audio player . . . . . 227
Online media . . . . . 228
*also refer to* Wi-Fi . . . . . 227
Wind deflector . . . . . 45
Cleaning . . . . . 356
Window regulators . . . . . 39
Windows
Cleaning/removing ice . . . . . 356
Windshield washer system . . . . . 55, 328
Reservoir capacity . . . . . 382
Windshield wipers . . . . . 55
Replacing wiper blades . . . . . 56
Winter operation
Car washes . . . . . 354
Cooling system . . . . . 324
Defrosting windows (automatic climate control system) . . . . . 70
Removing ice from windows . . . . . 356
Seat heating (automatic climate control system) . . . . . 70
Snow chains . . . . . 346
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 71
Windshield washer system . . . . . 328
Winter tires . . . . . 346


## X


Xenon headlights . . . . . 49, 373


## Z


Zoom (map) . . . . . 210

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This Owner's Manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

**For the sake of the environment**

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

**Owner's Manual**
**Englisch Nordamerika 05.2017**
**8V2012721BF**

8V2012721BF

www.audi.com